

# 조선말 배우는 책

# Let's learn Korean

외국문도서출판사  
Foreign Languages Books Publishing House  
1989

## PREFACE

International cooperation is developing rapidly between nations today in all fields including politics, the economy, culture and technology. This situation demands that we have some knowledge of the languages concerned.

In particular, foreigners visiting our country want to speak the Korean language and then associate with us in our work and life.

"Let's learn Korean" has been written to meet such a demand.

In this book all Korean words, phrases and sentences are transcribed in English letters, both literal and normal translations are given and grammatical explanations are presented in a schematic way. Therefore, all readers can read and understand all Korean words, phrases and sentences in this book without any help from other people and learn Korean in an easy way. And not only foreigners staying for a long time in our country, but also those visiting our country for a short time can use it.

"Let's learn Korean" has been written in the following order.

Pronunciation

Conversation

Grammar

Korean-English Vocabulary

English-Korean Vocabulary

Because this is the first time such a book has been produced, several mistakes may be found in it.

We hope that suggestions for revising this book will be sent to the following address :

Foreign Languages Books Publishing House,  
Pyongyang, DPRK

February 1989

The Author

# CONTENTS

## PRONUNCIATION

• The Korean Alphabet Table .....	10
• Alphabet .....	12
• Vowels .....	13
• Consonants .....	16
• Syllables .....	22
• The Change of Sounds .....	24
• The Intonation of Sentence .....	31

## CONVERSATION

• Greetings .....	32
• Do You Speak Korean? .....	35
• Entry and Exit .....	36
• Customs .....	37
• Travelling by Air .....	38
• On the Way to the City from the Airport .....	39
• Travelling by Train .....	41
• At the Hotel .....	44
• In a Restaurant .....	47
• At the Post-Office .....	51
• Money Exchange .....	53
• At the Hairdresser's .....	54
• At the Doctor's .....	55
• Human Body .....	57
• Asking the Way .....	58
• Notices and Signs .....	60
• Taxis and Buses .....	61
• City Sightseeing .....	62
• Theatre .....	65



• Photographing .....	66
• Shopping .....	67
• Numerals .....	70
• Money .....	74
• Time .....	74
• Weather .....	76
• Four Seasons .....	77
• Months .....	77
• Days of the Week .....	78

## GRAMMAR

### Lesson 1:

• Noun .....	78
• Declension of the Noun in the Singular .....	79
• Declension of A Noun in the Plural .....	89
• Word Order .....	93

### Lesson 2:

• Personal Pronoun .....	95
• Declension of the Personal Pronoun .....	98
• Word Order .....	108

### Lesson 3:

• Demonstrative Pronoun .....	109
• Declension of the Demonstrative Pronoun .....	111
• Word Order .....	115

### Lesson 4:

• Verb .....	117
• Forms of the Verb .....	117
• Final Form of the Verb .....	120
• Final Ending of the Verb .....	120
• Adjective .....	124
• Forms of the Adjective .....	124
• Final Form of the Adjective .....	127
• Final Ending of the Adjective .....	128

· Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral .....	130
· Division of the Verbal Forms of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral .....	132
· Final Form of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral .....	133
· Final Ending of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral .....	134
Lesson 5:	
· Declarative Final Endings of the Verb .....	137
· Declarative Final Endings of the Adjective .....	141
· Declarative Final Endings of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral .....	143
· Word Order .....	145
Lesson 6:	
· Interrogative Pronoun .....	147
· Declension of the Interrogative Pronoun .....	151
· Interrogative Final Endings of the Verb .....	151
· Interrogative Final Endings of the Adjective .....	153
· Interrogative Final Endings of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral .....	156
· Word Order .....	158
Lesson 7:	
· Numerals .....	162
· Counting Word .....	166
· Incomplete Noun .....	168
· Suggestive Final Endings of the Verb .....	170
· Imperative Final Endings of the Verb .....	172
· Word Order .....	173
Lesson 8:	
· Adverb .....	175
· Connecting Form of the Verb, Adjective or Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral .....	178
· Word Order .....	194

Lesson 9:	
. Pre-Noun .....	200
. Interjection .....	202
. Attributive Form of the Verb .....	202
. Attributive Form of the Adjective .....	206
. Attributive Form of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral.....	208
. Form of the Adverbial Modifier of the Verb or Adjective .....	211
. Word Order .....	213
Lesson 10:	
. Tenses .....	216
. Respect and Courtesy .....	223
. Word Order .....	228
Lesson 11:	
. Voice .....	230
. Exchanging Endings .....	237
Lesson 12:	
. Auxiliary Endings .....	242
. Endings Which Are Used as Case Endings .....	248
Lesson 13:	
. Stem and Ending .....	251
. Attaching of Endings .....	254
. Pairs of Endings .....	254
. Link-Vowel .....	256
. Vocal Harmony .....	258
. Exchange of Sounds .....	260
Lesson 14:	
. Parts of the Sentence .....	266
. Predicate .....	269
. Subject .....	276
. Object .....	279
. Quotation .....	283

· Adverbial Modifier .....	286
· Attribute .....	289
· Form of Address .....	292
· Parenthesis .....	293
· Exclamatory Word .....	295
· Conjunctive .....	296
· Appended Modifier .....	298
· Expanded Part of Sentence .....	299
Lesson 15:	
· Agreement of Parts of Sentence .....	303
· Order of Parts of Sentence .....	309
Lesson 16:	
· Kinds of Sentences .....	320
· Simple, Compound and Complex Sentences .....	339
· Simple Sentence .....	339
· Compound Sentence and Complex Sentence .....	340
· Order of the Principal Clause and the Subordinate Clause .....	342
· Direct Speech .....	342
· Order of the Original Speaker's Words in Direct Speech .....	343
· Indirect Speech .....	345
· Changing of Direct Speech into Indirect Speech ...	345
Tables of Endings .....	350
Subject Index .....	362
KOREAN- ENGLISH VOCABULARY .....	373
ENGLISH- KOREAN VOCABULARY .....	411

# Guide for the User

1. All Korean words, phrases and sentences are transcribed in English letters.

for example :

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ○ 주체사상<br>[chuchesasang]<br>Juche Idea                                       | ○ 조선의 진달래<br>[chosonui chindallae]<br>Korean azalea |
| ○ 안녕하십니까?<br>[annyonghasimnigga]<br>Hello!<br>Good morning.<br>Good evening. | ○ 고맙습니다.<br>[komapsumnida]<br>Thank you.            |

2. In transcript the separation is denoted by a point (·).

for example :

저는 평양으로 갑니다. [chonun pyongyang·uro kamnida] I        Pyongyang to    go	I go to Pyongyang.
---	--------------------

3. Both literal and free translations are given for all Korean sentences.

for example :

저는 영국사람입니다. [chonun yong·guksaramimnida] I        an Englishman am	I am an Englishman. (free translation) (literal translation)
--	--

4. The asterisk in the example is related to that in the explanation.

for example :

나의*	어머니
[naui	omoni]
my	mother

*explanation :*

\* 나 + 의 (나—personal pronoun 의—genitive ending  
of the personal pronoun)

5. Grammatical explanations are given as follows :

안녕히	가십시오.*	Good-bye (free
[annyong·i	kasipsio]	translation )
well	go ! (literal translation)	

*explanation :*

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go

*stem ending*

가 + 십시오 (십시오—most deferential imperative form  
of the final ending of the verb)

6. The number on the left of the page is found in the subject index.

# PRONUNCIATION

## THE KOREAN ALPHABET TABLE

1 가자표 [kagyapyo] The Korean alphabet table

vowels conso- nants	ㅏ	ㅑ	ㅓ	ㅕ	ㅗ	ㅛ	ㅜ	ㅠ	ㅡ	ㅣ
	[a]	[ya]	[o]	[yo]	[o]	[yo]	[u]	[yu]	[u]	[i]
ㄱ [k]	가	가	거	겨	고	교	구	규	그	기
	[ka]	[kya]	[ko]	[kyo]	[ko]	[kyo]	[ku]	[kyu]	[ku]	[ki]
ㄴ [n]	나	냐	너	녀	노	뇨	누	뉴	느	니
	[na]	[nya]	[no]	[nyo]	[no]	[nyo]	[nu]	[nyu]	[nu]	[ni]
ㄷ [t]	다	댜	더	뎌	도	뎜	두	듀	드	디
	[ta]	[tya]	[to]	[tyo]	[to]	[tyo]	[tu]	[tyu]	[tu]	[ti]
ㄹ [r]	라	랴	러	려	로	료	루	류	르	리
	[ra]	[rya]	[ro]	[ryo]	[ro]	[ryo]	[ru]	[ryu]	[ru]	[ri]
ㅁ [m]	마	먜	머	뎌	모	묘	무	뮤	므	미
	[ma]	[mya]	[mo]	[myo]	[mo]	[myo]	[mu]	[myu]	[mu]	[mi]
ㅂ [p]	바	뵤	버	뵎	보	뵜	부	뷰	브	비
	[pa]	[pya]	[po]	[pyo]	[po]	[pyo]	[pu]	[pyu]	[pu]	[pi]
ㅅ [s]	사	샤	서	셔	소	쇼	수	슈	스	시
	[sa]	[sya]	[so]	[syo]	[so]	[syo]	[su]	[syu]	[su]	[si]
ㅇ* [ng]	아	야	어	여	오	요	우	유	으	이
	[a]	[ya]	[o]	[yo]	[o]	[yo]	[u]	[yu]	[u]	[i]

ㅅ [ch]	차 차 처 처 조 조 주 주 즈 지 [cha] [chya] [cho] [chy] [cho] [chy] [chu] [chyu] [chu] [chi]
ㅈ [ch]	차 차 처 처 초 초 추 추 츠 치 [cha] [chya] [cho] [chy] [cho] [chy] [chu] [chyu] [chu] [chi]
ㅋ [k]	카 카 커 커 코 코 쿠 쿼 크 키 [ka] [kya] [ko] [kyo] [ko] [kyo] [ku] [kyu] [ku] [ki]
ㄷ [t]	타 타 터 터 토 토 투 투 트 티 [ta] [tya] [to] [tyo] [to] [tyo] [tu] [tyu] [tu] [ti]
ㅍ [p]	파 파 퍼 퍼 포 포 푸 퓨 프 피 [pa] [pya] [po] [pyo] [po] [pyo] [pu] [pyu] [pu] [pi]
ㅎ [h]	하 하 허 허 호 호 후 휴 흐 히 [ha] [hya] [ho] [hyo] [ho] [hyo] [hu] [hyu] [hu] [hi]
ㄱ [gg]	가 가 개 개 교 교 구 구 꼬 끼 [gga] [ggya] [ggo] [ggyo] [ggo] [ggyo] [ggu] [ggyu] [ggu] [ggi]
ㄷ [dd]	다 다 더 더 또 또 두 두 드 디 [dda] [ddy] [ddo] [ddy] [ddo] [ddy] [ddu] [ddyu] [ddu] [ddi]
ㅂ [bb]	바 바 배 배 보 보 부 부 뵤 뵤 [bba] [bbya] [bbo] [bbyo] [bbo] [bbyo] [bbu] [bbyu] [bbu] [bbi]
ㅅ [ss]	사 사 세 세 소 소 수 수 쑈 쑈 [ssa] [ssya] [sso] [ssyo] [sso] [ssyo] [ssu] [ssyu] [ssu] [ssi]
ㅈ [jj]	자 자 재 재 조 조 주 주 쥬 쥬 [jja] [jya] [jjo] [jyo] [jjo] [jyo] [jju] [jyu] [jju] [jji]
* ㅅ is not pronounced at the beginning of a syllable.	



# ALPHABET

2 The Korean alphabet has 40 letters.

letter	name	transcription	letter	name	transcription
ㄱ	kiuk	k, g	ㅏ	a	a
ㄴ	niun	n	ㅑ	ya	ya
ㄷ	tiut	t, d	ㅓ	o	o
ㄹ	riul	r(1)	ㅕ	yo	yo
ㅁ	mium	m	ㅗ	o	o
ㅂ	piup	p, b	ㅛ	yo	yo
ㅅ	siut	s, t	ㅜ	u	u
ㅇ	iung	ng	ㅠ	yu	yu
ㅈ	chiut	ch, j, t	ㅡ	u	u
ㅊ	chiut	ch, t	ㅣ	i	i
ㅋ	kiuk	k	ㅞ	ae	ae
ㅌ	tiut	t	ㅟ	yae	yae
ㅍ	piup	p	ㅢ	e	e
ㅎ	hiuh	h	ㅤ	ye	ye
ㅊ	toengiuk	gg, k	ㅦ	oe	oe
ㅌ	toendiut	dd	ㅧ	wi	wi
ㅍ	toenbiup	bb	ㅨ	ui	ui
ㅍ	toensiut	ss, t	ㅩ	wa	wa
ㅍ	toenjiut	jj	ㅪ	wo	wo
			ㅫ	wae	wae
			ㅬ	we	we

# VOWELS

### 3 The Korean language has 21 vowels :

ㅏ, ㅑ, ㅓ, ㅕ, ㅗ, ㅛ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅋ, ㆁ, ㄷ, ㅌ,  
ㄴ, ㄹ, ㄺ, ㄻ, ㄼ, ㄽ

The vowels are divided into simple vowels and diphthongs.

#### 4 1. The simple vowels

The simple vowels are those for which the shape of the oral cavity does not change in pronunciation.

There are 10 simple vowels :

$\vdash, \dashv, \perp, \top, \neg, \mid, \mathbb{H}, \mathbb{H}, \mathbb{H}, \pi$

## 5 2. The diphthongs

The diphthongs are those vowels for which the shape of the oral cavity changes in pronunciation and two vowels become one.

There are 11 diphthongs :

ㅑ, ㅓ, ㅕ, ㅗ, ㅛ, ㅛ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ, ㅐ, ㅑ, ㅓ, ㅕ, ㅗ, ㅛ, ㅛ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ

**6 The vowels are pronounced as follows :**

1. ɫ is pronounced [a] as in car and transcribed as ⟨a⟩.

for example :

o [a] ah

2.- is pronounced [ə] as in ago and transcribed as ⟨o⟩.

for example :

어머니 [omoni] mother

3. 1 is pronounced [ɔ] as in on and transcribed as ⟨o⟩.

for example :

오 [o] oh

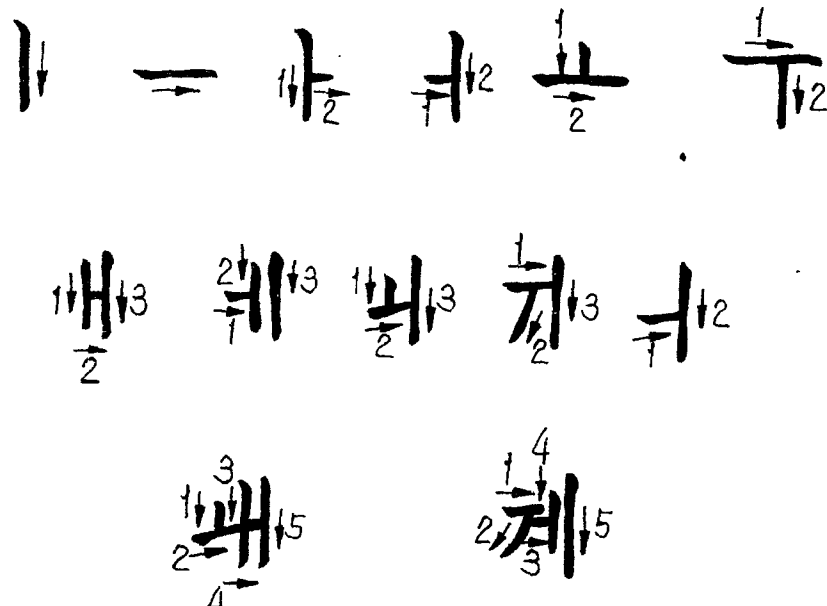
4. ㅏ is pronounced [u] as in **good** and transcribed as <u>.  
for example :  
우리[uri] we
5. ㅡ is almost a groaning sound in the chest and is pronounced between [u] in **good** and [i] in **window** and transcribed as <u>.  
for example :  
그[ku] he
6. ㅣ is pronounced [i] as in **it** and transcribed as <i>.  
for example :  
아이[ai] child
7. ㅓ is pronounced [æ] as in **man** and transcribed as <ae>.  
for example :  
애[ae] child
8. ㅕ is pronounced [e] as in **bed** and transcribed as <e>.  
for example :  
네[ne] you; your; yes
9. ㅛ is pronounced [oe] as in **Goethe** and transcribed as <oe>.  
for example :  
쇠[soe] iron
10. ㅜ is pronounced [wi] as in **window** and transcribed as <wi>.  
for example :  
위[wi] stomach
11. ㅟ is pronounced [ja] as in **yard** and transcribed as <ya>.  
for example :  
약[yak] medicine
12. ㅠ is pronounced [jə] as in **you** [jə] and transcribed as <yo>.  
for example :  
여기[yogi] here

13. ㅛ is pronounced [jo] as in **york** and transcribed as <y o>.  
for example :  
교실 [kyosil] classroom
14. ㅠ is pronounced [ju] as in **you** and transcribed as <yu>.  
for example :  
유리 [yuri] glass
15. ㅝ is pronounced [je] as in **yes** and transcribed as <yae>.  
for example :  
예 [yae] hullo (*call to a child or between children*)
16. ㅞ is pronounced [je] as in **yellow** and transcribed as <ye>.  
for example :  
예 [ye] yes (*answer to an elder or a superior*)
17. ㅟ is pronounced quickly but as a diphthong and transcribed as <ui>.  
for example :  
의사 [uisa] doctor
18. ㅠ is pronounced [wa] as in **guaiacum** and transcribed as <wa>.  
for example :  
와 [wa] and
19. ㅡ is pronounced [wə] as in **word** and transcribed as <wo>.  
for example :  
원 [won] circle; won (*unit of Korean currency*)
20. ㅢ is pronounced [wæ] as in **wax** and transcribed as <wae>.  
for example :  
왜 [wae] why
21. ㅣ is pronounced almost like [we] in **wet** and transcribed as <we>.  
for example :  
웬 [wen] what

Individual vowels are pronounced separately.  
for example :

아 세 아 [asea] Asia

7 The vowels are written as follows :



## CONSONANTS

8 The Korean language has 19 consonants :

ㄱ, ㄴ, ㄷ, ㄹ, ㅁ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅇ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅋ, ㆁ, ㅌ, ㅍ, ㅍ, ㅎ,  
ㄲ, ㄴ, ㄷ, ㄹ, ㅁ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅇ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅋ, ㆁ, ㅌ, ㅍ, ㅍ, ㅎ

9 The consonants are pronounced as follows :

1. ㄱ is pronounced a little harder than [g].

1) ㄱ is transcribed as [k] at the beginning of a word.  
for example :

그[ku] he

2) ㄱ is transcribed as [k] at the end of a word.  
for example :

조국[choguk] fatherland

3) ㄱ is transcribed as [k] before another consonant.  
for example :

극장 [kukjang] theatre

4) ㄱ is transcribed as [g] before a vowel.  
for example :

고기 [kogi] meat

2. ㄲ is pronounced [k] as in the French conte.

1) ㄲ is transcribed as [gg] at the beginning of a word.  
for example :

꽃다발 [ggotdabal] bouquet

2) ㄲ is transcribed as [gg] before a vowel.  
for example :

도끼 [toggi] axe

3) ㄲ is transcribed as [k] at the end of a word.

for example :

밖 [pak] outside

4) ㄲ is transcribed as [k] before another consonant.

for example :

묶다 [mukda] bind

3. ㅋ is pronounced [k] as in cold. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced ㄱ [k].

ㅋ is transcribed as [k].

for example :

코 [ko] nose

4. ㅂ is pronounced a little harder than [b].

1) ㅂ is transcribed as [p] at the beginning of a word.

for example :

비 [pi] rain

2) ㅂ is transcribed as [p] at the end of a word.

for example :

밥 [pap] boiled rice

3) ㅂ is transcribed as [p] before another consonant.

for example :

품다[kopda] beautiful

- 4) ㅍ is transcribed as [b] before a vowel.

for example :

집으로[chiburo] to home

5. ㅂ is pronounced [p] as in the French pincette.

ㅂ is transcribed as <bb>.

for example :

빵[bbang] bread

6. ㅈ is pronounced [p] as in park. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced ㅈ [b].

ㅈ is transcribed as [p].

for example :

○ 펜[pen] pen

○ 우표[upyo] postage stamp

○ 잎[ip] leaf

○ 높다[nopda] high

7. ㄷ is pronounced a little harder than [d].

- 1) ㄷ is transcribed as [t] at the beginning of a word.  
for example :

다리[tari] leg; bridge

- 2) ㄷ is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.

for example :

디읃[tit] (*the consonant ㄷ*)

- 3) ㄷ is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.

for example :

묻다[mutda] ask

- 4) ㄷ is transcribed as [d] before a vowel.

for example :

도마도[tomado] tomato

8. ㅌ is pronounced [t] as in the Spanish tobacco.

ㅌ is transcribed as <dd>.

for example :

땅[ddang] earth

9. ㄷ is pronounced [t] as in tank. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced ㅌ[t].

ㄷ is transcribed as <t>.

for example :

○트렁크[turongku] trunk

○봉투[bongtu] envelope

○밭[bat] field

○같다[katda] equal

10. ㅈ is pronounced [z] as in zero.

- 1) ㅈ is transcribed as [ch] at the beginning of a word.

for example :

조선[choson] Korea

- 2) ㅈ is transcribed as [j] before a vowel.

for example :

아버지[aboji] father

- 3) ㅈ is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.

for example :

낮[nat] day

- 4) ㅈ is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.

for example :

늦다[nutda] late

11. ㅉ is pronounced [ts] as in tzar and transcribed as <jj>

for example :

동쪽[tongjjok] east

12. ㅊ is pronounced [tʃ] as in child. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced ㅌ[ch].

- 1) ㅊ is transcribed as [ch] at the beginning of a word.

for example :

춤[chum] dance

- 2) ㅊ is transcribed as [ch] before a vowel.

for example :

자동차[chadongcha] auto



3) ㅌ is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.

for example :

꽃 [ggot] flower

4) ㅌ is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.

for example :

꽃방 [ggotbang] florist's shop

13. ㅅ is pronounced [s] as in song.

1) ㅅ is transcribed as [s] at the beginning of a word.

for example :

수도 [sudo] capital

2) ㅅ is transcribed as [s] before a vowel.

for example :

도시 [tosi] city

3) ㅅ is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.

for example :

옷 [ot] clothes

4) ㅅ is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.

for example :

웃다 [utda] laugh

14. ㅆ is pronounced [s] as in the French sans.

1) ㅆ is transcribed as [ss] at the beginning of a word.

for example :

쌀 [ssal] rice

2) ㅆ is transcribed as [ss] before a vowel.

for example :

날씨 [nalssi] weather

3) ㅆ is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.

for example :

겠 [ket] (*the ending of the future tense*)

4) ㅆ is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.

for example :

있다 [itda] there is

15. ㄴ is pronounced [n] as in pen.

ㄴ is transcribed as [n].

for example :

○ 나 [na] I

○ 조선 [choson] Korea

16. □ is pronounced [m] as in man.

ㅁ is transcribed as [m].

for example :

○ 어머니 [omoni] mother

○ 사람 [saram] man

17. ㄹ

⟨r⟩ and ⟨l⟩ are denoted in Korean by the same letter ㄹ.

The following rules are applied to this double pronunciation :

1) ㄹ is transcribed as [r] at the beginning of a word.

for example :

라디오 [radio] radio

2) ㄹ is transcribed as [r] before a vowel.

for example :

우리 [uri] we

3) ㄹ is transcribed as [l] at the end of a word.

for example :

물 [mul] water

4) ㄹ is transcribed as [l] before another consonant.

for example :

팔다 [palda] sell

5) When ㄴ and ㄹ come together, then ㄴㄹ is always transcribed as double [l].

for example :

천리 [cholli] thousand ri (ri is a Korean unit of distance.)

18. ㅎ is pronounced [h] as in hat and transcribed as ⟨h⟩.

for example :

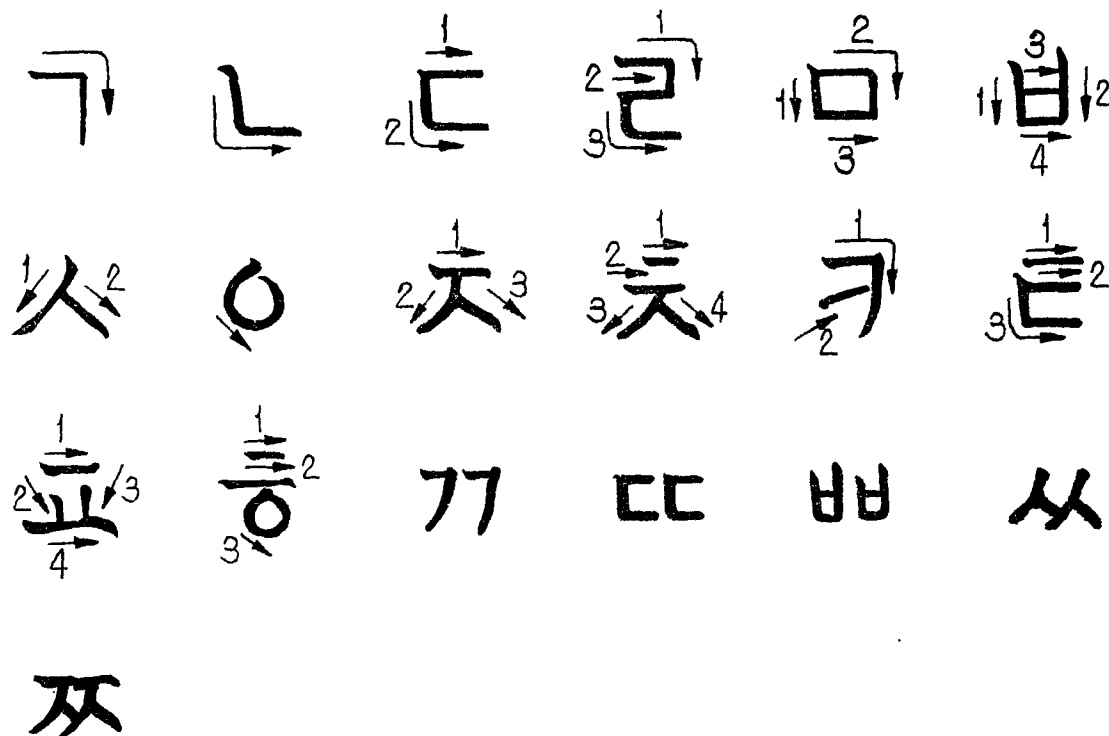
하나 [hana] one

19. ㅇ is pronounced [ŋ] as in song. But at the beginning of a syllable ㅇ is not pronounced.  
ㅇ is transcribed as <ng>.

for example :

강 [kang] river

- 10 The consonants are written as follows :



## SYLLABLES

- || A word consists of one or more syllables. A syllable consists of one or more consonants and one vowel.

The syllables are divided into 5 forms :

1. The one-vowel syllable

for example :

아이 [ai] child

*explanation :*

The syllable 아 consists of the consonant ㅇ and the vowel ㅣ.

The consonant ㅇ is not pronounced at the beginning of a syllable.

Therefore, the syllable 아 is considered a one-vowel syllable.

The syllable 이 consists of the consonant ㅇ and the vowel ㅣ.

The consonant ㅇ is not pronounced at the beginning of a syllable.

Therefore, the syllable 이 is considered a one-vowel syllable.

2. The one-consonant-and-one-vowel syllable

for example :

나무 [namu] tree; wood

*explanation :*

The syllable 나 consists of the consonant ㄴ and the vowel ㅣ.

The syllable 무 consists of the consonant ㅁ and the vowel ㅜ.

3. The one-vowel-and-one-consonant syllable

for example :

일 [il] work

*explanation :*

The syllable 일 consists of the consonant ㅇ, the vowel ㅣ and the consonant ㄹ. The consonant ㅇ is not pronounced at the beginning of a syllable. Therefore, the syllable 일 is considered a one-vowel-and-one-consonant syllable.

4. The syllable consisting of one consonant, one vowel and one consonant

for example :

물 [mul] water

*explanation :*

The syllable 물 consists of the consonant ㅁ, the vowel ㅜ and the consonant ㄹ.

5. The syllable consisting of one consonant, one vowel and a double consonant

for example :

값 [kap] price

*explanation :*

The syllable 값 consists of the consonant ㄱ, the vowel ㅏ and the double consonant ㅍ.

## THE CHANGE OF SOUNDS

12 Sounds change in six different ways.

### 1. The assimilation of sound

The assimilation of sound means that a sound in a word is pronounced, under the influence of its foregoing or following sound, same as or alike to its foregoing or following sound.

There are 3 assimilations of sound :

#### 1) The assimilation of sonants ㄴ [n], ㅁ [m], ㄹ [r]

(1) The sounds ㄱ [k], ㄲ [gg] and ㅋ [k] are pronounced ㅇ [ng] before a sonant.

for example :

○ 독립 [tokrip] independence

[동립] [tongrip] (*as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄴ [r]*)

○ 닦는다 [taknunda] polish

[당는다] [tangnunda] (*as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄴ [n]*)

○ 부엌문 [puokmun] kitchen door

[부엌문] [puongmun] (*as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㅁ [m]*)

(2) The sound ㅍ [p] and ㅑ [p] are pronounced ㅁ [m] before a sonant.

for example :

○ 법령 [popryong] law

[법령] [pomryong] (*as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄴ [r]*)

- 앞문 [apmun] front door

[암문] [ammun] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant □ [m])

- (3) The sounds ㄷ [t], ㄷ [t], ㅈ [ch], ㅊ [ch], ㅅ [s] and ㅆ [ss] are pronounced ㄴ [n] before a sonant.

for example :

- 맏누이 [matnui] the eldest sister

[만누이] [mannui] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄴ [n])

- 밭머리 [patmori] edge of a field

[반머리] [panmori] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant □ [m])

- 젖먹이 [chotmogi] suckling

[전먹이] [chonmogi] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant □ [m])

- 꽃망울 [ggotmang.ul] flower bud

[곤망울] [ggonmang.ul] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant □ [m])

- 잣나무 [chatnamu] pine-nut tree

[잔나무] [channamu] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄴ [n])

- 있느냐 [itnunya] is there ?

[인느냐] [innunya] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄴ [n])

- 2) The assimilation of the sound ㄹ [l]

- (1) The sound ㄴ [n] is pronounced ㄹ [l] before the sound ㄹ [l].

for example :

단련 [tanlyon] training

[달련] [tallyon] (as a result of the assimilation of the sound ㄹ [l])

- (2) The sound ㄴ [n] is pronounced ㄹ [l] after the sound ㄹ [l].

for example :

설날 [solnal] New Year's Day

[설랄] [sollal] (as a result of the assimilation of the sound ㄴ [l])

3) The assimilation of the palatal

- (1) The sound ㄷ [t] is pronounced ㅈ [j] before the palatal ㅣ [i].

for example :

해돋이 [haetoti] sunrise

[해도지] [haetoji] (as a result of the assimilation of the palatal ㅣ [i])

- (2) The sound ㄷ [t] is pronounced ㅊ [ch] before the palatal ㅣ [i].

for example :

한결같이 [hangyolgati] unanimously

[한결가치] [hangyolgachi] (as a result of the assimilation of the palatal ㅣ [i])

2. The shut consonants

When a consonant lies at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound, it is pronounced as shut.

- 1) The sounds ㅋ [k] and ㆁ [gg] are pronounced as a shut ㄱ [k] at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound.

for example :

- 부엌 [puok] kitchen

[부억] [puok] (at the end of the word)

- 깎다 [ggaggda] pare; shear; shave

[깍따] [ggakda] (before the voiceless sound ㄷ) (refer to 12-3.)

- 2) The sounds ㄷ [t], ㅈ [j], ㅊ [ch], ㅅ [s] and ㅆ [ss] are pronounced as a shut ㄷ [t] at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound.

for example :

- 밭 [pat] field

[밭] [pat] (at the end of the word)

- 낮 [naj] day  
[낱] [nat] (at the end of the word)
- 돛대 [tochdae] mast  
[돌때] [totdae] (before the voiceless sound ㅌ) (refer to 12-3.)
- 옷 [os] clothes  
[온] [ot] (at the end of the word)
- 있다 [issda] be  
[일따] [itda] (before the voiceless sound ㅌ) (refer to 12-3.)

3) The sound ㅍ [p] is pronounced as a shut ㅍ [p] at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound.

for example :

- 잎 [ip] leaf  
[입] [ip] (at the end of the word)
- 덮다 [topda] cover  
[덱따] [topda] (before the voiceless sound ㅌ) (refer to 12-3.)

### 3. The strengthening of a sound

The strengthening of a sound means that a soft sound becomes a strong sound under the influence of the consonant which comes before it.

But the strong sounds are transcribed as follows :

gg → g      dd → d      bb → b  
ss → s      jj → j

for example :

빛깔 [빌 갈] [bitggal] → [bitgal] colour  
집단 [집 단] [chipddan] → [chipdan] group  
늦봄 [늘 뽕] [nutbbom] → [nutbom] late spring  
봄바람 [봄 빠람] [pombbaram] → [pombaram] spring breeze  
있소 [일 쑤] [itsso] → [itso] there is  
극장 [극 쟁] [kukjjang] → [kukjang] theatre

- 1) A soft sound becomes a strong sound after a consonant which is not sonant.



for example :

집단 [chipdan] collective

[집 단] [chipddan] (as a result of the strengthening of the soft sound ㄷ [d] after the voiceless sound ㅍ [p])

But [집 단] [chipddan] is transcribed as [chipdan].

2) After a sonant a soft sound becomes as follows :

(1) a strong sound

for example :

봄바람 [pombaram] spring breeze

[봄빠람] [pombbaram] (as a result of the strengthening of the soft sound ㅁ [b] after the sonant ㅁ [m])

But [봄빠람] [pombbaram] is transcribed as [pombaram].

(2) not a strong sound

for example :

충성 [chungsong] loyalty

explanation :

The soft sound ㅅ [s] does not become a strong sound after sonant ㅇ [ng].

4. The insertion of a sound

The insertion of a sound means that a sound is inserted when a word is pronounced.

There are 2 methods of insertion :

1) The consonant ㄴ [n] is inserted.

for example :

부엌일 [puokil] kitchen work

[부엌닐] [pucknil] (as a result of the insertion of the consonant ㄴ [n])

[부영닐] [puongnil] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄴ [n])

2) The consonant ㄷ [t] is inserted.

for example :

기발 [kibal] flag

[깃발] [kitbal] (as a result of the insertion of the consonant ㄷ [t])

[길빨] [kitbal] (as a result of the strengthening of the soft sound ㅂ [b] after the voiceless sound ㅌ [t])

## 5. The omission of a sound

The omission of a sound means that a certain sound is omitted when sounds are linked.

There are 2 methods of omission :

- 1) The sound ㅎ [h] of a stem is not pronounced before an ending or a suffix which begins with a vowel, for example :

○ 많았다 [manhatda] were much  
[마난다] [manatda] (as a result of the omission of the sound ㅎ [h] before the past tense ending 았 [at] (refer to 166) which begins with the vowel ㅏ [a])  
[마난따] [manatda] (as a result of the strengthening of the sound ㄷ [d])

○ 많이 [manhi] much  
[마니] [mani] (as a result of the omission of the sound ㅎ [h] before the suffix ㅁ [i] which begins with the vowel ㅣ [i])

- 2) The penultimate or the last consonant in a syllable is omitted.

(1) The penultimate consonant ㄴ [l] in a syllable is omitted when the penultimate and last consonants ㄴ [lk], ㄴ [lm], ㄴ [lp] or ㄴ [lp] in a syllable come before another consonant or at the end of a word.

for example :

○ 닭 [talk] hen

[닥] [tak] (as a result of the omission of the penultimate consonant ㄴ [l])

○ 삶다 [salmda] cook

[삼다] [samda] (as a result of the omission of the penultimate consonant ㄴ [l])

[삼따] [samda] (as a result of the strengthening of the sound ㄷ [d])

○ 밟다 [palpda] tread

[밟다] [papda] (as a result of the omission of the penultimate consonant ㄴ [l])

[밟따] [papda] (as a result of the strengthening of the sound ㄷ [d])

○ 읊다 [ulpda] recite

[읊다] [upda] (as a result of the omission of the penultimate consonant ㄴ [l])

[읊따] [upda] (as a result of the strengthening of the sound ㄷ [d])

(2) The last consonant in a syllable is omitted when it is a lingual.

for example :

없다 [optda] there is no

As the last consonant ㅌ [t] is a lingual, it is omitted.

[엎다] [opda] (as a result of the omission of the last consonant ㅌ [t])

[엎따] [opda] (as a result of the strengthening of the sound ㄷ [d])

## 6. The contraction of sounds

The contraction of sounds means that some sounds standing side by side contract into one sound.

There are 2 methods of contraction :

1) Sounds contract into a strong sound.

A soft sound and the sound ㅎ [h] following it contract into a strong sound.

for example :

역할 [yokhal] role

[여칼] [yokal] (as a result of the contraction of the sounds ㄱ [k] and ㅎ [h])

2) Two vowels contract into a new vowel.

for example :

아이 [ai] child

애 [ae] child (as a result of the contraction of the vowels [a] and [i])

## THE INTONATION OF SENTENCE

13 The kinds of sentences are indicated by whether the tone is rising or falling at the end of a sentence.

1. The falling tone is used at the end of a declarative sentence.

for example :

그가 온다.  
[kuga onda]

he is coming

He is coming.

2. The rising tone is used at the end of an interrogative sentence.

for example :

그가 오는가?  
[kuga onun-ga]

he comes?

Is he coming?

But the interrogative word should be stressed when it appears in an interrogative sentence.

for example :

그가 언제 오는가?  
[kuga onje onun-ga]

he when comes?

When is he coming?

3. The tone should be even to the end of a suggestive sentence.

for example :

가자 ! [kaja] Let us go!

4. The falling tone is used at the end of an imperative sentence.

for example :

가라 ! [kara] Go !

5. The tone should be even to the end of an exclamatory sentence.

for example:

오, 조국<sup>→</sup>이여!  
[o chogugiyō]  
oh! fatherland

Oh! Fatherland!

## CONVERSATION

### 인 사 [insa]

안녕 하십니까?  
[annyonghasimnigga]  
well?

어떻게 지내십니까?  
[oddoke chinaesimnigga]  
how live?

나는 아주 건강합니다.  
[nanun aju kon · ganghamnida]  
I very healthy

당신도 건강합니까?  
[tangsindo kon · ganghamnigga]  
you also healthy?

고맙습니다. 아주 건강합니다.  
[komapsumnida aju kon · ganghamnida]  
thank you very healthy

처음 뵙습니다.  
[choum poepsumnida]  
first time see

어서 들어오십시오.  
[oso turoosipsio]  
please come in

어서 앉으십시오.  
[oso anjusipsio]  
please sit down

### Greetings

Hello!

Good morning.

Good evening.

How are you?

Very well, and you?

Thank you, I am very well.

How do you do?

Come in, please!

Take your seat, please.

매우 고맙습니다.  
[maeu komapsumnida]  
very much thank you

Thank you very much.

잠깐만 기다려주십시오.  
[chamganman kidaryojusipsio]  
a minute wait please

Wait a minute please.

당신은 누구십니까?  
[dangsinun nugusimnigga]  
you who are

Who are you?

당신의 이름은 무엇입니까?  
[tangsinui irumun muosimnigga]  
your name what is?

May I have your name,  
please?

저는 ... 이라고 부릅니다.  
[chonun ... irago purumnida]  
I ... call

My name is ...

당신은 어디서 오셨습니까?  
[tangsinun odeso osyotsumnigga]  
you where from came?

Where are you from?

저는 영국에서 왔습니다.  
[chonun yong · gugeso watsumnida]  
I England from came

I am from England.

나는 영국사람입니다.  
[nanun yong · guksaramimnida]  
I an Englishman am

I am an Englishman.

당신은 영어를 아십니까?  
[tangsinun yong · orul asimnigga]  
you English know?

Do you speak English?

나는 영어를 잘 못합니다.  
[nanun yong · orul chal motamnida]  
I English good not speak

I have a poor command  
of English.

예.  
[ye]  
yes

Yes.

아니요.  
[aniyo]  
no

No.

좋습니다.  
[chosumnida]  
good

All right.

나쁩니다.  
[nabbumnida]  
bad

기꺼이.  
[kiggoi]  
with pleasure

미안합니다.  
[mianhamnida]  
excuse me

선생.  
[sonsaeng]  
teacher

어서.  
[oso]  
please

대단히      감사합니다.  
[taedani      komapsumnida]  
very      thank

천만에.  
[chonmane]  
you are welcome

다시      만납시다.  
[tasi      mannapsida]  
again      meet

안녕히      가십시오.  
[annyong.i      kasipsio]  
well      go!

안녕히      계십시오.  
[annyong.i      kyesipsio]  
well      be!

안녕히      주무십시오.  
[annyong.i      chumusipsio]  
well      sleep!

Bad.

With pleasure.

Excuse me.

Mr.

Please!

Thank you very much.

You are welcome.

See you again!

Good-bye.

Good-bye.

Good night.

당신은 조선말을 아십니까? Do you speak Korean?

[tangsinun chosonmarul asimnigga]

당신은 조선말을  
[tangsinun chosonmarul  
you Korean

아십니까?  
[asimnigga]  
know?

Do you speak Korean?

당신은 영어를 아십니까?  
[tangsinun yong-orul asimnigga]  
you English know?

Do you speak English?

나는 조선말을 압니다.  
[nanun chosonmarul amnida]  
I Korean know

I speak Korean.

나는 영어를 잘 못합니다.  
[nanun yong-orul chal motamnida]  
I English good not speak

I have a poor command of English.

저의 말을 아시겠습니까?  
[choui marul asigetsumnigga]  
my word understand?

Do you understand me?

나는 당신의 말을 다  
[nanun tangsinui marul ta  
I your word all

I understand everything quite well.

알아들습니다.  
[aradutsumnida]  
understand

다 알아듣지 못합니다.  
[ta aradutji motamnida]  
all understand not can

I can't understand everything.

미안하지만 다시 한번  
[mianhajiman tasi hanbon  
please again once

I beg your pardon!

말해주십시오.  
[malhaeusipsio]  
speak

좀더 천천히 말해주십시오.  
[chomdo chonchoni malhaeusipsio]  
a little more slowly speak

Speak more slowly, please!



# 입국 및 출국[ipguk mit chulguk]

# Entry and Exit

입국수속  
[ipguksusok]  
entry formalities

entry formalities

나는 관광객입니다.  
[nanun kwan·gwang·gaegimnida]  
I a tourist am

I am a tourist.

손짐은 어디서 찾을 수  
[sonjimun odiso chajulsu]  
the luggage where can

Where can I collect back  
my luggage?

있습니까?  
[itsumnigga]  
get?

이것이 나의 짐표입니다.  
[igosi naui chimpyoimnida]  
this my luggage tag is

Here is my luggage tag.

나는 평양으로 직행합니다.  
[nanun pyongyang.uro chikaenghamnida]  
I Pyongyang to directly go

I'm going to Pyongyang  
directly.

입국[ipguk] entry  
출국[chulguk] exit  
착륙[changryuk] landing  
입국표[ipgukpyo] disembarkation  
출국표[chulgukpyo] embarkation  
려권[ryoggwon] passport  
사증[sajjung] visa  
려권검열[ryoggwon·gomyol]  
inspection of passports  
성[song] family name  
이름[irum] name

난날[nannal] date of birth  
난곳[nangot] birth-place  
성별[songbyol] sex  
남자[namja] male  
여자[nyoja] female  
나이[nai] age  
직업[chigop] occupation  
주소[chuso] address  
민족별[minjokbyol] nationality  
국적[kukjok] nationality, citizenship

## 세 관 [segwan]

## Customs

나에게는 신고수속해야 할  
[na · egenun sin · gosusokaeya hal  
with me to declare

I have nothing to declare.

물건은 없습니다.  
mulgonun opsumnida]  
article isn't

이것은 모두 나의 개인용품입니다.  
[igosun modu naui kaeinyongpumimnida]  
this all my article for

These are all my personal belongings.

personal is

이것은 동무에게 줄 선물입니다.  
[igosun tongmuege chul sonmurimnida]  
this a friend to to give a gift is

This is a gift for a friend.

이것은 영국으로 가지고가는  
[igosun yong · guguro kajigoganun  
this England to taking

This is a souvenir I'm taking to England.

기념품입니다.  
kinyompumimnida]  
a souvenir is

나에게는 귀중품은 없습니다.  
[na · egenun · kwijungpumun opsumnida]  
me jewelry isn't

I have no jewelry.

인삼술 2 병 있습니다.  
[insamsul tubyong itsumnida]  
Insam (ginseng) wine 2 bottles are

I have 2 bottles of Insam (ginseng) wine.

나에게는 300 파운드 있습니다.  
[na · egenun sambaek paundu itsumnida]  
me 300 pound is

I have 300 pounds.

이 사진기는 나의  
[i sajin · ginun naui  
this camera my

This camera is for my personal use.

개인용품입니다.  
kaeinyongpumimnida]  
for personal use article is

## 비행기여행 [pihaeng · giryoahaeng]

## Travelling by Air

당신은 오전 10시에  
[tangsinun ojon yolsie  
you morning 10 o'clock at

You must be at the airport  
at 10 o'clock in the  
morning.

비행장에 나가야 합니다.  
[pihaengjang·e nagaya hamnida]  
the airport to go must

어느 비행장에서  
[onu bihaengjang · eso  
which airport from

From which airport do we  
leave?

비행기를 탑니까?  
[pihaeng · girul tamnigga]  
the airplane get on?

나의 짐을 계산대까지  
[nauī chimul kyesandaeggaji  
my baggage the counter till

Take my baggage to the  
counter.

가져다주십시오.  
[kajyodachusipsio]  
take

표파는곳이 어디입니까?  
[pyopanun · gosi odiimnigga]  
the booking-office which place is?

Where is the booking-  
office?

런던까지 가는 표  
[londonggaji kanun pyo  
London till going ticket

Two tickets to London,  
please!

두장을 주십시오.  
[tujang · ul chusipsio]  
two sheets give

런던에 언제 도착합니까?  
[londone onje tochakamnigga]  
London at when land?

When do we land at  
London?

2호출구는 어디입니까?  
[ihochulgunun odiimnigga]  
2 number gate which place is?

Where is Gate 2?

나에게 짐이 세 (3) 짝있습니다.  
[na·ege chimi sejjakitsumnida]  
me baggage three pieces are

I have three pieces of  
baggage.

초과되는 [chogwadoenun] excess  
 짐운임은 chimunimun baggage charge

얼마입니까?  
 olmamnigga]  
 how much is?

비행장 [pihaengjang] airport  
 비행기 [pihaeng·gi] aeroplane  
 기다림칸 [kidarimkan] waiting room

「office  
 물음칸 [murumkan] information

비행기시간표 [pihaeng·gisiganpyo]  
 airline timetable

「ber  
 항로번호 [hangrobonho] flight num-

자리번호 [charibonho] seat number

비행기표 [pihaeng·gipyo] airline  
 ticket

표값 [pyogap] fare

1등급 [ildung·gup] first class

손짐 [sonjim] luggage

개인용품 [kaeinyongpum] personal  
 effects

트렁크 [turongku] trunk

짐표 [chimpyo] luggage tag

자리표 [charipyo] boarding card

비행장관세 [pihaengjang·gwanse]  
 airport tax

## 비행장에서 시내로

[pihaengjang·eso sinaero]

관광안내소가

[kwan·gwang·annaesoga

the tourist information office

어디에 있습니까?

odie itsumnigga]

where is?

What is the excess baggage  
 charge?

책임비행사 [chaegimbihaengsa]  
 captain

접대원 [chopdaewon] steward

여자접대원 [nyojajopdaewon] stew-  
 ardess

담배피우지 말것! [tambaepiujimal  
 got] NO SMOKING!

여자화장실 [nyojahwajangsil]

LADIES

남자화장실 [namjahwajangsil]

GENTLEMEN

사용중 [sayongjung] OCCUPIED

비어있음 [piyoisum] VACANT

출발 [chulbal] departure

도착 [tochak] arrival

리륙 [riryuk] take-off

착륙 [changryuk] landing

여객의 승차 [ryogaeguisungcha]  
 embarkation 「ference

시간차이 [siganchai] time dif-

통과사증 [tong·gwasajjung]

transit visa

## On the Way to the City from the Airport

Where is the tourist  
 information office?

좋은 려관을 소개해줄수  
[choun ryogwanul sogaehaejulsu  
a good hotel recommend

Can you recommend a  
good hotel?

없겠습니까?  
opgetsumnigga]  
cannot?

미안하지만 짐나르는 사람을  
[mianhajiman chimnarunun saramul  
please a porter

Please get me a porter!

불러주십시오.  
pullojusipsio]  
call!

이 짐을 택시까지  
[i chimul taeksiggaji  
this luggage taxi to

Take this luggage to the  
taxi, please!

가져다주십시오.  
kajyodajusipsio]  
take!

나를 창광산려관까지  
[narul chang·gwangsanryogwan·ggaji  
me the Changgwangsan Hotel to

Take me to the Chang-  
gwangsan Hotel!

데려다주십시오.  
deryodajusipsio]  
take!

운전수 [unjonsu] driver

체류예정기간 [cheryuyejong·gigan]

려권번호 [ryoggwonbonho] passport  
number

the scheduled period of stay

목적지 [mokjokji] destination

사증번호 [sajjungbonho] visa number

대사관 [taesagwan] embassy

떠난곳 [ddonangot] place of departure

령사관 [ryongsagwan] consulate

여행목적 [ryohaengmokjok] purpose  
of journey

## 기차여행 [kicharyohaeng]

## Travelling by Train

평양에 가십니까?

[pyongyang·e kasimnigga]

Pyongyang to go

예, 평양에 갑니다.

[ye pyongyang·e kamnida]

yes Pyongyang to go

언제 떠나십니까?

[onje ddonasimnigga]

when start?

래일 아침에 떠납니다.

[raeil achime ddonamnida]

tomorrow morning start

정거장까지 얼마나

[chong·gojang·ggaji olmana]

station to how much

걸립니까?

kollimnigga]

take?

15분에 갑니다.

[sibobune kamnida]

15minutes in go

자, 정거장에 왔습니다.

[cha chon·gojang·e watsumnida]

now the station to have come

차표를 사십시오.

[chapyorul sasipsio]

ticket buy!

1 등차표를 한장

[ildungchapyorul hanjang]

first-class ticket one sheet

사겠습니다.

sagetsumnida]

will buy

Are you going to Pyong-  
yang?

Yes, I am going to  
Pyongyang.

When will you start?

I shall start tomorrow  
morning.

How long does it take  
to the station?

We shall be there in a  
quarter of an hour.

Here we are at the sta-  
tion.

Get your ticket!

Let me have a first-class  
ticket.

평양까지 가는 1 등차표  
[pyongyang·ggaji kanun ildungchapyo  
Pyongyang to going first-class ticket

Give me a first-class one way ticket to Pyongyang!

한장을 주십시오!  
hanjang·ul chusipsio]  
one sheet give!

평양까지 가는데  
[pyongyang·ggaji kanunde  
Pyongyang to to go

How long does it take to get to Pyongyang?

시간이 얼마나 걸립니까?  
sigani olmana kollimnigga]  
the time how much necessary is?

Is it an express?

이것은 급행열차입니까?  
[igosun kupaengryolchaimnigga]  
it an express is?

Does this train have a sleeping compartment?

이 열차에 침대칸이  
[i ryolcha·e chimdaekani  
this train in a sleeping compartment

있습니까?  
itsumnigga]  
is?

Does this train carry a dining car?

이 열차에 열차식당이  
[i ryolcha·e ryolchasikdang·i  
this train in a dining car

있습니까?  
itsumnigga]  
is?

May I smoke here?

여기서 담배를 피울수  
[yogiso tambaerul piulsu  
here cigarette smoke

있습니까?  
itsumnigga]  
may?

From which platform does the train leave?

어느 플랫폼에서 기차가  
[onu pullaetuhomeso kichaga  
which platform from the train

떠납니까?  
ddonamnigga]  
leave?

어서 타십시오.  
[oso tasipsio]  
please get in

Get in, please!

기차가 곧 떠납니다.  
[kichaga kot ddonamnida]  
the train instantly start

The train's about to start.

자, 떠났습니다.  
[cha ddonatsumnida]  
now started

Now we're off.

여기는 어느 정거장입니까?  
[yoginun onu chong·gojang·imnigga]  
this place which station is?

What station is this?

여기는 함흥역입니다.  
[yoginun hamhung·yogimnida]  
this place Hamhung Station is

This is Hamhung Station.

여기서 얼마동안 멎습니까?  
[yogiso olmatong·an motsumnigga]  
here how long stops?

How long does the train stop here?

다음은 어느 정거장입니까?  
[taumun onu chong·gojang·imnigga]  
the next which station is?

What is the next station?

1시간이면 평양에  
[hansiganimyon pyongyang·e]  
an hour's time in Pyongyang at

We'll be in Pyongyang in an hour.

도착합니다.  
[tochakamnida]  
arrive

평양에 도착하게 되면  
[pyongyang·e tochakage toemyon]  
Pyongyang at when reach  
알려주십시오.  
[allyojusipsio]  
let me know

Please let me know when we reach Pyongyang.

자, 평양에 왔습니다.  
[cha pyongyang·e watsumnida]  
now Pyongyang to have come

Here we are in Pyongyang.

어서 내리십시오!  
[oso naerisipsio]  
please get off!

Get off, please!



정거장 [chong·gojang] station  
 시간표 [siganpyo] timetable  
 표파는곳 [pyopanun·got] ticket of-  
 fice, booking office  
 차표 [chapyo] ticket  
 왕복차표 [wangbokchapyo] return  
 ticket  
 손짐맡기는곳 [sonjimmatginun·got]  
 cloakroom  
 짐나르는 사람 [chimnarunun saram]  
 porter

나가는곳 [naganun·got] exit  
 들어가는곳 [turoganun·got] entrance  
 플랫폼 [pullaetuhom] platform  
 철길 [cholgil] railway  
 려객차 [ryogaekcha] passenger train  
 낮차 [natcha] day train  
 밤차 [pamcha] night train  
 전기차 [chon·gicha] electric train  
 차장 [chajang] conductor.  
 침대칸 [chimdaekan] compartment

## 려관에서 [ryogwaneso]

## At the Hotel

어느 려관으로 가십니까?  
 [onu ryogwanuro kasimnigga]  
 what hotel to go?  
 평양려관으로 갑니다.  
 [pyongyangryogwanuro kamnida]  
 Pyongyang Hotel to go  
 자, 평양 려관에 왔습니다.  
 [cha pyongyangryogwane watumnida]  
 now Pyongyang Hotel to have come  
 빈 방이 있습니까?  
 [pin pang·i itsumnigga]  
 vacant room is there?  
 저의 이름은 ... 입니다.  
 [choui irumun ... imnida]  
 my name ... is  
 려권이 여기 있습니다.  
 [ryoggwoni yogi itsumnida]  
 passport here is  
 우리는 4 명입니다.  
 [urinun nemyong·imnida]  
 we four persons are

What hotel are you  
 going to?  
 I am going to the  
 Pyongyang Hotel.  
 Here we are (at the  
 Pyongyang Hotel).  
 Have you any vacant  
 rooms?  
 My name is...  
 Here is my passport.  
 We are four in all.

여기에 써넣어 주십시오.  
[yogie ssonoo chusipsio]  
here fill in please!

나의 방은 몇호실입니까?  
[nauī pang'un myotosirimnigga]  
my room what number is?

이 방값은 얼마입니까?  
[i pang·gapsun olmaimnigga]  
this room price how much is?

이 방이 마음에 듭니다.  
[i pang·i maume tumnida]  
this room heart to suits

나는 외출합니다.  
[nanun oechulhamnida]  
I go out

1시에 돌아오겠습니다.  
[hansie toraogetsumnida]  
one at will be back

오늘 저녁에는 늦게  
[onul chonyogenun nutge]  
today the evening in late

돌아오겠습니다.  
[toraogetsumnida]  
will come back

나는 지금 돌아옵니다.  
[nanun chigum toraomnida]  
I now come back

누가 나를 찾아왔습니까?  
[nuga narul chajawatsumnigga]  
anyone me has asked for?

나에게 편지가 왔습니까?  
[na·ege pyonjiga watsumnigga]  
me for letter came?

호실관리원을 찾아주십시오.  
[hosilgwalliwonul chajajusipsio]  
a chambermaid seek!

들어오십시오.  
[turoosipsio]  
come in!

Please, fill this in!

What is my room number?

What is the price of this room?

I like this room.

I am going out.

I will be back at one.

This evening I will come back late.

I am back now.

Has anyone called for me?

Is there any mail for me?

Please send a chambermaid.

Come in.

언제 저녁식사를 할수 있습니까?  
[onje chonyoksiksarul halsu itsumnigga]  
when dinner can do?

여기에 영어를 아는 분이  
[yogie yong·orul anun puni]  
here English knowing person

있습니까?  
itsumnigga]  
is?

...을 가져다주십시오.  
[...ul kajyodajusipsio]  
... bring!

래일 아침 6시에  
[raeil achim yosotsie]  
tomorrow morning 6 o'clock at

나를 깨워주십시오.  
[narul ggaewojusipsio]  
me wake up!

아침식사를 방으로  
[achimsiksarul pang·uro]  
the breakfast the room to

가져다주십시오.  
[kajyodajusipsio]  
bring!

이것을 항공우편으로  
[igosul hang·gong·upyonuro]  
this air mail by

보내주십시오.  
[ponaejusipsio]  
send!

이것을 다려주십시오.  
[igosul taryojusipsio]  
this iron!

이것을 세탁소에 맡겨주십시오.  
[igosul setakso·e matgyojusipsio]  
this the laundry to entrust!

언제면 되겠습니까?  
[onjemyon toegetsumnigga]  
when will be ready?

When can I have dinner?

Is there anyone here  
who can speak English?

Please bring me ....

Please wake me at 6  
o'clock tomorrow mor-  
ning.

Please bring my breakfast  
to my room!

Please send it by air  
mail.

Iron these things, please.

I want to send it to the  
laundry.

When will I get it back?

나는 오늘 저녁에  
[nanun onul chonyoge  
I today the evening in  
떠납니다.  
ddonamnida]  
leave

This evening I am going  
to leave.

돈을 청산하려고 합니다.  
[tonul chongsanharyogo hamnida]  
money to settle want

I want to settle my bill.

계산서를 만들어주십시오.  
[kyesansorul mandurochusipsio]  
the bill get ready!

Get my bill ready, please.

나는 얼마 물어야 합니까?  
[nanun olma muroya hamnigga]  
I how much must pay?

How much must I pay?

려관[ryogwan] hotel

1 층[ilchung] ground floor

접수[chopsu] reception

2 층[ichung] first floor

호실[hosil] room

승강기[sung·gang·gi] lift

호실관리원[hosilgwalliwon] chamber-  
maid

1 인용 방[irinyong bang] single  
room

지배인[chibaein] manager

2 인용 방[iinyong bang] double  
room

등록장[tungrokjang] hotel register

식당[sikdang] restaurant

계산서[kyesanso] bill

간이식당[kanisikdang] snack bar

위생실[wisaengsil] toilet

휴게실[hyugyesil] lounge

목욕칸[mogyok·kan] bathroom

## 식당에서 [sikdang·eso]

## In a Restaurant

식당에 갑시다.  
[sikdang·e kapsida]  
the restaurant to go!

Let's go to the restaurant!

무엇을 드릴까요?  
[muosul turilgayo]  
what may offer?

What can I do for you?

음식표를 좀 보여주세요.  
[umsikpyorul chom poyojusipsio]  
the menu a little show please!

나는 정식을 주문합니다.  
[nanun chongsigul chumunhamnida]  
I the table d'hôte order

곧 됩니까?  
[kot toemnigga]  
soon is ready?

차를 드시겠습니까  
[charul tusigetsumnigga]  
tea will drink

아니면 커피를 드시겠습니까?  
[animyon kopirul tusigetsumnigga]  
or coffee will drink?

커피를 들겠습니까.  
[kopirul tulgetsumnida]  
coffee will drink

여기에 밥과 군빵이  
[yogie pagwa kunbbang:i]  
here boiled rice and toast

있습니다.  
[itsumnida]  
are

어느것을 드시겠습니까?  
[onugosul tusigetsumnigga]  
which will eat

밥을 먹겠습니까.  
[pabul mokgetsumnida]  
boiled rice will eat

커피의 맛이 어떻습니까?  
[kopiui masi oddosumnigga]  
coffee of the taste how is?

사탕가루를 더 드십시오!  
[satang-garurul to tusipsio]  
sugar more take please!

소젖을 좋아하십니까?  
[sojojul choahasimnigga]  
milk like?

Menu please!

I'll have the table d'hôte.

Can I have it right away?

Do you want tea or coffee?

I want coffee.

Here are boiled rice and toast.

Which will you have?

I'll have boiled rice.

How do you like the coffee?

Have some more sugar, please!

Do you like milk?

생달알을 드시겠습니까?  
[saengdalgarul tusigetsumnigga]  
fresh egg will take?

Will you have some fresh eggs?

빠다를 줌.  
[bbadarul chom]  
butter a little

A little butter, please.

햄을 줌.  
[haemul chom]  
ham a little

A little ham, please.

소금을 줌 주십시오.  
[sogumul chom chusipsio]  
salt a little give please!

May I have some salt, please!

후추가루를 줌 주십시오.  
[huchuggarurul chom chusipsio]  
pepper a little give please!

May I have some pepper, please?

빵을 좀 더 주십시오.  
[bbang-ul chomdo chusipsio]  
bread some more give please!

Some more bread, please!

나는 이것을 주문하지  
[nanun igosul chumunhaji]  
I this ordered

This is not what I ordered.

않았습시다.  
[anatsumnida]  
not

포도술을 드시겠습니까 아니면  
[podosurul tusigetsumnigga animyon]  
wine will drink or

Will you drink wine or beer?

맥주를 드시겠습니까?  
[maekjurul tusigetsumnigga]  
beer will drink?

I will drink beer.

맥주를 마시겠습니다.  
[maekjurul masigetsumnida]  
beer will drink

친선을 위하여 마십시오.  
[chinsonul wihayo masipsida]  
friendship for let's drink!

Let's drink to our friendship!

우리의 상봉을 위하여!  
[uriui sangbong-ul wihayo]  
our meeting for!

To our meeting!

당신의 [tangsinui] your 건강을 kon·gang·ul health 위하여! wihayo] for! To your health!

당신의 [tangsinui] your 행복을 haengbogul happiness 위하여! wihayo] for! To your happiness!

닭고기를 [takgogirul] chicken 좀 더 chomdo some more 드시겠습니까? tusigetsumnigga] will take? Will you have more chicken?

아니요, 감사합니다. [aniyo komapsumnida] no thank you 충분합니다. chungbunhamnida] enough No, thank you. I have enough.

고맙습니다. [komapsumnida] thank you 더 to more 먹고싶지 mokgosipji will eat No more, thank you.

않습니다. ansumnida] not

대접 해주어서 [taejopaejuoso] for service 고맙습니다. komapsumnida] thank Thank you. It was delicious.

식후다과로 [sikudagwaro] dessert for 무엇을 muosul what 드릴까요? turilgayo] may offer What would you like for dessert?

이 [i] this 좋은 choun fine 조선사과를 chosonsagwarul Korean apple 드십시오. tusipsio] take! Help yourself to this fine Korean apple!

접대원동무! [chopdaewondongmu] waiter comrade! 얼마입니까? olmaimnigga] how much is? Waiter, let me have the bill.

식당 [sikdang] restaurant

접대원 [chopdaewon] waiter

여자접대원 [nyojajopdaewon] waitress

조선음식 [chosonumsik] Korean food

구라파음식 [kurapaumsik] European food

food

아침식사 [achimsiksa] breakfast

점심식사 [chomsimsiksa] lunch

저녁식사 [chonyoksiksa] dinner

식사안내표 [siksaannaepyo] menu

국 [kuk] soup

밥 [pap] boiled rice

빵 [bbang] bread  
 빠다 [bbada] butter  
 치즈 [chiju] cheese  
 찬음식 [chanumsik] cold meal  
 사랑가루 [satang·garu] sugar  
 남새 [namsae] vegetable  
 생채 [saengchae] salad  
 삶은 달걀 [salmun dalgall] boiled egg  
 반숙한 달걀 [pansukan dalgall]  
 soft boiled egg  
 고기 [kogi] meat  
 닭고기 [takgogi] chicken  
 소고기 [sogogi] beef  
 돼지고기 [twaejigogi] pork  
 양고기 [yang·gogi] mutton  
 지진 물고기 [chijin mulgogi] boiled  
 굴 [kul] oyster [fish  
 과일 [kwail] fruit  
 사과 [sagwa] apple  
 배 [pae] pear  
 복숭아 [poksung·a] peach  
 포도 [podo] grapes  
 귤 [kyul] orange  
 딸기 [ddalgi] strawberry  
 참외 [chamoe] melon  
 바나나 [panana] banana  
 토마토 [tomado] tomato  
 술 [sul] liquor

인삼술 [insamsul] Insam wine,  
 ginseng wine  
 포도술 [podosul] grape wine  
 맥주 [maekju] beer  
 꼬냑 [ggonyaku] cognac  
 샴팡 [syampang] champagne  
 탄산물 [tansanmul] soda water  
 커피 [kopi] coffee  
 코코아 [kokoa] cocoa  
 초콜레트 [chyokolletu] chocolate  
 차 [cha] tea  
 레몬수 [remonsu] lemonade  
 소젖 [sojot] milk  
 사이다 [saida] fizzy drink  
 얼음보숭이 [orumbosung·i] ice-  
 cream  
 과일청량음료 [kwailchongryang·  
 umryo] sherbet  
 생과자 [saeng·gwaja] cake  
 칼 [kal] knife  
 포크 [poku] fork  
 숟가락 [sutgarak] spoon  
 젓가락 [choggarak] chopsticks  
 상수건 [sangsugon] napkin  
 재털이 [chaetori] ashtray  
 담배 [tambae] cigarette  
 성냥 [songnyang] match

### 우편국에서 [upyon·gugesol]

### At the Post-Office

국제우편국이  
 [kukjeupyon·gugi  
 the international post office where  
 있습니까?  
 [itsumnigga]  
 is?

어디  
 odi

Where is the international  
 post office?



우표를 주십시오.

[upyorul chusipsio]

stamp give please!

이 전보를 치고 싶습니다.

[i chonborul chigosipsumnida]

this telegram to send want

전보용지는 어디 있습니까?

[chonboyongjinun odi itsumnigga]

the telegram form where is?

이 전보를 보내주십시오.

[i chonborul ponaejusipsio]

this telegram send please!

이 소포를 보내고 싶습니다.

[i soporul ponaegosipsumnida]

this parcel to send want

이 편지를 항공우편으로

[i pyonjirul hang·gong·upyonuro]

this letter air mail by

보내주십시오.

[ponaejusipsio]

send please!

며칠 후에

[myochilhue]

how many days after

영국에

[yong·guge]

England to

도착합니까?

[tochakamnigga]

reach?

나는 런던에

[nanun londone]

I

London to

전화를

[chonhwarul]

telephone

걸려고합니다.

[kollyogohamnida]

will call

빨리 대주면 좋겠습니다.

[bballi taejumyon choketsumnida]

quickly if connects will be good

아직 말이 끝나지 않았습니다.

[ajik mari ggunnaji anatsumnida]

still word finished not

I want some stamps.

I want to send this telegram.

Where are the telegram forms?

Send this telegram, please.

I want to send this parcel

Please send this letter by air mail.

How long will it take to reach England?

I want to put through a call to London.

I want to make an urgent call.

I want to continue my call.

우편 [upyon] mail  
 편지 [pyonji] letter  
 항공편지 [hang·gongpyonji] air mail letter  
 엽서 [yopso] postcard  
 우표 [upyo] stamp  
 봉투 [pongtu] envelope  
 우편함 [upyonham] mailbox

전보 [chonbo] telegram  
 지급전보 [chigupjonbo] urgent telegram  
 보내는 사람 [ponaenun saram] sender  
 받는 사람 [pannun saram] addressee  
 전화 [chonhwa] telephone

### 돈바꾸는곳 [tonbaggunungot]

### Money Exchange

어디서 돈을 바꿀수 있습니까?  
 [odiso tonul paggulsu itsumnigga]  
 where money change can?

Where can I change money?

나는 영국돈을 가지고있습니다.  
 [nanun yong·gukdonul kajigoitsumnida]  
 I English money have

I have some pounds.

나는 달러를 가지고있습니다.  
 [nanun ddallarul kajigoitsumnida]  
 I dollar have

I have some dollars.

조선돈으로 바꾸어줄수 있습니까?  
 [chosondonuro pagguojulsu itsumnigga]  
 Korean money into change could?

Can I change it for Korean currency?

예.  
 [ye]  
 yes

Yes.

얼마나 바꾸겠습니까?  
 [olmana paggugetsumnigga]  
 how much will exchange?

How much will you change?

50파운드를 바꾸겠습니다.  
 [osip·paundurul paggugetsumnida]  
 50 pounds will change

I will change 50 pounds.

20달러를 바꿔주십시오.  
 [isipddallarul paggwojusipsio]  
 20 dollars change please!

Please change 20 dollars.

잔돈으로 바꿔주십시오.  
 [chandonuro paggwojusipsio]  
 small money into change please!

I want some small change.

돈을 여기로 주십시오.  
[tonul yogiro chusipsio]  
money here give please

돈을 받으십시오.  
[tonul padusipsio]  
the money receive please

고맙습니다.  
[komapsumnida]  
thank you

돈 [ton] money

### 리발소에서 [ribalsoeso]

어서 앉으십시오.  
[oso anjusipsio]  
please sit down!

고맙습니다.  
[komapsumnida]  
thank you

면도를 하겠습니까 아니면  
[myondorul hagetsumnigga animyon]  
shaving would have or

머리를 깎겠습니까?  
[morirul ggakgetsumnigga]  
the hair cut would have?

둘 다 부탁드립니다.  
[tul ta putakamnida]  
two all request please!

파마를 약간 해주십시오.  
[pamarul yakgan haejusipsio]  
permanent little make please!

머리를 씻겠습니까?  
[morirul ssitgetsumnigga]  
hair washed would have?

예, 부탁드립니다.  
[ye putakamnida]  
yes request please

Please let me have the money.

Please, take the money.

Thank you!

수표 [supyo] signature

### At the Hairdresser's

Please take a seat!

Thank you!

Would you care to have a hair cut or a shave?

Both, please!

I want to have a soft perm.

Would you care to have your hair washed?

Yes, if you please.

얼마입니까?  
[olmaimnigga]  
how much is?

...원 입니다.  
[...won imnida]  
...won is

### 의사한테서 [uisahanteso]

병원으로 실어다주십시오.  
[pyongwonuro sirodajusipsio]  
the hospital to carry please!

의사를 불러주십시오.  
[uisarul pullo jusipsio]  
a doctor call please!

저는 몸이 몹시 불편합니다.  
[chonun momi mopsi pulpyonhamnida]  
I the body very not well

어디가 불편합니까?  
[odiga pulpyonhamnigga]  
which place not well?

언제부터 앓습니까?  
[onjebuto alsumnigga]  
when since are ill?

어제부터 앓습니다.  
[ojebuto alsumnida]  
yesterday since am ill

지금 어디가 아릅니까?  
[chigum odiga apumnigga]  
now which place pain?

머리가 아픕니다.  
[moriga apumnida]  
the head pain

배가 아픕니다.  
[paega apumnida]  
the stomach pain

여기가 아픕니다.  
[yogiga apumnida]  
here pain

How much is it?

...won, please.

### At the Doctor's

Please take me to the hospital!

Please send for a doctor!

I don't feel very well.

What's wrong with you?

How long have you been ill?

I have been ill since yesterday.

What are you suffering from?

I've a headache.

I've a stomach-ache.

I have a pain here.

감기에 걸렸습니다.  
[kamgie kollyotsumnida]  
a cold to have caught

I've caught a cold.

기침합니다.  
[kichimhamnida]  
cough

I have a cough.

이발이 아픕니다.  
[ibbari apumnida]  
a tooth pain

I have a toothache.

오한이 납니다.  
[ohani namnida]  
chills have

I have chills.

설사합니다.  
[solsahamnida]  
have diarrhoea

I have diarrhoea.

어지럽습니다.  
[ojiropsumnida]  
dizzy

I feel dizzy.

식욕이 있습니까?  
[sigyogi itsumnigga]  
appetite is there?

Do you have any appetite?

식욕이 없습니다.  
[sigyogi opsumnida]  
appetite there is not

I have no appetite.

당신의 맥박이 좀  
[tangsinui maekbagi chom]  
your pulse rather

Your pulse is rather fast.

빠릅니다.  
[bbarumnida]  
quick

당신은 열이 있습니다.  
[tangsinun yori itsumnida]  
you fever there is

You have a fever.

당신은 감기에 걸렸습니다.  
[tangsinun kamgie kollyotsumnida]  
you a cold to have caught

You've caught a cold.

병원에 입원해야 합니까?  
[pyongwone ibwonhaeya hamnigga]  
hospital to have to go?

Do I have to go to  
hospital?

며칠 안정해야 합니까?  
[myochil anjonghaeya hamnigga]  
how many days quiet have to keep?

How long do I have to  
stay in bed?

이 약을 몇 번  
[i yagul myotbon]  
this medicine how many times

How often do I have to  
take the medicine?

먹어야 합니까?  
mogoya hamnigga]  
eat have to

병원 [pyong·won] hospital  
약국 [yaguk] pharmacy  
의사 [uisa] doctor  
간호원 [kanhowon] nurse  
내과 의사 [naeggwauisa] physician  
외과 의사 [oeggwauisa] surgeon  
안과 의사 [anggwauisa] oculist  
구강과 의사 [kugang·gwauisa] dentist  
신경과 의사 [singyong·gwauisa]  
neurologist  
피부과 의사 [pibuggwauisa] dermat-  
ologist [trician  
소아과 의사 [soaggwauisa] paedia-  
산부인과 의사 [sanbuingwauisa]  
gynaecologist  
병 [pyong] illness

열 [yol] temperature  
맥박 [maekbak] pulse  
혈압 [hyorap] blood pressure  
처방 [chobang] prescription  
약 [yak] medicine  
주사 [chusa] injection  
붕대 [pungdae] bandage  
가제 [kaje] gauze  
탈지면 [taljimyon] absorbent  
cotton  
반창고 [panchang·go] adhesive  
tape  
요드링크 [yodutingku] iodine tinc-  
ture  
안마 [anima] massage

## 인체 [inche]

## Human Body

### 1. 몸 [mom] The body

머리 [mori] head  
얼굴 [olgul] face

목 [mok] neck  
어깨 [oggae] shoulder

팔[pal] arm  
 가슴[kasum] chest, breast  
 배[pae] belly  
 등[tung] back  
 심장[simjang] heart

피[pi] blood  
 폐[pe] lungs  
 위[wi] stomach  
 허리[hori] waist  
 다리[tari] leg

## 2. 머리 [mori] The head

머리카락[morikal] hair  
 이마[ima] forehead  
 눈썹[nunsop] eyebrow  
 눈[nun] eye  
 코[ko] nose  
 입[ip] mouth  
 입술[ipsul] lips  
 이빨[ibbal] teeth

혀[hyo] tongue  
 턱[tok] chin  
 턱수염[toksuyom] beard  
 코수염[kosuyom] moustache  
 구레나룻[kurenarut] whiskers  
 귀[kwi] ear  
 뺨[bbyam] cheeks

## 3. 팔[pal] The arm

팔꿈치[palggumchi] elbow  
 손[son] hand  
 손가락[son-garak] finger  
 손바닥[sonbadak] palm  
 손톱[sontop] nail

살가죽[salgajuk] skin  
 살[sal] flesh  
 힘살[himsal] muscles  
 뼈[bbyo] bones

## 4. 다리 [tari] The leg

넙적다리[nopjokdari] thigh  
 무릎[murup] knee  
 장딴지[changddanji] calf

발[pal] foot  
 발가락[palgarak] toe  
 발바닥[palbadak] sole (of the foot)

## 길묻기 [kilmutgi]

## Asking the Way

...으로 가는 길을 대주십시오.  
 [...uro kanun kirul taejusipsio]  
 ...to going way tell please

Please tell me the way  
 to ....

평양역으로 가는 길이  
[pyongyang·yoguro kanun kiri  
Pyongyang Station to going way

어느것입니까?  
[onugosimnigga]  
which is?

이것이 평양역으로 가는  
[igosi pyongyang·yoguro kanun  
this Pyongyang Station to going

길입니까?  
[kirimnigga]  
way is?

이 길리는 어디로 갑니까?  
[i korinun odiro kamnigga]  
this road where to go

어느 방향으로 가야 합니까?  
[onu panghyang·uro kaya hamnigga]  
which direction to must go?

나는 곧바로 가야 합니까?  
[nanun kotbaro kaya hamnigga]  
I straight go must?

나는 왼쪽으로 돌아야 합니까?  
[nanun oenjoguro toraya hamnigga]  
I the left to turn must?

당신은 그대로 가면 됩니다.  
[tangsinun kudaero kamyon toemnida]  
you as it is when go become

여기서 ...까지는 멀니까?  
[yogiso ...ggajinun momnigga]  
from here ...till far is?

여기서 평양역까지  
[yogiso pyongyang·yokggaji  
here from Pyongyang Station to

얼마나 멀니까?  
[olmana momnigga]  
how far is?

Which is the way to  
Pyongyang Station?

Is this the way to  
Pyongyang Station?

Where does this road lead  
to?

Which way should I go?

Should I go straight on?

Should I turn left?

Please going straight  
on.

Is ... far from here?

How far is it from  
here to Pyongyang Station?



여기서 대략 1킬로미터입니다. It is about one kilometre  
[yogiso taeryak hankirometoimnida] from here.  
here from about one kilometre is

여기는 어디입니까? Where are we now?  
[yoginun odiimnigga]  
here which place is?

이 거리이름은 무엇입니까? What is this street?  
[i koriirumun muosimnigga]  
this street name what is?

이것은 무슨 집입니까? What is this building?  
[igosun musun chibimnigga]  
this what house is?

동쪽 [tongjjok] east	다리 [tari] bridge
서쪽 [sojjok] west	신호등 [sinhodung] traffic signal
남쪽 [namjjok] south	안내소 [annaeso] Inquiry Office
북쪽 [pukjjok] north	종합대학 [chonghapdaehak] univer-
오른쪽의 (오른쪽) [orunjogui] ([orun-	sity
jjok]) right	단과대학 [tankwadaehak] college
왼쪽의 (왼쪽) [oenjjogui] ([oenjjok])	학교 [hakgyo] school
구역 [kuyok] district	도서관 [tosogwan] library
길 [kil] road	광장 [kwangjang] square
거리 [kori] street	경기장 [kyong.gijang] stadium
상점거리 [sangjomgori] shopping	공원 [kongwon] park
street	분수 [punsu] fountain
인도 [indo] pavement	탑 [tap] tower
십자로 [sipjaro] crossroads	시장 [sijang] market
건널길 [konnumgil] pedestrian	강 [kang] river
crossing	운하 [unha] canal

## 광고 및 간판

[kwang·go mit kanpan]

## Notices and Signs

광고 [kwang·go] Announcement, Notice, Advertisement  
나가는 곳 [naganungot] Exit

들어가는곳[turoganungot] Entrance  
 건너가는곳[konnoganun·got] Crossing  
 섯! [sot] Stop!  
 들어오지 마시오! [turoojimasio] No admittance!  
 담배피우지 말것! [tambaepiujimalgot] No smoking!  
 버스정류소[bbosujongryuso] Bus Stop  
 택시정류소[taeksijongryuso] Taxi Stand  
 점심시간[chomsimsigan] Dinner Hour  
 쉬는날[swinunnal] Closed

택시 및 버스  
 [taeksi mit bbosu]

Taxis and Buses

택시정류소가 어디입니까?  
 [taeksijongryusoga odiimmigga]  
 the taxi stand which place is?

Where is the taxi stand?

택시를 불러주십시오.  
 [taeksirul pullojusipsio]  
 a taxi call please!

Call a taxi, please!

나를 ...까지 태워다주십시오.  
 [narul ...ggaji taewodajusipsio]  
 me ...till carry please!

Please take me to ...!

여기서 나를 좀 기다려주십시오.  
 [yogiso narul chom kidaryojusipsio]  
 here me a moment wait please!

Please wait a moment for me here.

곧바로 가십시오.  
 [kotbaro kasipsio]  
 straight go on please!

Go straight on, please!

다음 교차점에서 오른쪽으로  
 [taum kyochajomeso orunjoguro]  
 the next crossing at the right

Turn to the right at the next crossing!

돌아주십시오.  
 torajusipsio]  
 to turn!

좀더 빨리 갑시다.  
[chom do bballi kapsida]  
a little more fast go please!

여기서 세워주십시오.  
[yogiso sewojusipsio]  
here stop please!

얼마 물면 됩니까?  
[olma mulmyon toemnigga]  
how much pay come to?

...으로 가는 버스 정류소가  
[...uro kanun bbosujongryusoga]  
...to going bus stop

어디입니까?  
[odiimnigga]  
which place is?

여기서 몇 정류소  
[yogiso myot chongryuso]  
here from how many stop

가면 됩니까?  
[kamyon toemnigga]  
when go will be?

택시 [taeksi] taxi  
 시내버스 [sinaebbosu] city bus  
 시외버스 [sioebbosu] long-distance  
 bus, suburb service bus  
 무궤도전차 [mugwedojoncha] trolley  
 bus

### 시내구경 [sinaegugyong]

관광지들을 좀  
[kwan · gwangjidurul chom]  
tourist resorts some

말해주십시오.  
[malhaejusipsio]  
tell please

Hurry up, please!

Stop here, please!

What is the fare?

Where is the bus stop  
for...?

How many stops is it  
from here?

전차 [choncha] streetcar  
 지하철도 [chihacholdo] under-  
 ground railway, subway  
 버스정류소 [bbosujongryuso] bus  
 stop

### City Sightseeing

Please tell me some  
tourist resorts.

나는 만경대를 방문  
[nanun mangyongdaerul pangmun  
I Mangyongdae to visit

하였으면 합니다.  
hayossumyon hamnida ]  
want

나는 주체사상탑  
[nanun chuchësasangtab  
I the Tower of Juche Idea

(개선문)을 보았으면  
(kaesonmun)ul poassumyon  
(the Arch of Triumph) to see

합니다.  
hamnida ]  
want

나는 국제친선전람관을  
[nanun kukjechinsonjollamgwaul  
I the International Friendship Exhibition

방문하였으면 합니다.  
pangmunhayossumyon hamnida ]  
to visit want

나는 김일성경기장으로  
[nanun Kim Il Sung gyong-gijang-uro  
I Kim Il Sung Stadium to

갔으면 합니다.  
kassumyon hamnida ]  
to go want

나는 인민대학습당  
[nanun inmindæhaksupdang  
I the Grand People's Study House  
(평양산원)을  
(pyongyangsanwon)ul  
(the Pyongyang Maternity Hospital)

보았으면 합니다.  
poassumyon hamnida ]  
to see want

I want to visit Man-  
gyongdae.

I want to see the  
Tower of the Juche Idea  
(the Arch of Triumph).

I want to visit the  
International Friend-  
ship Exhibition.

I want to go to  
Kim Il Sung Stadium.

I want to see the Grand  
People's Study House  
(the Pyongyang Mater-  
nity Hospital).

나는 서해갑문을 보았으면  
[nanun sohaegammunul poassumyon  
I West Sea Barrage to see

합니다.  
hamnida]  
want

나는 백두산(금강산)으로  
[nanun paekdusan(kumgangsant)uro  
I Mt. Paekdu(Mt. Kumgang) to

갔으면 합니다.  
kasumyon hamnida]  
to go want

영어로 된 안내서를  
[yong·oro toen annaesorul  
English in a guidebook

주십시오.  
chusipsio]  
give please!

영어를 아는 안내원을  
[yong·orul anun annaewonul  
English knowing guide

불여주십시오.  
puchyojusipsio]  
give please!

시내 관광버스가 있습니까?  
[sinaegwan·gwangbbosuga itsumnigga]  
city sightseeing bus is there?

버스가 언제 떠납니까?  
[bbosuga onje ddonamnigga]  
the bus when start?

버스가 언제 돌아옵니까?  
[bbosuga onje toraomnigga]  
the bus when get back?

표값은 얼마입니까?  
[pyogapsun olmamnigga]  
ticket price how much is?

이것은 무엇입니까?  
[igosun muosimnigga]  
this what is?

I want to see the West  
Sea Barrage.

I want to go to Mt.  
Paekdu(Mt. Kumgang).

Can I have an English  
guidebook?

I want an English-  
speaking guide.

Is there any city sight-  
seeing bus?

When does the bus leave?

When does the bus get  
back?

What's the fare?

What is this?

저것은 무엇입니까?  
[chogosun muosimnigga]  
that what is?

What is that?

## 극장 [kukjang]

## Theatre

지금 무엇이 상연되고 있습니까?  
[chigum muosi sang·yondoe goitsumnigga]  
now what is showing?

What's on now?

지금 평양대극장에서  
[chigum pyongyang daegukjang·eso  
now the Pyongyang Grand Theatre in  
무엇이 상연되고 있습니까?  
muosi sang·yondoe goitsumnigga]  
what is showing?

What's on now at the  
Pyongyang Grand  
Theatre?

가극을 어디서 볼 수 있습니까?  
[kagugul odiso polsu itsumnigga]  
an opera where can see?

Where can I see an opera?

공연이 몇시에  
[kong·yoni myotsie  
the performance what time in

What time does the per-  
formance begin?

시작됩니까?  
[sijakdoemnigga]  
begins?

공연이 몇시에  
[kong·yoni myotsie  
the performance what time in

What time does the per-  
formance end?

끝납니까?  
[ggunnamnigga]  
ends?

몇시간 상연됩니까?  
[myotsigan sang·yondoemnigga]  
how much time shows?

How long does it last?

나는 좋은 자리를  
[nanun choun charirul  
I a good seat

I want a good seat.

받았으면 합니다.  
[padassumyon hamnida]  
to get want

저의 자리까지 안내해 주십시오.  
[choui chariggaji annaehaejusipsio]  
my seat to lead please!

Please show me to  
my seat!

휴식은 얼마동안입니까?  
[hyusigun olmadong·animnigga]  
the interval how long is?

How long is the  
interval?

공연이 마음에 듭니까?  
[kong·yoni maume tumnigga]  
the performance the heart to suit?

Did you like the per-  
formance?

음악회가 마음에 듭니까?  
[umakoega maume tumnigga]  
the concert the heart to suit?

Did you like the  
concert?

영화가 마음에 듭니까?  
[yonghwaga maume tumnigga]  
the film the heart to suit?

Did you like the film?

극장 [kukjang] theatre

영화 [yonghwa] film

평양대극장 [pyongyangdaegukjang]

음악 [umak] music

Pyongyang Grand Theatre

민요 [minyo] folk song

교예극장 [kyoyegukjang] circus

고전음악 [kojonumak] classical  
music

영화관 [yonghwagwan] cinema

경음악 [kyong·umak] light music

공연순서 [kong·yonsunso] programme

민족무용 [minjongmuyong] folk  
dance

공연 [kong·yon] play

음악회 [umakoe] concert

바레무용 [paremuyong] ballet

가극 [kaguk] opera

교예 [kyoye] circus

연극 [yon·guk] drama

## 사진찍기 [sajinjjikgi]

## Photographing

여기서 사진을 찍어도 됩니까?  
[yogiso sajinul jjigodo toemnigga]  
here a photograph take may?

May I take a picture  
here?

저와 함께 사진을  
[chowa hamgge sajinul]  
me with together photograph

Would you mind posing  
with me?

찍읍시다.  
[jjigupsida]  
let's take!

명승지 [myongsungji] famous spots  
 사적지 [sajokji] historical places  
 기념비 [kinyombi] monument  
 박물관 [pangmulgwan] museum  
 미술박물관 [misulbangmulgwan] art  
 museum, art gallery

전람관 [chollamgwan] exhibition  
 동물원 [tongmurwon] zoo  
 식물원 [singmurwon] botanical  
 garden  
 수족관 [sujokgwan] aquarium

## 물건사기 [mulgonsagi]

저와 함께 상점으로  
 [chowa hamgge sangjomuro]  
 me with together the shop to

가지 않겠습니까?  
 [kaji anketsumnigga]  
 go will not?

갑시다.  
 [kapsida]  
 let's go!

무엇을 사겠습니까?  
 [muosul sagetsumnigga]  
 what buy will?

나는 ...을 사고 싶습니다.  
 [nanun ...ul sagosipsumnida]  
 I ...to buy want

...을 어디서 살수 있습니까?  
 [...ul odeso salsu itsumnigga]  
 ... where buy can?

어디서 모자와 신발을 살수  
 [odeso mojawwa sinbarul salsu]  
 where hat and shoes buy

있습니까?  
 [itsumnigga]  
 can?

모자를 사겠습니까?  
 [mojarul sagetsumnigga]  
 hat buy will?

...을 보여주십시오.  
 [...ul poyojusipsio]  
 ... show please!

## Shopping

Will you go shopping  
 with me?

With pleasure.

What can I do for you?

I want to buy...

Where can I buy ...?

Where could I buy a  
 hat and a pair of shoes?

Would you like to buy  
 a hat?

Please show me...



다른것을 보여주세요.  
[tarun·gosul poyojusipsio]  
another one show please!

Please show me another one!

나는 이것을 가지겠습니다.  
[nanun igosul kajigetsumnida]  
I this take will

I will take this.

얼마입니까?  
[olmaimnigga]  
how much is?

How much is that?

이것은 얼마입니까?  
[igosun olmaimnigga]  
this how much is?

What's the price of this one?

저것은 얼마입니까?  
[chogosun olmaimnigga]  
that how much is?

What's the price of that one?

조영사전이  
[choyongsajoni]  
the Korean-English dictionary

Have you a Korean-English dictionary?

있습니까?  
[itsumnigga]  
is there?

조선지도가 있습니까?  
[chosonjidoga itsumnigga]  
Korean map is there?

Have you a map of Korea?

이 책의 영문판이  
[i chaegui yongmunpani]  
this book of the English edition  
있습니까?  
[itsumnigga]  
is there?

Have you got the English edition of this book?

예, 이것이 영문판입니다.  
[ye igosi yongmunpanimnida]  
yes this an English edition is

Yes, this is an English edition.

그것을 보여주세요.  
[kugosul poyojusipsio]  
it show please

Please let me see it!

값은 얼마입니까?  
[kapsun olmaimnigga]  
the price how much is?

What's the price, please!

한부 사겠습니다.  
[hanbu sagetsumnida]  
a copy will buy

I'll take a copy.

이 시계를 고쳐 주십시오.  
[i sigyerul kochojusipsio]  
this watch repair please!

Please repair this watch!

이 필름을 현상해 주십시오.  
[i pillimul hyonsanghaejusipsio]  
this film develop please!

Develop this film, please!

언제면 됩니까?  
[onjemyon toemnigga]  
when is ready?

When will it be ready?

백화점 [paekwajom] department store

기념품 [kinyompum] souvenir

그림 [kurim] picture

신발 [sinbal] shoes

신발상점 [sinbalsangjom] shoe shop

시계 [sigye] watch

시계상점 [sigyesangjom] watch shop

책 [chaek] book

책방 [chaekbang] book shop

놀이감 [noriggam] toy

인형 [inhyong] doll

만년필 [mannyonpil] fountain-pen

화장품 [hwajangpum] cosmetic

치약 [chiyak] toothpaste

치솔 [chissol] toothbrush

면도칼 [myondokal] razor

빗 [pit] comb

세면수건 [semyonsugon] towel

손수건 [sonsugon] handkerchief

양복점 [yangbokjom] tailor shop

넥타이 [nektai] necktie

모자 [moja] hat

장갑 [changgap] gloves

긴양말 [kinyangmal] stockings

짧은 양말 [jjalbunyangmal] socks

속내의 [songnaeui] underwear

사진용품상점 [sajinyongpumsangjom]

camera shop

# 수 [su] Numerals

## 1. The cardinal numbers

number	Korean			English
	The pure Korean cardinal numbers		The cardinal numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters	
	substan- tival	adjectival	substantival, adjectival	
1	하나 [hana]	한 [han]	일 [il]	one
2	둘 [tul]	두 [tu]	이 [i]	two
3	셋 [set]	세 [se]	삼 [sam]	three
4	넷 [net]	네 [ne]	사 [sa]	four
5	다섯 [tasot]	다섯 [tasot]	오 [o]	five
6	여섯 [yosot]	여섯 [yosot]	륙 [ryuk]	six
7	일곱 [ilgop]	일곱 [ilgop]	칠 [chil]	seven
8	여덟 [yodol]	여덟 [yodol]	팔 [pal]	eight
9	아홉 [ahop]	아홉 [ahop]	구 [ku]	nine
10	열 [yol]	열 [yol]	십 [sip]	ten

11	열하나 [yolhana]	열한 [yolhan]	십일 [sibil]	eleven
12	열둘 [yoldul]	열두 [yoldu]	십이 [sibi]	twelve
13	열셋 [yolset]	열세 [yolse]	십삼 [sipsam]	thirteen
14	열넷 [yolnet]	열네 [yolne]	십사 [sipsa]	fourteen
15	열다섯 [yoldasot]	열다섯 [yoldasot]	십오 [sibo]	fifteen
16	열여섯 [yoryosot]	열여섯 [yoryosot]	십륙 [simryuk]	sixteen
17	열일곱 [yorilgop]	열일곱 [yorilgop]	십칠 [sipchil]	seventeen
18	열여덟 [yoryodol]	열여덟 [yoryodol]	십팔 [sippal]	eighteen
19	열아홉 [yorahop]	열아홉 [yorahop]	십구 [sipgu]	nineteen
20	스물 [sumul]	스무 [sumu]	이십 [isip]	twenty
21	스물하나 [sumulhana]	스물한 [sumulhan]	이십일 [isibil]	twenty one
22	스물둘 [sumuldul]	스물두 [sumuldu]	이십이 [isibi]	twenty two
30	서른 [sorun]	서른 [sorun]	삼십 [samsip]	thirty
40	마흔 [mahun]	마흔 [mahun]	사십 [sasip]	forty
50	쉰 [swin]	쉰 [swin]	오십 [osip]	fifty
60	예순 [yesun]	예순 [yesun]	륙십 [ryuksip]	sixty
70	일흔 [ilhun]	일흔 [ilhun]	칠십 [chilsip]	seventy
80	여든 [yodun]	여든 [yodun]	팔십 [palsip]	eighty

90	아흔 [ahun]	아흔 [ahun]	구십 [kusip]	ninety
100			백 [paek]	hundred
101	백 하나 [paek·hana]	백 한 [paek·han]	백 일 [paegil]	a hundred and one
102	백 둘 [paekdul]	백 두 [paekdu]	백 이 [paegi]	a hundred and two
200			이 백 [ibaek]	two hundred
300			삼백 [sambaek]	three hundred
400			사백 [sabaek]	four hundred
500			오백 [obaek]	five hundred
600			육백 [ryukbaek]	six hundred
700			칠백 [chilbaek]	seven hundred
800			팔백 [palbaek]	eight hundred
900			구백 [kubaek]	nine hundred
1000			천 [chon]	a thousand
1001	천 하나 [chonhana]	천 한 [chonhan]	천 일 [chonil]	a thousand and one
10000			만 [man]	ten thousand
100000			십만 [simman]	hundred thousand
1000000			백만 [paengman]	one million
10000000			천만 [chonman]	ten million
100000000			억 [ok]	hundred million

## 2. The ordinal numbers:

Korean		English
The pure Korean ordinal numbers	The ordinal numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters	
첫 (번)째 [chot(bon)jjae]	제 일 [cheil]	first
두 번 째,      둘 째 [tubonjjae]    [tuljjae]	제 이 [chei]	second
세 번 째,      셋 째 [sebonjjae]    [setjjae]	제 삼 [chesam]	third
네 번 째,      넷 째 [nebonjjae]    [netjjae]	제 사 [chesa]	fourth
다섯 (번)째 [tasot(bon)jjae]	제 오 [cheo]	fifth
여섯 (번)째 [yosot(bon)jjae]	제 륵 [cheryuk]	sixth
일 곱 (번)째 [ilgop(bon)jjae]	제 칠 [chechil]	seventh
여덟 (번)째 [yodol(bon)jjae]	제 팔 [chepal]	eighth
아홉 (번)째 [ahop(bon)jjae]	제 구 [chegu]	ninth
열 (번)째 [yol(bon)jjae]	제 십 [chesip]	tenth
열 한 (번)째 [yolhan(bon)jjae]	제 십 일 [chesibil]	eleventh
열 두 (번)째 [yoldu(bon)jjae]	제 십 이 [chesibi]	twelfth
스무 (번)째 [sumn(bon)jjae]	제 이 십 [cheisip]	twentieth
서른 (번)째 [sorun(bon)jjae]	제 삼 십 [chesamsip]	thirtieth
마흔 (번)째 [mahun(bon)jjae]	제 사 십 [chesasip]	fortieth
쉰 (번)째 [swin(bon)jjae]	제 오 십 [cheosip]	fiftieth
예순 (번)째 [yesun(bon)jjae]	제 륵 십 [cheryuksip]	sixtieth
일흔 (번)째 [ilhun(bon)jjae]	제 칠 십 [chechilsip]	seventieth
여든 (번)째 [yodun(bon)jjae]	제 팔 십 [chepalsip]	eightieth
아흔 (번)째 [ahun(bon)jjae]	제 구 십 [chekusip]	ninetieth
백 (번)째 [paek(bon)jjae]	제 일 백 [cheilbaek]	hundredth

## 돈 [ton]

## Money

### 1. Coins:

1전 [iljon] 1jon

5전 [ojon] 5jon

10전 [sipjon] 10jon

50전 [osipjon] 50jon

1원 [irwon] 1won

### 2. Paper money:

1원 [irwon] 1won

5원 [owon] 5won

10원 [sibwon] 10won

50원 [osibwon] 50won

100원 [paegwon] 100won

## 시간 [sigan]

## Time

시계 [sigye] clock

일 [il] day

시간 [sigan] hour

시 [si] o'clock

분 [pun] minute

초 [cho] second

년 [nyon] year

월 [wol] month

1 시입니다.  
[hansiimnida]  
one o'clock is

It is one o'clock.

2 시입니다.  
[tusiimnida]  
two o'clock is

It is two o'clock.

3 시입니다.  
[sesiimnida]  
three o'clock is

It is three o'clock.

4 시입니다.  
[nesiimnida]  
four o'clock is

It is four o'clock.

5 시입니다.  
[tasotsiimnida]  
five o'clock is

It is five o'clock.

6 시입니다.  
[yosotsiimnida]  
six o'clock is

It is six o'clock.

7 시입니다.  
[ilgopsiimnida]  
seven o'clock is

It is seven o'clock.

8 시 입니다.  
[yodolsiimnida]  
eight o'clock is

It is eight o'clock.

9 시 입니다.  
[ahopsiimnida]  
nine o'clock is

It is nine o'clock.

10 시 입니다.  
[yolsiimnida]  
ten o'clock is

It is ten o'clock.

11 시 입니다.  
[yolhansiimnida]  
eleven o'clock is

It is eleven o'clock.

12 시 입니다.  
[yoldusiimnida]  
twelve o'clock is

It is twelve o'clock.

몇 시입니까?  
[myotsiimnigga]  
what time is?

What time is it?

1 시가          지났습니다.  
[hansiga      chinatsumnida]  
one o'clock    past is

It's past one.

1 시          15분입니다.  
[hansi        sibobunimnida]  
one o'clock   fifteen   minute is

It's a quarter past one.

2 시      15분  
[tusi      sibobun  
two        o'clock fifteen minutes

It's a quarter to two.

전입니다.  
[jonimnida]  
before is

It's half past three.

3 시 반입니다.  
[sesibanimnida]  
three o'clock half is

4 시          10분          전입니다.  
[nesi          sipbun        jonimnida]  
four   o'clock ten minutes   before is

It's ten minutes to four.



5 시            20분입니다.  
[tasotsi    isipbunimnida]  
five           o'clock twenty minutes is

It's twenty minutes  
past five.

오늘 [onul] today  
어제 [oje] yesterday  
그저께 [kujogge] the day before  
yesterday  
래일 [raeil] tomorrow  
모레 [more] the day after tomorrow  
지난주 [chinanju] last week  
지난달 [chinandal] last month  
지난해 [chinanhae] last year

래주 [raeju] next week  
래달 [raedal] next month  
래년 [raenyon] next year  
아침 [achim] morning  
낮 [nat] day  
저녁 [chonyok] evening  
오전 [ojon] morning  
오후 [ohu] afternoon  
밤 [pam] night

## 날씨 [nalssi]

## Weather

오늘의            날씨는            어떻게습니까?  
[onurui    nalssinun    oddosumnigga]  
today of    the weather how is?

What's the weather like  
today?

좋은            날씨입니다.  
[choun    nalssiimnida]  
good           weather is

It's fine today.

나쁜            날씨입니다.  
[nabbun    nalssiimnida]  
bad            weather is

It's bad today.

따뜻합니다.  
[ttaddutamnida]  
warm is

It's warm.

춥습니다.  
[chupsumnida]  
cold

It's cold.

무덥습니다.  
[mudopsumnida]  
sultry

It's sultry.

바람이            불니다.  
[parami    pumnida]  
windy

It's windy.

번개가 칩니다.  
[pon-gaega chimnida]  
the lightning strikes

There's lightning.

우뢰가 옵니다.  
[uryoega umnida]  
the thunder rolls

There's thunder.

비가 올것입니다.  
[piga olgosimnida]  
the rain will come

It will rain.

비가 옵니다.  
[piga omnida]  
the rain comes

It's raining.

눈이 옵니다.  
[nuni omnida]  
the snow comes

It's snowing.

#### 4 계절 [negyejol]

#### Four Seasons

봄 [pom] spring  
여름 [yorum] summer

가을 [kaul] autumn, fall  
겨울 [kyoul] winter

#### 월 [wol]

#### Months

오늘은 며칠입니까?  
[onurun myochirimnigga]  
today how many day is?

What's the date today?

오늘은 7월 25일입니다.  
[onurun chirwol-isiboirimnida]  
today July 25th is

Today is July 25.

1 월 [irwol] January  
2 월 [iwol] February  
3 월 [samwol] March  
4 월 [sawol] April  
5 월 [owol] May  
6 월 [ryuwol] June

7 월 [chirwol] July  
8 월 [parwol] August  
9 월 [kuwol] September  
10 월 [siwol] October  
11 월 [sibirwol] November  
12 월 [sibiwol] December

## 주일 [chuil]

## Days of the Week

오늘은 무슨 요일입니까?  
[onurun musun yoirimnigga]  
today what day of the week is?

What day is it today?

오늘은 월요일입니다.  
[onurun worryoimnida]  
today Monday is

Today is Monday.

월요일[woryoil] Monday  
화요일[hwayoil] Tuesday  
수요일[suyoil] wednesday  
목요일[mogyoil] Thursday

금요일[kumyoil] Friday  
토요일[toyoil] Saturday  
일요일[iryoil] Sunday

# GRAMMAR

## LESSON 1

## THE NOUN

14 In the Korean language there is no gender.

There is neither definite nor indefinite article.

15 The plural of the noun is formed by attaching the plural ending  
들[dul] to the singular of the noun.

16 The plural ending shows that the objects are two or more.

for example:

*singular*

사람[saram] a man  
아이[ai] a child  
나무[namu] a tree  
말[mal] a horse

*plural*

사람들[saramdul] men  
아이들[aidul] children  
나무들[namudul] trees  
말들[maldul] horses

# THE DECLENSION OF THE NOUN IN THE SINGULAR

17 The nominative for the question *who* or *what* has the nominative ending : **께서, 가, 이**

— **께서**[ggeso] ( *when a sense of respect is given to the word to be declined* )

for example:

아버님께서[abonimggeso] father

explanation:

아버님	+	께서
noun		nominative ending

— **가**[ga] ( *when the word to be declined ends in a vowel* )  
for example:

○ 아이가 [aiga] child

explanation:

아이	+	가
noun		nominative ending

○ 나무가 [namuga] tree

explanation:

나무	+	가
noun		nominative ending

— **이**[i] ( *when the word to be declined ends in a consonant* )

for example:

○ 사람이 [sarami] man

explanation:

사람	+	이
noun		nominative ending

○ 말이 [mari] horse

explanation:

말	+	이
noun		nominative ending

18 The accusative for the question *whom* or *what* has the accusative ending: **를,을**

— **를**[rul] (*when the word to be declined ends in a vowel*)

for example:

○ 아이**를**[airul] child

explanation:

아이 + 를  
noun accusative ending

○ 나무**를**[namurul] tree

explanation:

나무 + 를  
noun accusative ending

— **을**[ul] (*when the word to be declined ends in a consonant*)

for example:

○ 사**람을** [saramul] man

explanation:

사람 + 을  
noun accusative ending

○ 말**을** [marul] horse

explanation:

말 + 을  
noun accusative ending

19 The genitive for the question *whose* has the genitive ending: **의**

— **의**[ui]

for example:

○ 아이**의**[aiui] of a child, child's

explanation:

아이 + 의  
noun genitive ending

○ 나무**의** [namuui] of a tree

explanation:

나무 + 의  
noun genitive ending

- 사람의 [saramui] of a man, man's

*explanation:*

사람 + 의  
noun          genitive ending

- 말의 [marui] of a horse

*explanation:*

말 + 의  
noun          genitive ending

20 The dative for the question *whom, where to, where or when* has the dative ending: **께, 에게, 에**

— **께** [gge] (*when a sense of respect is given to the word to be declined*)

for example:

아버님 께 [abonimgge] to one's father

*explanation:*

아버님 + 께  
noun          dative ending

— **에게** [ege] (*when the word to be declined indicates an animate being*)

for example:

- 아이에게 [aiege] to one's child

*explanation:*

아이 + 에게  
noun          dative ending

- 사람에게 [saramege] to a man

*explanation:*

사람 + 에게  
noun          dative ending

- 말에게 [marege] to a horse

*explanation:*

말 + 에게  
noun          dative ending

— **에** [e] (*when the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being*)

for example:

- 나무에 [namue] to a tree

*explanation:*

나무 + 에  
noun dative ending

- 평양에 [pyongyang·e] to Pyongyang, in Pyongyang

*explanation:*

평양 + 에  
noun dative ending

- 낮에 [naje] in the daytime

*explanation:*

낮 + 에  
noun dative ending

- 21 The locative for the question *where* or *from where* has the locative ending: **에게서, 에서**

— **에게서**[egeso] (*when the word to be declined indicates an animate being*)

for example:

- 아이에게서 [aiegeso] by one's child, from one's child

*explanation:*

아이 + 에게서  
noun locative ending

- 사람에게서 [saramegeso] by a man, from a man

*explanation:*

사람 + 에게서  
noun locative ending

- 말에게서 [maregeso] by a horse, from a horse

*explanation:*

말 + 에게서  
noun locative ending

— **에서**[eso] (*when the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being*)

for example:

- 나무에서 [namueso] on a tree, from a tree

*explanation:*

나무 + 에서

*noun locative ending*

- 공장에서 [kongjang·eso] in a factory, from a factory

*explanation:*

공장 + 에서

*noun locative ending*

- 22 The instrumental for the question *to what, as what, with what, through what, from what, what for or after what* has the instrumental ending: 로

—로[ro] (*when the word to be declined ends in a vowel or the consonant ㄹ* [l])

when the word to be declined ends in a consonant other than the consonant ㄹ [l], the link-vowel 으[u] is inserted (*refer to 194*) between the word to be declined and the instrumental ending 로[ro].

the word to be declined + link-vowel 으[u] + instrumental ending 로[ro]

for example:

- 동무로 [tongmuro] as a friend

*explanation:*

동무 + 로

*noun instrumental ending*

- 손님으로 [sonnimuro] as a guest

*explanation:*

손님 + 으 + 로

*noun link-vowel instrumental ending*

- 아이로 [airo] as a child

*explanation:*

아이 + 로

*noun instrumental ending*

- 사람으로 [saramuro] as a man



*explanation:*

사람 + 으 + 로  
noun link-vowel instrumental ending

- 도끼로[toggiro] with an ax

*explanation:*

도끼 + 로  
noun instrumental ending

- 삽으로[saburo] with a shovel

*explanation:*

삽 + 으 + 로  
noun link-vowel instrumental ending

- 편지로[pyonjiro] by a letter

*explanation:*

편지 + 로  
noun instrumental ending

- 우편으로[upyonuro] by post

*explanation:*

우·편 + 으 + 로  
noun link-vowel instrumental ending

- 첼로[chollo] of iron

*explanation:*

첼 + 로  
noun instrumental ending

- 감기로[kamgiro] because of a cold

*explanation:*

감기 + 로  
noun instrumental ending

- 병으로[pyong·uro] because of illness

*explanation:*

병 + 으 + 로  
noun link-vowel instrumental ending

- 도시로[tosiro] to the city

*explanation:*

도시 + 로  
noun instrumental ending

○ 집으로 [chiburo] to one's home  
*explanation:*

집	+	으	+	로
noun		link-vowel		instrumental ending

23 The coordinative case has the coordinative case ending:

와 / 과

— 와 [wa] and, with (*when the word to be declined ends in a vowel*)

for example:

○ 아버지 와 어머니 [abojiwa omoni] father and mother  
*explanation:*

아버지	+	와	어머니
noun		coordinative case ending	noun

○ 아버지와 가다 [abojiwa kada] go with father  
*explanation:*

아버지	+	와	가다
noun		coordinative case ending	verb

— 과 [gwa] and, with (*when the word to be declined ends in a consonant*)

for example:

○ 사람과 말 [saramgwa mal] a man and a horse  
*explanation:*

사람	+	과	말
noun		coordinative case ending	noun

○ 형과 가다 [hyong-gwa kada] go with brother  
*explanation:*

형	+	과	가다
noun		coordinative case ending	verb

24 The vocative has the vocative ending: 이시여, 여, 이여, 야, 아  
 —이시여 [isiyo] (*when a sense of respect is given to the word to be declined*)

for example:

어머니 이시여! [omoniisiyo] mother!

*explanation:*

어머니 + 이시여!  
noun vocative ending

— 여[yo] (*when the word to be declined ends in a vowel;  
this is mostly used in written language*)

for example:

누나여! [nunayo] sister!

*explanation:*

누나 + 여!  
noun vocative ending

— 이여[iyo] (*when the word to be declined ends in a conso-  
nant; this is mostly used in written language*)

for example:

조국이여! [chogugiyō] fatherland!

*explanation:*

조국 + 이여!  
noun vocative ending

— 야[ya] (*when the word to be declined ends in a vowel;  
this represents a low form of courtesy (refer to 168)  
in colloquial language*)

for example:

애야! [aeya] child!

*explanation:*

애 + 야!  
noun vocative ending

— 아[a] (*when the word to be declined ends in a consonant;  
this represents a low form of courtesy in colloquial  
language*)

for example:

영철아! [yongchora] Yong Chol! (Yong Chol is a name)

*explanation:*

영철 + 아!  
noun vocative ending

25 Example of the declension of a word to which a sense of respect is given:

아버님[abonim] father

nominative	아버님께서[abonimggeso] one's father
accusative	아버님을[abonimul] one's father
genitive	아버님의[abonimui] of one's father, father's
dative	아버님께[abonimgge] to one's father
locative	아버님에게서[abonimegeso] by one's father, from one's father
instrumental	아버님으로[abonimuro] to one's father, as one's father
coordinative case	아버님과[abonimgwa] one's father and, with one's father
vocative	아버님이시여![abonimisiyo] one's father!

26 Examples of the declension of a word which ends in a vowel:

1. When the word to be declined indicates an animate being:

아이[ai] child

nominative	아가[aiga] one's child
accusative	아이를[airul] one's child
genitive	아이의[aiui] of one's child, child's
dative	아이에게[aiege] to one's child
locative	아이에게서[aiegeso] by one's child, from one's child
instrumental	아이로[airo] to one's child, as one's child
coordinative case	아이와[aiwa] one's child and, with one's - child
vocative	아이야![aiya] one's child!

소 [so] cow

nominative	소가 [soga] a cow
accusative	소를 [sorul] a cow
genitive	소의 [soui] of a cow
dative	소에게 [so·ege] to a cow
locative	소에서 [so·egeso] by a cow, from a cow
instrumental	소로 [soro] to a cow, as a cow
coordinative	소와 [sowa] a cow and, with a cow
case	not used
vocative	

2. When the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being:  
나무 [namu] tree

nominative	나무가 [namuga] a tree
accusative	나무를 [namurul] a tree
genitive	나무의 [namuui] of a tree
dative	나무에 [namue] to a tree
locative	나무에서 [namueso] on a tree, from a tree
instrumental	나무로 [namuro] of a tree
coordinative	나무와 [namuwa] a tree and, with a tree
case	not used
vocative	

27 Examples of the declension of a word which ends in a consonant:

1. When the word to be declined indicates an animate being:  
사람 [saram] man

nominative	사람이 [sarami] a man
accusative	사람을 [saramul] a man
genitive	사람의 [saramui] of a man
dative	사람에게 [saramege] to a man
locative	사람에서 [samegeso] by a man, from a man

instrumental	사람으로 [saramuro] to a man, as a man
coordinative	사람과 [saramgwa] a man and, with a man
case	
vocative	사람 이여 ! [saramiyo] a man !

말 [mal] horse

nominative	말 이 [mari] a horse
accusative	말 을 [marul] a horse
genitive	말 의 [marui] of a horse
dative	말 에 게 [marege] to a horse
locative	말 에 게 서 [maregeso] by a horse, from a horse
instrumental	말 로 [mallo] on a horse
coordinative	말 과 [malgwa] a horse and, with a horse
case	
vocative	not used

2. When the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being:

책 [chaek] book

nominative	책 이 [chaegi] a book
accusative	책 을 [chaegul] a book
genitive	책 의 [chaegui] of a book
dative	책 에 [chaege] to a book
locative	책 에 서 [chaegeso] in a book
instrumental	책 으로 [chaeguro] with a book
coordinative	책 과 [chaek·gwa] a book and, with a book
case	
vocative	not used

## THE DECLENSION OF A NOUN IN THE PLURAL

28 The declension of a noun in the plural is the same as the declension of the singular noun which ends in a consonant.

- 29 Example of the declension of a word to which a sense of respect is given :

아버님들[abonimdul] fathers

nominative	아버님들께서[abonimdulggeso] fathers
accusative	아버님들을[abonimdurul] fathers
genitive	아버님들의[abonimdurui] of fathers, fathers'
dative	아버님들께[abonimdulgge] to fathers
locative	아버님들에게서[abonimduregeso] by fathers, from fathers
instrumental	아버님들로[abonimdullo] to fathers, as fathers
coordinative case	아버님들과[abonimdulgwa] fathers and, with fathers
vocative	아버님들이시여[abonimdurisiyo] fathers !

- 30 Examples of the declension of a word which indicates an animate being:

아이들[aidul] children

nominative	아이들이[aiduri] children
accusative	아이들을[aidurul] children
genitive	아이들의[aidurui] of children, children's
dative	아이들에게[aidurege] to children
locative	아이들에게서[aiduregeso] by children, from children
instrumental	아이들로[aidullo] to children, as children
coordinative case	아이들과[aidulgwa] children and, with child - ren
vocative	아이들아[aidura] children !

소들[sodul] cows

nominative	소들이[soduri] cows
accusative	소들을[sodurul] cows

genitive	소들의 [sodurui] of cows
dative	소들에게 [sodurege] to cows
locative	소들에게서 [soduregeso] by cows, from cows
instrumental	소들로 [sodullo] to cows, as cows
coordinative case	소들과 [sodulgwa] cows and, with cows
vocative	not used

### 사람들 [saramdul] men

nominative	사람들이 [saramduri] men
accusative	사람들을 [saramdurul] men
genitive	사람들의 [saramdurui] of men
dative	사람들에게 [saramdurege] to men
locative	사람들에게서 [saramduregeso] by men, from men
instrumental	사람들로 [saramdullo] to men, as men
coordinative case	사람들과 [saramdulgwa] men and, with men
vocative	사람들이여! [saramduriyo] men!

### 말들 [maldul] horse

nominative	말들이 [malduri] horses
accusative	말들을 [maldurul] horses
genitive	말들의 [maldurui] of horses
dative	말들에게 [maldurege] to horses
locative	말들에게서 [malduregeso] by horses, from horses
instrumental	말들로 [maldullo] on horses
coordinative case	말들과 [maldulgwa] horses and, with horses
vocative	not used

31 Examples of the declension of a word which indicates an inanimate being:



# 나무들 [namudul] trees

nominative	나무들이 [namuduri] trees
accusative	나무들을 [namudurul] trees
genitive	나무들의 [namudurui] of trees
dative	나무들에 [namudure] to trees
locative	나무들에서 [namudureso] on trees, from trees
instrumental	나무들로 [namudullo] of trees
coordinative	나무들과 [namudulgwa] trees and, with trees
case	not used
vocative	

## 책들 [chaekdul] books

nominative	책들이 [chaekduri] books
accusative	책들을 [chaekdurul] books
genitive	책들의 [chaekdurui] of books
dative	책들에 [chaekdure] to books
locative	책들에서 [chaekduresso] in books
instrumental	책들로 [chaekdullo] with books
coordinative	책들과 [chaekdulgwa] books and, with books
case	not used
vocative	

32 Table of the endings of the case of the noun:

number of the word to be declined	singular	plural
case		
nominative	께서 [ggeso], 가 [ga] / 이 [i]	께서 [ggeso], 이 [i]
accusative	를 [rul] (로 [lo]) / 을 [ul]	을 [ul]

genitive	의[ui]	의[ui]
dative	께[gge], 에게[ege], 에[e]	께[gge], 에게[ege], 에[e]
locative	에게서[egeso], 에서[eso]	에게서[egeso], 에서[eso]
instrumental	로[ro]	로[ro]
coordinative case	와[wa]/과[gwa]	과[gwa]
vocative	이시여[isiyo], 여[yo]/ 이여[iyo], 야[ya]/ 아[a]	이시여[isiyo], 이여[iyo], 야[ya], 아[a]

## WORD ORDER

33 The predicate always lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

버스가\*2

온다.\*1

[bbosuga  
a bus

onda]  
comes

A bus comes.

explanation:

\*1 오 + 다 [o da] come  
stem ending

오 + ㄴ다 [ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the  
final ending of the verb(refer to 90)]

온다(after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound ㄴ)

The predicate 온다 lies at the end of the sentence.

\*2 버스 + 가  
noun nominative ending

34 The subject usually lies at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

기차가\*  
[kichaga  
a train

온다.  
onda]  
comes

A train comes.

explanation:

\* 기차 + 가  
noun nominative ending

The subject 기차가 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

35 The genitive always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

○ 아버지의\* 책 | the book of the father  
[abojiui chaek]  
the father of the book  
explanation:

\* 아버지 + 의  
noun genitive ending

The genitive 아버지의 lies before the word 책 it refers to.

○ 여성들의\* 권리 | the right of women  
[nyosongdurui kwolli]  
women of right

explanation:

\* 여성 + 들 + 의  
noun plural ending genitive ending

The genitive 여성들의 lies before the word 권리 it refers to.

36 The object lies between the subject and the predicate.

for example:

학생이\*2 신문을\*1 본다.\*3 | A pupil reads the newspaper.  
[haksaeng.i sinmunul ponda]  
a pupil the newspaper reads

explanation:

\*1 신문 + 을  
noun accusative ending

The object 신문을 lies between the subject 학생이 and the predicate 본다.

\*2 학생 + 이  
noun nominative ending

\*<sub>3</sub> 보 + 다 [po da] read  
 stem ending

보 + ㄴ다 [ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

본다 (after contracting the syllable 보 and the sound ㄴ)

## LESSON 2

### THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

37 The personal pronoun has different forms: singular and plural and in the form of courtesy.

form of courtesy number person		To a superior	To a person of the same rank or to an inferior
speaker	singular	저[cho] I	나[na] I
	plural	저희[chohui] we	우리[uri] we
person addressed	singular		너[no] you
	plural		너희[nohui] you

for example:

○ 저는* <sup>1</sup>	갑니다* <sup>2</sup>	I go.
[chonun	kamnida]	
I	go	

explanation:

The speaker speaks to a superior.

\*<sub>1</sub> 저 + 는  
 personal pronoun auxiliary ending (refer to 185)

\*<sub>2</sub> 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
 stem ending

가 + ㅂ니다 [ㅂ니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]  
 갑니다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㅂ)

○ 나는* <sup>1</sup>	간다* <sup>2</sup>	
[nanun	kanda]	I go.
I	go	

explanation:

The speaker speaks to an inferior.

\*<sub>1</sub> 나 + 는  
 personal pronoun auxiliary ending

\*<sub>2</sub> 가 + 다  
 stem ending

가 + ㄴ다 [ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

○ 저희는*	갑니다.	
[chohuinun	kamnida]	We go.
we	go	

explanation:

The speaker speaks to a superior.

\* 저희 + 는  
 personal pronoun auxiliary ending

○ 우리는*	간다.	
[urinun	kanda]	We go.
we	go	

explanation:

The speaker speaks to an inferior.

\* 우리 + 는  
 personal pronoun auxiliary ending

○ 너는*	간다.	
[nonun	kanda]	You go.
you	go	

explanation:

The speaker speaks to an inferior.

\* 너 + 는  
personal pronoun auxiliary ending

○ 너희는 \* 간다.  
[nohuinun kanda] | You go.  
you go

explanation:

The speaker speaks to inferiors.

\* 너희 + 는  
personal pronoun auxiliary ending

38 당신[tangsin] "you" is a noun. But it can be used as a personal pronoun.

for example:

당신은\* 갑니다.  
[tangsinun kamnida] | You go.  
you go

explanation:

The speaker speaks to a superior.

\* 당신 + 은  
noun auxiliary ending

동무[tongmu] "comrade" is a noun. But it can be used as a personal pronoun with the meaning "you".

for example:

동무는\* 간다.  
[tongmunun kanda] | You go.  
comrade goes

explanation:

The speaker speaks to an inferior.

\* 동무 + 는  
noun auxiliary ending

39 he, she, it, they (the person to be spoken about) are expressed as follows:

1. 그 [ku] he

그 - demonstrative pronoun that

2. 그 여자 [ku nyoja] she

그	여자
demonstrative pronoun	noun

3. 그것 [kugot] it

그	+	것
demonstrative pronoun		incomplete noun

An incomplete noun is a noun which cannot express a complete meaning in itself and expresses a complete meaning only when another word lies before it as an attribute.

4. 그들 [kudul] they

그	+	들
demonstrative pronoun		plural ending

그 여자들 [ku nyojadul] they

그	여자	+	들
demonstrative pronoun	noun		plural ending

그것들 [kugotdul] they

그	+	것	+	들
demonstrative pronoun		incomplete noun		plural ending

## DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

40 The declension of the personal pronoun is just the same as that of the noun (refer to 26, 27, 30, 31).

41 The declension of the personal pronoun 저 [cho] "I" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

The personal pronoun 제 [che] "I" is used in the nominative instead of the personal pronoun 저 [cho] "I".

Not the nominative ending 가 [ga] but the auxiliary ending 는 [nun] is attached to the personal pronoun 저 [cho] in the nominative.

저 [cho] I

nominative	제가 [chega] I
	저는 [chonun] I
accusative	저를 [chorul] me
genitive	저의 [choui] my
dative	저에게 [cho.ege] me
locative	저에게서 [cho.egeso] by me, from me
instrumental	저로 [choro] to me, as I
coordinative case	저와 [chowa] I and, with me
vocative	not used

- 42 The declension of the personal pronoun 나 [na] "I" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (*refer to 26*).

The personal pronoun 내 [nae] "I" is used in the nominative instead of the personal pronoun 나 [na] "I".

Not the nominative ending 가 [ga] but the auxiliary ending 는 [nun] is attached to the personal pronoun 나 [na] "I" in the nominative.

나 [na] I

nominative	내가 [naega] I
	나는 [nanun] I
accusative	나를 [narul] me
genitive	나의 [nau] my
dative	나에게 [na.ege] me
locative	나에게서 [na.egeso] by me, from me
instrumental	나로 [naro] to me, as I
coordinative case	나와 [nawa] I and, with me
vocative	not used

- 43 The declension of the personal pronoun 저희 [chohui] "we"



is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (*refer to 26*).

저희 [chohui] we

nominative	저희가 [chohuiga] we
accusative	저희를 [chohuirul] us
genitive	저희의 [chohuiui] our
dative	저희에게 [chohuiege] us
locative	저희에게서 [chohuiegeso] by us, from us
instrumental	저희로 [chohuiro] to us, as we
coordinative case	저희와 [chohuiwa] we and, with us
vocative	not used

The plural ending 들 [dul] can be attached to the personal pronoun 저희 [chohui] "we". The declension of the personal pronoun 저희들 [chohuidul] "we" formed by that is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (*refer to 27*).

저희들 [chohuidul] we

nominative	저희들이 [chohuiduri] we
accusative	저희들을 [chohuidurul] us
genitive	저희들의 [chohuidurui] our
dative	저희들에게 [chohuidurege] us
locative	저희들에게서 [chohuiduregeso] by us, from us
instrumental	저희들로 [chohuidullo] to us, as we
coordinative case	저희들과 [chohuidulgwa] we and, with us
vocative	not used

44 The declension of the personal pronoun 우리 [uri] "we" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indica -

tes an animate being (*refer to 26*).

우리 [uri] we

nominative	우리가 [uriga]	we
accusative	우리들 [urirul]	us
genitive	우리의 [uriui]	our
dative	우리에게 [uriego]	us
locative	우리에게서 [uriego]	by us, from us
instrumental	우리로 [uriro]	to us, as we
coordinative case	우리 와 [uriwa]	we and, with us
vocative	not used	

The plural ending 들 [dul] can be attached to the personal pronoun 우리 [uri] "we". The declension of the personal pronoun 우리들 [uridul] "we" formed by that is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (*refer to 27*).

우리들 [uridul] we

nominative	우리들이 [uriduri]	we
accusative	우리들을 [uridurul]	us
genitive	우리들의 [uridurui]	our
dative	우리들에게 [uridurege]	us
locative	우리들에게서 [uriduregeso]	by us, from us
instrumental	우리들로 [uridullo]	to us, as we
coordinative case	우리들과 [uridulgwa]	we and, with us
vocative	not used	

- 45 The declension of the personal pronoun 너 [no] "you" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (*refer to 26*).

The personal pronoun 네 [ne] "you" is used in the nominati-

ve instead of the personal pronoun 너 [no] "you".

Not the nominative ending 가 [ga] but the auxiliary ending 는 [nun] is attached to the personal pronoun 너 [no] "you" in the nominative.

너 [no] you

nominative	네가 [nega]	you
	너는 [nonun]	you
accusative	너를 [norul]	you
genitive	너의 [noui]	your
dative	너에게 [no·ege]	you
locative	너에게서 [no·egeso]	by you, from you
instrumental	너로 [noro]	to you, as you
coordinative case	너와 [nowa]	you and, with you
vocative		not used

- 46 The declension of the personal pronoun 너희 [nohui] "you" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (*refer to 26*).

너희 [nohui] you

nominative	너희가 [nohuiga]	you
accusative	너희를 [nohuirul]	you
genitive	너희의 [nohuiui]	your
dative	너희에게 [nohuiege]	you
locative	너희에게서 [nohuiegeso]	by you, from you
instrumental	너희로 [nohuiro]	to you, as you
coordinative case	너희와 [nohuiwa]	you and, with you
vocative		not used

The plural ending 들 [dul] can be attached to the personal

pronoun 너희 [nohui] "you". The declension of the personal pronoun 너희들 [nohuidul] formed by that is the same with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (refer to 27).

너희들 [nohuidul] you

nominative	너희들이 [nohuiduri] you
accusative	너희들을 [nohuidurul] you
genitive	너희들의 [nohuidurui] your
dative	너희들에게 [nohuidurege] you
locative	너희들에게서 [nohuiduregeso] by you, from you
instrumental	너희들로 [nohuidullo] to you, as you
coordinative case	너희들과 [nohuidulgwa] you and, with you
vocative	not used

47 The declension of the noun 당신 [tangsin] "you" is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (refer to 27).

당신 [tangsin] you

nominative	당신 이 [tangsin-i] you
accusative	당신 을 [tangsin-ul] you
genitive	당신 의 [tangsin-ui] your
dative	당신 에게 [tangsin-ege] you
locative	당신 에게서 [tangsin-egeso] by you, from you
instrumental	당신 으로 [tangsin-uro] to you, as you
coordinative case	당신 과 [tangsin-gwa] you and, with you
vocative	not used

The plural form 당신들[tangsindul] "you" (pl) of the noun 당신[tangsin] "you"(sg) is formed by attaching the plural ending 들[dul] to the noun 당신[tangsin] "you"(sg).

The declension of the noun 당신들[tangsindul] "you" (pl) is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (refer to 27).

당신들[tangsindul] you

nominative	당신들이 [tangsinduri] you
accusative	당신들을 [tangsindurul] you
genitive	당신들의 [tangsindurui] your
dative	당신들에게 [tangsindurege] you
locative	당신들에게서 [tangsinduregeso] by you, from you
instrumental	당신들로 [tangsindullo] to you, as you
coordinative case	당신들과 [tangsindulgwa] you and, with you
vocative	당신들이여 ! [tangsinduriyo] you!

48 The declension of 그[ku] "he" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

그[ku] he

nominative	그가 [kuga] he
accusative	그를 [kurul] him
genitive	그의 [kuui] his
dative	그에게 [kuege] him
locative	그에게서 [kuegeso] by him, from him
instrumental	그로 [kuro] to him, as he
coordinative case	그와 [kuwa] he and, with him
vocative	not used

- 49 The declension of 그 여자 [ku nyoja] "she" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

그 여자 [ku nyoja] she

nominative	그 여자가 [ku nyojaga] she
accusative	그 여자를 [ku nyojarul] she
genitive	그 여자의 [ku nyojaui] her
dative	그 여자에게 [ku nyoja-ege] her
locative	그 여자에게서 [ku nyoja-egeso] by her, from her
instrumental	그 여자로 [ku nyojaro] to her, as she
coordinative case	그 여자와 [ku nyojawa] she and, with her
vocative	not used

- 50 The declension of 그것 [kugot] "it" is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an inanimate being (refer to 27).

그것 [kugot] it

nominative	그것 이 [kugosi] it
accusative	그것 을 [kugosul] it
genitive	그것 의 [kugosui] its
dative	그것 에 [kugose] to it
locative	그것 에서 [kugoseso] in it, from it
instrumental	그것 으로 [kugosuro] with it, through it, of it, because of it
coordinative case	그것 과 [kugotgwa] it and, with it
vocative	not used

- 51 The declension of 그들 [kudul] "they" is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate

being (*refer to 27*).

그들 [kudul] they

nominative	그들이 [kuduri] they
accusative	그들을 [kudurul] them
genitive	그들의 [kudurui] their
dative	그들에게 [kudurege] them
locative	그들에게서 [kuduregeso] by them, from them
instrumental	그들로 [kudullo] to them, as they
coordinative case	그들과 [kudulgwa] they and, with them
vocative	not used

52 The declension of 그 녀자들 [ku nyojadul] "they" is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (*refer to 27*).

그 녀자들 [ku nyojadul] they

nominative	그 녀자들이 [ku nyojaduri] they
accusative	그 녀자들을 [ku nyojadurul] them
genitive	그 녀자들의 [ku nyojadurui] their
dative	그 녀자들에게 [ku nyojadurege] them
locative	그 녀자들에게서 [ku nyojaduregeso] by them, from them
instrumental	그 녀자들로 [ku nyojadullo] to them, as they
coordinative case	그 녀자들과 [ku nyojadulgwa] they and, with them
vocative	not used

53 The declension of 그것들 [kugotdul] they is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an inanimate being (*refer to 27*).

그것들 [kugotdul] they

nominative	그것들이 [kugotduri] they
accusative	그것들을 [kugotdurul] them
genitive	그것들의 [kugotdurui] their
dative	그것들에 [kugotdure] them
locative	그것들에서 [kugotduresŏ] in them, from them
instrumental	그것들로 [kugotdullo] with them, through them, of them, because of them
coordinative case	그것들과 [kugotdulgwa] they and, with them
vocative	not used

54 The genitive of the personal pronoun in Korean corresponds with the possessive pronoun in English.

for example:

○ 나의*	아버지	
[nau]	aboji]	
my	father	my father

explanation:

\* 나 + 의 (나 - personal pronoun    의 - genitive ending of the personal pronoun)

○ 나의	어머니	
[nau]	omoni]	
my	mother	my mother
○ 나의	집	
[nau]	chip]	
my	house	my house
○ 나의	동무들	
[nau]	tongmudul]	
my	friends	my friends



55 Table of the endings of the case of the personal pronoun

number of the word to be declined case	singular	plural
nominative	가 [ga]	가 [ga] / 이 [i]
accusative	를 [rul] (근 [il])	를 [rul] (근 [il]) / 을 [ul]
genitive	의 [ui]	의 [ui]
dative	에게 [ege]	에게 [ege]
locative	에게서 [egeso]	에게서 [egeso]
instrumental	로 [ro]	로 [ro]
coordinative case	와 [wa]	와 [wa] / 과 [gwa]
vocative	여 [yo]	여 [yo] / 이여 [iyo]

## WORD ORDER

56 The genitive of the personal pronoun always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

- 나의\* 어머니 [nau i omoni] my mother
- 우리의\* 어머니 [uriui omoni] our mother

*explanation:*

\* 나의 or 우리의, the genitive of the personal pronoun 나  
"I" or 우리 "we" lies before its relative word 어머니.

## LESSON 3

### THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

57 The demonstrative pronouns are divided into three forms according to the distance between the speaker and the things indicated.

1. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates something existing in the vicinity of the speaker:

이[i] this, these

여기[yogi] this place

for example:

○ 이 집이\*<sup>1</sup> 나의 집이다\*<sup>2</sup>  
[i chibi nau chibida]  
this house my house is

This is my house.

*explanation:*

\*<sup>1</sup> 이 집 + 이 (이 - demonstrative pronoun 집 - noun 이 - nominative ending)

\*<sup>2</sup> 집 + 이 + 다 [집 - noun 이 - exchanging ending (refer to 180)  
다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

○ 여기가\*<sup>1</sup> 나의 고향이다\*<sup>2</sup>  
[yogiga nau kohyang ida]  
this place my native place is

This is my native place.

*explanation:*

\*<sup>1</sup> 여기 + 가 (여기 - demonstrative pronoun 가 - nominative ending)

\*<sup>2</sup> 고향 + 이 + 다 [고향 - noun 이 - exchanging ending (refer to 180)  
다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

2. The demonstrative pronoun, which indicates something existing in the vicinity of the person addressed:

그[ku] that, those

거기[kogi] that place

for example:

- 그 사람이 \* 나의 친구다.  
[ku sarami naui chin-guda] | That man is my friend.  
that man my friend is

explanation:

- \* 그 사람 + 이 (그- demonstrative pronoun 사람-noun 이 - nominative ending)

- 거기가 \* 그의 고향이다.  
[kogiga kuui kohyang-ida] | That is his native place.  
that place his native place is

explanation:

- \* 거기+가 (거기- demonstrative pronoun 가- nominative ending)

3. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates something existing distant from the speaker and the person addressed:

저[cho] that, those

저기[chogi] that place

for example:

- 저 집이 나의 집이다.  
[cho chibi naui chibida] | That is my house.  
that house my house is

- 저기가 그의 고향이다.  
[chogiga kuui kohyang-ida] | That is his native place.  
that place his native place is

- 58 The demonstrative pronouns are divided into two kinds according to the things indicated.

1. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates the object:

이[i] this, these

그[ku] that, those

저[cho] that, those

2. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates a place:

여기 [yogi] this place  
 거기 [kogi] that place  
 저기 [chogi] that place

59 Table of the demonstrative pronouns

distance kind	something existing in the vicinity of the speaker	something existing in the vicinity of the person addressed	something existing distant from the speaker and the person addressed
object	이 this, [i] these	그 that, [ku] those	저 that, [cho] those
place	여기 this place [yogi]	거기 that place [kogi]	저기 that place [chogi]

## THE DECLENSION OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

- 60 The demonstrative pronoun which indicates an object is used as an adjective and is not declined.

for example:

이 사람 [i saram] this man

그 나무 [ku namu] that tree

저 마을 [cho maul] that village

explanation:

이, 그, 저 - demonstrative pronoun which indicates an object

사람, 나무, 마을 - noun

- 61 The demonstrative pronoun 그[ku] "that" which indicates an object can be also used substantively.

In this case the demonstrative pronoun 그[ku] "that" which indicates the object expresses the meaning of "he". The declension of the substantively used demonstrative pronoun 그[ku] "he" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being.

그 [ku] he

nominative	그가[kuga] he
accusative	그를[kurul] him
genitive	그의[kuui] his
dative	그에게[kuege] him
locative	그에게서[kuegeso] by him, from him
instrumental	그로[kuro] to him, as he
coordinative case	그와[kuwa] he and, with him
vocative	not used

The plural form 그들[kudul] "they" of the substantively used demonstrative pronoun 그[ku] "he" is formed by attaching the plural ending 들[dul] to the substantively used demonstrative pronoun 그[ku] "he".

- 62 The declension of the plural form 그들[kudul] "they" of the substantively used demonstrative pronoun 그[ku] "he" is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being:

그들[kudul] they

nominative	그들이[kuduri] they
accusative	그들을[kudurul] them
genitive	그들의[kudurui] their
dative	그들에게[kudurege] them

locative	그들 에게서[kuduregeso] by them, from them
instrumental	그들 로[kudullo] to them, as they
coordinative case	그들 과[kudulgwa] they and, with them
vocative	not used

The plural form 이들[idul] of the demonstrative pronoun 이[i] "this" is formed by attaching the plural ending 들 [dul] to the demonstrative pronoun 이[i] "this" which indicates the object and is used substantively. In this case the plural form 이들[idul] of the demonstrative pronoun 이[i] "this" which indicates the object has the meaning of "these men".

- 63 The declension of 이들[idul] "these men" is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being:

이들[idul] these men

nominative	이들이 [iduri] these men
accusative	이들을[idurul] these men
genitive	이들의[idurui] of these men
dative	이들 에게 [idurege] to these men
locative	이들 에게서[iduregeso] by these men, from these men
instrumental	이들 로[idullo] to these men, as these men
coordinative case	이들 과[idulgwa] these men and, with these men
vocative	not used

- 64 The declension of the demonstrative pronoun which indicates a place is the same as with a noun which ends in a

vowel and indicates an inanimate being:

여기 [yogi] this place

nominative	여기가 [yogiga] this place
accusative	여기를 [yogirul] this place
genitive	여기의 [yogiui] of this place
dative	여기에 [yogie] to this place
locative	여기에서 [yogieso] in this place, from this place
instrumental	여기로 [yogiro] to this place
coordinative case	여기와 [yogiwa] this place and, with this place
vocative	not used

저기 [kogi] that place

nominative	저기가 [kogiga] that place
accusative	저기를 [kogirul] that place
genitive	저기의 [kogiui] of that place
dative	저기에 [kogie] to that place
locative	저기에서 [kogieso] in that place, from that place
instrumental	저기로 [kogiro] to that place
coordinative case	저기와 [kogiwa] that place and, with that place
vocative	not used

저기 [chogi] that place

nominative	저기가 [chogiga] that place
accusative	저기를 [chogirul] that place
genitive	저기의 [chogiui] of that place
dative	저기에 [chogie] to that place
locative	저기에서 [chogieso] in that place, from that place

instrumental	저기로[chogiro] to that place
coordinative case	저기와[chogiwa] that place and, with that place
vocative	not used

65 Table of the endings of the case of the demonstrative pronoun which indicates place

number of the word to be declined case	singular
nominative	가 [ga]
accusative	를[rul] (은[l])
genitive	의 [ui]
dative	에 [e]
locative	에서 [eso]
instrumental	로 [ro]
coordinative case	와 [wa]
vocative	여 [yo], 야 [ya]

## WORD ORDER

66 The adjectively used demonstrative pronoun which indicates the object always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:



이\* 사람 [i saram] this man

explanation:

\* 이 — *adjectively used demonstrative pronoun*

The adjectively used demonstrative pronoun 이 which indicates the object lies before the word 사람 it refers to.

67 The attribute always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

자는*	아이	sleeping child
[chanun	ai]	
sleeping	child	

explanation:

\* 자 + 다 [cha da] sleep  
stem ending

자 + 는 [는 — *attributive ending of the verb in its present tense (refer to 147)*]

The attributive ending 는 of the verb in its present tense is attached to the stem 자 of the verb 자다.

The attribute 자는 lies before the word 아이 it refers to.

68 The adverbial modifier usually lies after the subject and the object.

for example:

우리는	평양을	곧*	방문합니다* <sub>2</sub>	We will visit Pyongyang soon.
[urinun	pyongyang-ul	kot	pangmunhamnida]	
we	Pyongyang	soon	visit	

explanation:

\*<sub>1</sub> The adverbial modifier 곧 lies after the subject 우리는 and the object 평양을.

\*<sub>2</sub> 방문하 + 다 [pangmunha da] visit  
stem ending

방문하 + ㅂ니다

[ㅂ니다 — *most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)*]

방문합니다 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㅁ)

## LESSON 4

### THE VERB

69 The infinitive of the verb in Korean takes the following form:

stem + ending 다 [da]

example	explanation	
	stem +	ending
가다 [kada] (go)	가	다
오다 [oda] (come)	오	다
먹다 [mokda] (eat)	먹	다
주다 [chuda] (give)	주	다
마시다 [masida] (drink)	마시	다
공부하다 [kongbuhada] (learn)	공부하	다

### THE FORMS OF THE VERB

70 The verb has the following four forms:

1. The final form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

for example:

나는	집으로	간다.*
[nanun	chiburo	kanda]
I	home to	go

I am going home.

explanation:

\* The final form 간다 is derived from the infinitive 가다.

가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending

가 + ㄴ다 [ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

The low declarative form ㄴ다 of the final ending of the verb is attached to the stem 가 of the verb 가다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive.

The final form 간다 lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

2. The connecting form, the ending of which connects words or phrases or clauses in a sentence.

for example:

나는	공장에서	일하고*	I work at the factory and go home.
[nanun	kongjang.eso	ilhago	
I the	factory at	work and	
집으로	간다.		
chiburo	kanda]		
home	to	go	

explanation:

\* The connecting form 일하고 is derived from the infinitive 일하다.

일하 + 다 [ilha da] work  
stem ending

일하 + 고 [고 - connecting ending of the verb (refer to 130)]

The connecting ending 고 of the verb is attached to the stem 일하 of the verb 일하다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive.

The connecting ending 고 of the connecting form 일하고 of the verb 일하다 connects the phrases, 공장에서 일하 - and 집으로 간다.

3. The attributive form which is added to the noun, pro-

noun or numeral

for example:

자는*	아이	sleeping child
[chanun	ai]	
sleeping	child	

explanation:

\* The attributive form 자는 is derived from the infinitive 자다.

자 + 다 [cha da] sleep  
stem ending

자 + 는 [는 - attributive ending of the verb in its present tense (refer to 147)]

The attributive ending 는 of the verb in its present tense is attached to the stem 자 of the verb 자다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive.

The attributive form 자는 of the verb 자다 is added to the noun 아이.

4. The form of the adverbial modifier which modifies the verb or the adjective

for example:

땀이	비가	오듯*	흐른다.	The sweat flows as it rains.
[ddami	piga	odut	hurunda]	
the sweat the rain as it comes flows				

explanation:

\* The form of the adverbial modifier 오듯 is derived from the infinitive 오다.

오 + 다 [o da] come  
stem ending

오 + 듯 [듯 - ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective (refer to 153)]

The ending of the adverbial modifier 듯 of the verb or adjective is attached to the stem 오 of the verb 오다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive.

The form of the adverbial modifier 오듯 of the verb 오다 modifies the verb 흐른다.

비가 오듯 is the expanded adverbial modifier (refer to 227).

## THE FINAL FORM OF THE VERB

71 The final form of the verb is the form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

The final form of the verb makes no distinction of person or number. The tense of the final form of the verb is the present.

for example:

number person	singular	plural
speaker	내가 간다 *. [naega kanda] I go.	우리가 간다. [uriga kanda] We go.
person addressed	네가 간다. [nega kanda] You go.	너희가 간다. [nohuiga kanda] You go.
person spoken about	그가 간다. [kuga kanda] He goes.	그들이 간다. [kuduri kanda] They go.

*explanation:*

- \* The final form 간다 is derived from the infinitive 가다.  
가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending  
가 + ㄴ다 [ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]  
간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

## THE FINAL ENDING OF THE VERB

72 The final ending of the verb is the ending of the final form

of the verb.

The final ending of the verb expresses the closing of the sentence.

73 The final ending of the verb can express four moods:

1. The declarative form

The declarative form is the mood in which the speaker informs another person of some fact, his own thoughts or his own feelings.

for example:

내가	간다*	
[naega	kanda]	I go.
I	go	

explanation:

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending  
가 + ㄴ다 [ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

2. The interrogative form

The interrogative form is the mood in which the speaker asks some fact or the thoughts or the feelings of another person.

for example:

당신 이	갑니까 *?	
[tangsin i	kamnigga]	Are you going?
you	go	

explanation:

\* 가 + ㅊ니까 [ka da] go  
stem ending  
가 + ㅊ니까 [ㅊ니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 102)]

갑니까 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㅊ)

3. The suggestive form

The suggestive form is the mood in which the speaker

suggests to the person addressed that they should do some act together.

for example:

우리 가	가자*.	Let us go!
[uriga	kaja]	
we	let us go	

explanation:

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
           stem           ending  
       가 + 자 [자-low suggestive form of the final  
           ending of the verb (refer to 119) ]

#### 4. The imperative form

The imperative form is the mood in which the speaker urges the person addressed to do some action.

for example:

너는	가라* !	You go!
[nonun	kara]	
you	go!	

explanation:

\* 가 + 다  
           stem           ending  
       가 + 라 [라-low imperative form of the final ending  
           of the verb (refer to 121)]

#### 74 The final ending of the verb can express three degrees of courtesy:

##### 1. The most deferential form

The most deferential form is used when the speaker regards the person addressed highly.

for example :

저는	평양으로 갑니다*.	I go to Pyongyang.
[chonun	pyongyang-uro kamnida]	
I	Pyongyang to go	

explanation:

\* 가 + 다  
           stem           ending

가 + ㅅ니다 [ㅅ니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

갑니다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㅅ)  
The speaker is speaking to a superior.

## 2. The middle form of courtesy

The middle form of courtesy is used when the speaker regards the person addressed as his equal.

for example:

나는	평양으로	가오*.	I go to Pyongyang.
[nanun	pyongyang·uro	kao]	
I	Pyongyang to	go	

explanation:

\* 가 + 다  
stem ending

가 + 오 [오—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

The speaker is speaking to a person at the same rank.

## 3. The low form of courtesy

The low form of courtesy is used when the speaker speaks to someone he regards as inferior.

for example:

나는	평양으로	간다*.	I go to Pyongyang.
[nanun	pyongyang·uro	kanda]	
I	Pyongyang to	go	

explanation:

\* 가 + 다  
stem ending

가 + ㄴ다 [ㄴ다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)  
The speaker is speaking to an inferior.

75 The final endings of the verb are subdivided into the final



endings of the declarative form, the final endings of the interrogative form, the final endings of the suggestive form and the final endings of the imperative form.

## THE ADJECTIVE

- 76 The infinitive form of the adjective in Korean takes the following form:

stem + ending 다 [da]

for example:

푸르	+	다	[puru da]	blue
<i>stem</i>		<i>ending</i>		

즐겁	+	다	[chulgop da]	merry
<i>stem</i>		<i>ending</i>		

밝	+	다	[pak da]	bright
<i>stem</i>		<i>ending</i>		

## THE FORMS OF THE ADJECTIVE

- 77 The adjective has the following four forms:

1. The final form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence

for example:

하늘은	푸르다*
[hanurun	puruda]
the sky	blue

The sky is blue.

*explanation:*

- \* The final form 푸르다 is derived from the infinitive form 푸르다.

푸르	+	다	[puru da]	blue
<i>stem</i>		<i>ending</i>		

푸르 + 다 [다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 92)]

The low declarative form 다 of the final ending of the adjective is attached to the stem 푸르 of the adjective 푸르다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive form of the adjective.

The final form 푸르다 lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

The final form of the adjective in Korean corresponds to the form "copula + nominal part of the predicate" in English.

The final form 푸르다 in Korean corresponds to the form "is blue" in English.

2. The connecting form, the ending of which connects words or phrases or clauses in a sentence

for example:

하늘은	푸르고*	The sky is blue and my heart is merry.
[hanurun the sky	purugo blue and	
내 마음은	즐겁다.	
nae maumun	chulgopda]	
my heart	merry	

*explanation:*

- \* The connecting form 푸르고 is derived from the infinitive form 푸르다 of the adjective.

푸르 + 다  
stem ending

푸르 + 고 [고 - connecting ending of the adjective (refer to 130)]

The connecting ending 고 of the adjective is attached to the stem 푸르 of the adjective 푸르다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive form of the adjective.

The connecting ending 고 of the connecting form 푸르고 of the adjective 푸르다 connects the clauses 하늘은 푸르- and 내 마음은 즐겁다.

3. The attributive form which is added to the noun, pronoun or numeral

for example:

푸른*	하늘	
[purun	hanul]	blue sky
blue	sky	

explanation:

- \* The attributive form 푸른 is derived from the infinitive form 푸르다 of the adjective.

푸르 + 다  
stem ending

푸르 + ㄴ [ㄴ - attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense (refer to 149)]

푸른 (after contracting the syllable 르 and the sound ㄴ)

The attributive ending ㄴ of the adjective in its present tense is added to the stem 푸르 of the adjective 푸르다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive form of the adjective.

The attributive form 푸른 of the adjective 푸르다 is added to the noun 하늘.

4. The form of the adverbial modifier which modifies the verb or the adjective

for example:

달이	밝게*	비친다.	
[tari	palge	pichinda]	The moon shines brightly.
the moon	brightly	shines	

explanation:

- \* The form of the adverbial modifier 밝게 is derived from the infinitive form 밝다 of the adjective.

밝 + 다 [pak da] bright  
stem ending

밝 + 게 [게 - ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective (refer to 153)]

The ending of the adverbial modifier 게 of the verb or adjective is attached to the stem 밝 of the adjective 밝다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive form of the adjective.

The form of the adverbial modifier 밝게 of the adjective 밝다 modifies the verb 비친다.

## THE FINAL FORM OF THE ADJECTIVE

78 The final form of the adjective is the form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

The final form of the adjective makes no distinction of person or number.

The tense of the final form of the adjective is the present.

for example:

number person	singular	plural
speaker	<p>내가 크다.* [naega kuda] I big I am big.</p>	<p>우리가 크다. [uriga kuda] we big We are big.</p>
person addressed	<p>네가 크다. [nega kuda] you big You are big.</p>	<p>너희가 크다. [nohuiga kuda] you big You are big.</p>
person spoken about	<p>그가 크다. [kuga kuda] he big He is big.</p>	<p>그들이 크다. [kuduri kuda] they big They are big.</p>

*explanation:*

\* The final form 크다 is derived from the infinitive form 크다 of the adjective.

크 + 다 [ku da] big  
stem ending

크 + 다 (다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

## THE FINAL ENDING OF THE ADJECTIVE

- 79 The final ending of the adjective is the ending of the final form of the adjective.

The final ending of the adjective expresses the closing of the sentence.

- 80 The final ending of the adjective can express two moods:

1. The declarative form

The declarative form is the mood in which the speaker informs another person of some fact, his own thoughts or his own feelings.

for example:

나는	기쁘다*
[nanun	kibbuda]
I	glad

I am glad.

explanation:

\* 기쁘 + 다  
stem ending

[ 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 92)]

2. The interrogative form

The interrogative form is the mood in which the speaker asks some fact or the thoughts or the feelings of another person.

for example:

당신은	기쁘니까*?
[tangsinun	kibbumnigga]
you	glad?

Are you glad?

*explanation:*

\* 기쁘 + 다  
stem ending

기쁘 + ㅁ니까 [ㅁ니까—most deferential interrogative  
form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 104)]

기쁩니까 (after contracting the syllable ㅁ and the so-  
und ㅁ)

81 The final ending of the adjective can express three degrees  
of courtesy:

1. The most deferential form

The most deferential form is used when the speaker re-  
gards the person addressed highly.

for example:

저는 기쁩니다.\*  
[chonun kibbumnida]  
I glad

I am glad.

*explanation:*

\* 기쁘 + 다  
stem ending

기쁘 + ㅁ니다 [ㅁ니다—most deferential declarative form  
of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 92)]

기쁩니다 (after contracting the syllable ㅁ and the sound ㅁ)

The speaker is speaking to a superior.

2. The middle form of courtesy

The middle form of courtesy is used when the speaker  
regards the person addressed as his equal.

for example:

나는 기쁘오.\*  
[nanun kibbuo]  
I glad

I am glad.

*explanation:*

\* 기쁘 + 다  
stem ending

기쁘 + 오 [오 - middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 92)]

The speaker is speaking to a person at the same rank.

### 3. The low form of courtesy

The low form of courtesy is used when the speaker speaks to someone he regards as inferior.

for example:

나는	기쁘다*	I am glad.
[nanun	kibbuda]	
I	glad	

explanation:

\* 기쁘 + 다  
       stem            ending  
       기쁘 + 다 [다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 92)]

The speaker is speaking to an inferior.

- 82 The final endings of the adjective are subdivided into the final endings of the declarative form and the final endings of the interrogative form.

## THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

- 83 The verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is formed by attaching a final ending, a connecting ending or an attributive ending of the verbal form (refer to 94, 128, 151) to the noun, pronoun or numeral.

for example:

○ 여기가	평양입니다*	It is Pyongyang.
[yogiga	pyongyang · imnida]	
this place	Pyongyang is	

*explanation:*

\* 평양 + 이 + ㅂ니다 [평양 - noun 이 - exchanging ending (refer to 180) ㅂ니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

평양입니다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

평양입니다 is the final form of the verbal form of the noun 평양.

- 그것은 나요.\*  
[kugosun nayo]  
it I is

It is me.

*explanation:*

\* 나 + 요 [나 - personal pronoun 요 - middle declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

나요 is the final form of the verbal form of the personal pronoun 나.

- 조국은 하나다.\*  
[chogugun hanada]  
fatherland one is

The fatherland is one.

*explanation:*

\* 하나 + 다 [하나 - numeral 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

하나다 is the final form of the verbal form of the numeral 하나.

- 저는 기자이고\*  
[chonun kijaigo]  
I a journalist am and  
이분은 의사입니다.  
ibunun uisaimnida]  
this person a doctor is

I am a journalist, and  
this is a doctor.

*explanation:*

\* 기자 + 이 + 고 [기자 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 고 - connecting ending of the verbal form (refer to 130)]



기자이고 is the connecting form of the verbal form of the noun 기자.

○ 주체의 조국인*	조선	Korea, the
[chucheui chogugin	choson	fatherland
Juche of the fatherland being	Korea	of Juche

*explanation:*

\* 조국 + 이 + ㄴ [조국 - noun 이 - exchanging ending ㄴ -  
attributive ending of the verbal form (refer to 151)]  
조국인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)  
조국인 is the attributive form of the verbal form of the  
noun 조국.

## THE DIVISION OF THE VERBAL FORMS OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

84 The verbal forms of the noun, pronoun or numeral are divided as follows:

1. The final form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence

for example:

조선은 주체의 조국이다.*	
[chosonun chucheui chogugida]	
Korea Juche of the fatherland is	Korea is the father- land of Juche.

*explanation:*

\* 조국 + 이 + 다 [조국 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 다 -  
low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal  
form (refer to 94)]

The final form 조국이다 lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

2. The connecting form, the ending of which connects the words or phrases or clauses in a sentence

for example:

저는	로동자이고*
[chonun	rodongjaigo
I a	worker am and
이분은	기사입니다.
ibunun	kisaimnida]
this person	an engineer is

I am a worker, and he is  
an engineer.

*explanation:*

\* 로동자 + 이 + 고 [로동자 - noun 이 - exchanging ending  
고 - connecting ending of the verbal form (refer to 130)]

The connecting ending 고 of the connecting form 로동자이고  
connects the clauses. 저는 로동자이 - and 이분은 기사입니다.

3. The attributive form which is added to the noun, pronoun  
or numeral

for example:

영웅의	나라인*	조선
[yong.ung-ui	narain	choson]
hero of	land being	Korea

Korea, the heroes' land

*explanation:*

\* 나라 + 이 + ㄴ [나라 - noun 이 - exchanging ending ㄴ - at-  
tributive ending of the verbal form (refer to 151)]

나라인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)

The attributive form 나라인 is added to the noun 조선.

## THE FINAL FORM OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

- 85 The final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or  
numeral is the form which lies at the end of the sentence  
and closes the sentence.

The final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral makes no distinction of person or number.

The tense of the final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the present.

for example:

number person	singular	plural
speaker	저는 영국사람입니다. [chonun yong.guksaram imnida] I an Englishman am I am an Englishman	우리는 영국사람들입니다. [urinun yong.guksaramdur imnida] we Englishmen are We are Englishmen.
person addressed	당신은 영국사람입니다. [tangsinun yong.guksa- ramimnida] you an Englishman are You are an English- man.	당신들은 영국사람들입니다. [tangsinurun yong.guk saramdurimnida] you Englishmen are You are Englishmen.
person spoken about	그는 영국사람입니다. [kunun yong.guksaram imnida] he an Englishman is He is an Englishman.	그들은 영국사람들입니다. [kudurun yong.guksaram durimnida] they Englishmen are They are Englishmen.

## THE FINAL ENDING OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

- 86 The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the ending of the final form of the verbal

form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral expresses the closing of the sentence.

87 The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral can express two moods:

1. The declarative form

The declarative form is the mood in which the speaker informs another person of some fact, his own thoughts or his own feelings.

for example:

조선은	주체의	조국이다.*	Korea is the fa- therland of Juche.
[chosonun chucheui	chogugida]		
Korea	Juche of the fatherland is		

*explanation:*

\* 조국 + 이 + 다 [조국 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

2. The interrogative form

The interrogative form is the mood in which the speaker asks some fact or the thoughts or the feelings of another person.

for example:

당신은	조선사람입니까*?	Are you a Korean?
[tangsinun chosonsaramimnigga]		
you	a Korean are	

*explanation:*

\* 조선사람 + 이 + ㅂ니까 [조선사람 - noun 이 - exchanging ending ㅂ니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 106)]

조선사람입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

88 The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral can express three degrees of courtesy:

1. The most deferential form

The most deferential form is used when the speaker regards the person addressed highly.

for example:

저는	영국사람입니다.*	I am an Englishman.
[chonun	yong-guksaramimnida]	
I	an Englishman am	

explanation:

\* 영국사람 + 이 + ㅂ니다 [영국사람 - noun 이 - exchanging ending ㅂ니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]  
영국사람입니다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

The speaker is speaking to a superior.

2. The middle form of courtesy

The middle form of courtesy is used when the speaker regards the person addressed as his equal.

for example:

나는	영국사람이오.*	I am an Englishman.
[nanun	yong-guksaramio]	
I	an Englishman am	

explanation:

\* 영국사람 + 이 + 오 [오 - middle declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

The speaker is speaking to a person at the same rank.

3. The low form of courtesy

The low form of courtesy is used when the speaker speaks to someone he regards as inferior.

for example:

나는 영국사람이다.\*  
[nanun yong.guksaramida]  
I an Englishman am

I am an Englishman.

*explanation:*

\* 영국사람 + 이 + 다 [다-low declarative form of the  
final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

The speaker is speaking to an inferior.

- 89 The final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral are subdivided into the final endings of the declarative form and the final endings of the interrogative form.

## LESSON 5

### THE DECLARATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

- 90 There are the following declarative final endings to the verb:

1. The most deferential form:

습니다 [sumnida]/ㅁ니다 [mnida]

- 1) 습니다 [sumnida] (when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant)

for example:

저는 사과를 먹습니다.\*  
[chonun sagwarul moksumnida]  
I an apple eat

I eat an apple.

*explanation:*

\* 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat  
stem ending

먹 + 습니다 (습니다-most deferential declarative form)

*of the final ending of the verb)*

The stem 먹 of the verb 먹다 ends in the consonant ㄱ.

- 2) 만나다 [mnida] (*when the stem of the verb ends in a vowel*)

for example:

○ 환영 합니다.  
[hwanyonghamnida]  
welcome

Welcome !

*explanation:*

환영하 + 다 [hwanyongha da] welcome  
stem ending

환영하 + 만나다 (만나다—*most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)

환영합니다 (*after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound 만*)

The stem 환영하 of the verb 환영하다 ends in the vowel ㅏ.

○ 그는 편지를 씁니다.\* | He writes a letter.  
[kunun pyonjirul ssumnida]  
he a letter writes

*explanation:*

\* 쓰 + 다 [ssu da] write  
stem ending

쓰 + 만나다 (만나다—*most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)

씁니다 (*after contracting the syllable 쓰 and the sound 만*)

The stem 쓰 of the verb 쓰다 ends in the vowel — .

## 2. The middle form of courtesy:

오 [o] / 소 [so]

- 1) 오 [o] (*when the stem of the verb ends in a vowel*)

for example:

나는 가오.\*  
[nanun kao]  
I go

I go.

*explanation:*

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending

가 + 오 (오—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The stem 가 of the verb 가다 ends in the vowel ㅏ.

## 2) 소[so] (when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant)

for example:

나는	사과를	먹소.*	I eat an apple.
[nanun	sagwarul	mokso]	
I	an apple	eat	

explanation:

\* 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat  
stem ending

먹 + 소 (소—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The stem 먹 of the verb 먹다 ends in the consonant ㄱ.

## 3. The low form of courtesy:

다 [da]

The sound ㄴ[n] or the syllable 는[nun] is placed before this final ending in the present.

The final endings ㄴ다[nda] and 는다[nunda] are formed by it.

The final ending ㄴ다[nda] is attached to the stem of the verb which ends in a vowel.

The final ending 는다[nunda] is attached to the stem of the verb which ends in a consonant.

### 1) ㄴ다[nda] (when the stem of the verb ends in a vowel)

for example:

나는	주체의	조국인	I go to Korea, the father-land of Juche.
[nanunchueui	chogugin		
I	Juche of the fatherland being		
조선으로	간다.*		
chosonuro	kanda]		
Korea to	go		



*explanation:*

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending

가 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

The stem 가 of the verb 가다 ends in the vowel ㅏ.

2) 는다 [nunda] (when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant)

for example:

그는	밥을	먹는다.*	He eats rice.
[kunun	pabul	mongnunda]	
he	rice	eats	

*explanation:*

\* 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat  
stem ending

먹 + 는다 (는다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The stem 먹 of the verb 먹다 ends in the consonant ㄱ.

## 9) Table of declarative final endings of the verb

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
습니다 [sumnida] / 버니다 [mnida]	오 [o] / 소 [so]	다 [da]

*remarks:*

We have indicated here only such declarative final endings of the verb which are frequently used.

For the other declarative final endings of the verb, please refer to the appendix.

# THE DECLARATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE ADJECTIVE

92 There are the following declarative final endings to the adjective:

## 1. The most deferential form:

습니다[sumnida]/ ㅁ니다[mnida]

- 1) 습니다[sumnida] (*when the stem of the adjective ends in a consonant*)

for example:

저의      마음은      즐겁 습니다.* [choui    maumun    chulgopsumnida] my        heart        merry		My heart is merry.
--	--	--------------------

explanation:

\*    즐겁      +      다            [julkop da]    merry  
       stem                    ending

즐겁 + 습니다(습니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The stem 즐겁 of the adjective 즐겁다 ends in the consonant ㅁ.

- 2) ㅁ니다[mnida] (*when the stem of the adjective ends in a vowel*)

for example:

하늘은            푸릅니다.* [hanurun        purumnida] the sky            blue		The sky is blue.
--	--	------------------

explanation:

\*    푸르      +      다            [puru da]    blue  
       stem                    ending

푸르 + ㅁ니다 (ㅁ니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

푸릅니다(after contracting the syllable 르 and the sound ㅁ)

The stem 푸르 of the adjective 푸르다 ends in the vowel ㅡ.

## 2. The middle form of courtesy:

오 [o]/ 소 [so]

- 1) 오 [o] (when the stem of the adjective ends in a vowel)

for example:

평양은      웅장하 오\*  
[pyongyang-un ungjanghao]  
Pyongyang    magnificent

Pyongyang is magnificent.

explanation:

\*    웅장하    +    다      [ungjangha da]    magnificent  
         stem            ending

웅장하 + 오 (오—middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The stem 웅장하 of the adjective 웅장하다 ends in the vowel ㅏ.

- 2) 소 [so] (when the stem of the adjective ends in a consonant)

for example:

저      산은      높소\*.  
[cho sanun      nopsol]  
that    mountain    high

That mountain is high.

explanation:

\*    높      +    다      [nop da]    high  
         stem            ending

높 + 소 (소—middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The stem 높 of the adjective 높다 ends in the consonant ㅈ.

3. The low form of courtesy:

다 [da]

for example:

조선의      아침은      맑다\*.  
[chosonui achimun makda]  
the Korean morning fresh

The morning in Korea is fresh.

explanation:

\*    맑      +    다      [mak da]    fresh  
         stem            ending

ㅁ + 다 (다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

### 93 Table of declarative final endings of the adjective

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
습니다 [sumnida] / 뵙니다 [mnida]	오 [o] / 소 [so]	다 [da]

remarks:

We have indicated here only such declarative final endings of the adjective which are frequently used.

For the other declarative final endings of the adjective, please refer to the appendix.

## THE DECLARATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

94 There are the following declarative final endings to the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

1. The most deferential form:

습니다 [sumnida] / 뵙니다 [mnida]

1) 습니다 [sumnida] (when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the ending of the tense)

for example:

그는 대학생이였습니다.

[kunun taehaksaeng-iyotsumnida]

He a student was

He was a student.

explanation:

\* 대학생 + 이 + 였 + 습니다 [대학생 - noun 이 - exchanging ending (refer to 180) 였 - ending of the past tense (refer to 161) 습니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

2) ㅂ니다 [mnida] (when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has no ending of the tense)

for example:

저는 영국사람 ㅂ니다.\*

[chonun yong-guksaramimnida]

I an Englishman am

I am an Englishman.

explanation:

\* 영국사람 + 이 + ㅂ니다 [영국사람 - noun 이 - exchanging ending ㅂ니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

영국사람 ㅂ니다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

2. The middle form of courtesy:

요 [yo]

This final ending is used in spoken language when a person speaks with a sense of intimacy.

for example:

그는 나의 동무 요.\*

[kunun naui tongmuyo]

he my friend is

He is my friend.

explanation:

\* 동무 + 요 (동무 - noun 요 - middle declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

3. The low form of courtesy:

다 [da]

for example:

○ 조선은 하나 이 다.\*

[chosonun hanaida]

Korea one is

Korea is one.

*explanation:*

- \* 하나 + 이 + 다 (하나 — numeral 이 — exchanging ending 다 — low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

When the noun, pronoun or numeral to which the final ending of the verbal form is attached ends in a vowel, the exchanging ending 이 can be omitted.

In the final form 하나이다 the numeral 하나 ends in the vowel ㅏ. Therefore, 하나다 can be used instead of 하나이다.

95 Table of declarative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
습니다[sumnida] / 받니다[mnida]	요 [yo]	다 [da]

*remarks:*

We have indicated here only such declarative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral which are frequently used.

For the other declarative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral, please refer to the appendix.

## WORD ORDER

96 The declarative final form of the verb in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

나는 주체의 조국인  
[nanun chucheui chogugin  
I Juche of the fatherland being  
조선으로 간다\*.  
chosonuro kanda]  
Korea to go

I go to Korea, the  
fatherland of Juche.  
he.

explanation:

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending

가 + ㄴ다 [ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

간다(after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

The final form 간다 of the verb 가다 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

- 97 The declarative final form of the adjective in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

평양은	아름답습니다*.	Pyongyang is beautiful.
[pyongyang-un	arumdapsumnida]	
Pyongyang	beautiful	

explanation:

\* 아름답 + 다 [arumdap da] beautiful  
stem ending

아름답 + 습니다 (습니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The final form 아름답습니다 of the adjective 아름답다 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

- 98 The declarative final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

저는	학생대표입니다*.	I am a student delegate.
[chonun	haksaengdaepyoimnida]	
I a	student delegate am	

explanation:

\* 학생대표 + 이 + ㅂ니다 [학생대표-noun 이 - exchanging ending  
ㅂ니다-most deferential form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

학생대표입니다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅁ)

The final form 학생대표입니다 of the verbal form of the noun 학생대표 is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

## · LESSON 6

### THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

99 The interrogative pronouns are divided as follows:

1. The interrogative pronoun indicating a person

1) 누구 [nugu] who

누구 is substantively used.

for example:

당신은	누구입니까*?
[tangsinun	nuguimnigga]
you	who are?

Who are you?

explanation:

\* 누구 + 이 + ㅁ니까 [누구 - interrogative pronoun 이 - exchanging ending ㅁ니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 106)]  
누구입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅁ)

2) 아무 [amu] anyone; any

아무 "anyone" is used both substantively and adjectively.

for example:

○ 아무도*1	그것을 모릅니까*2?	Does nobody
[amudo	kugosul morumnigga]	know it?
anyone also	it not knows?	

explanation:

\*1 아무 + 도 [아무 - interrogative pronoun 도 - auxiliary ending (refer to 185)]



\*<sup>2</sup> 모르 + 다 [moru da] not know  
 stem ending

모르 + ㅂ니까 [ㅂ니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb(refer to '102)]

모릅니까(after contracting the syllable 르 and the sound ㅂ)

○ 아무 사람도\* 그것을  
 [amu saramdo kugosul  
 any man also it

Does nobody know it?

모릅니까?  
 morumnigga]  
 not knows?

explanation:

\* 아무 사람 + 도

(아무—interrogative pronoun 사람—noun 도—auxiliary ending)

The adjectively used interrogative pronoun 아무 lies before the word 사람 it refers to.

## 2. the interrogative pronoun indicating a thing

무엇 [muot] what

무엇 is substantively used.

for example:

이것은 무엇입니까\*?  
 [igosun muosimnigga]  
 this what is?

What is this?

explanation:

\* 무엇 + 이 + ㅂ니까 (무엇—interrogative pronoun  
 이—exchanging ending ㅂ니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

무엇입니까(after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

## 3. The interrogative pronoun indicating quantity

1) 얼마 [olma] how much, how many

얼마 is substantively used.

for example:

그것은 얼마입니까\*?  
 [kugosun olma imnigga]  
 it how much is?

How much is it?

explanation:

- \* 얼마 + 이 + ㅂ니까 (얼마—interrogative pronoun 이—exchanging ending ㅂ니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)  
얼마입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

2) 몇 [myot] how many

몇 is used both substantively and adjectively.

for example:

- |         |               |                     |
|---------|---------------|---------------------|
| ○ 이것은   | 몇입니까 *?       | How many are there? |
| [igosun | myochimnigga] |                     |
| this    | how many is?  |                     |

explanation:

- \* 몇 + 이 + ㅂ니까 (몇—interrogative pronoun 이—exchanging ending ㅂ니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)  
몇입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

- |          |                    |                           |
|----------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| ○ 그들은    | 몇사람입니까 *?          | How many people are they? |
| [kudurun | myot saramimnigga] |                           |
| they     | how many man are?  |                           |

explanation:

- \* 몇 + 사람 + 이 + ㅂ니까  
(몇—interrogative pronoun 사람—noun 이—exchanging ending ㅂ니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)  
몇사람입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

4. The interrogative pronoun indicating a place

어디 [odi] which place

어디 is substantively used.

for example:

당신은 어디에 \*<sub>1</sub> 갑니까 \*<sub>2</sub>? | Where are you going?  
 [tangsinun odie kamnigga]  
 you , which place to go?

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 어디 + 예(어디 - *interrogative pronoun* 예 - *dative ending*)

\*<sub>2</sub> 가 + 다 [ka da] go

가 + ㅂ니까 (ㅂ니까 - *most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb*)

갑니까 (*after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㅂ*)

## 5. The interrogative pronoun indicating time

언제 [onje] which time

언제 is substantively used.

*for example:*

그는 언제\* 옵니까? | When is he coming?  
 [kunun onje omnigga]  
 he at which time comes?

*explanation:*

\* the interrogative pronoun 언제 is in the dative form. Accordingly the dative ending 예 of the interrogative pronoun 언제 was omitted. This is called the absolute case.

## 100 Table of interrogative pronouns

person	누구 [nugu]	who
	아무 [amu]	anyone; any
thing	무엇 [muot]	what
quantity	얼마 [olma]	how much, how many
	몇 [myot]	how many
place	어디 [odi]	which place
time	언제 [onje]	which time

## THE DECLENSION OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

- 101 The declension of the interrogative pronoun is the same as with a noun(*refer to 26, 27*).

## THE INTERROGATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

- 102 There are the following interrogative final endings to the verb:

1. The most deferential form:

습니까 [sumnigga]/ 뵈니까[mnigga]

- 1) 습니까[sumnigga] (*when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant*)

for example:

그는	사과를	먹 습니까*?	Is he eating the apple?
[kunun	sagwarul	moksumnigga]	
he	the apple	eats?	

explanation:

*	먹	+	다	[mok da]	eat
	stem		ending		

먹 + 습니까 (습니까—*most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb*)

The stem 먹 of the verb 먹다 ends in the consonant ㄱ.

- 2) 뵈니까 [mnigga] (*when the stem of the verb ends in vowel*)

for example:

그는	편지를	쭙니까*?	Is he writing the letter?
[kunun	pyonjirul	ssumnigga]	
he	the letter	writes?	

explanation:

\* 쓰 + 다 [ssu da] write  
 stem ending

쓰 + ㅅ니다 (ㅅ니다—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

습니까 (after contracting the syllable 쓰 and the sound ㅅ)

The stem 쓰 of the verb 쓰다 ends in the vowel—.

## 2. The middle form of courtesy:

나 [na]

This final ending is used when a man asks something with friendly feeling.

for example:

그는	자나*?
[kunun	chana]
he	sleeps?

Is he asleep?

explanation:

\* 자 + 다 [cha da] sleep  
 stem ending

자 + 나 (나—middle interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

## 3. The low form of courtesy:

느냐 [nunya]

for example:

동무야	알겠느냐*!
[tongmuya	algennunya]
comrade!	know?

Comrade! Do you know!

explanation:

\* 알 + 다 [al da] know  
 stem ending

알 + 겠 + 느냐 (겠—ending of the future tense 느냐—low interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

The ending of the future tense 겠 expresses here not the meaning of the future, but the meaning of surmise.

# 103 Table of interrogative final endings of the verb

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
습니까 [sumnigga] / 뵈니까 [mnigga]	나 [na]	느냐 [nunya]

## remarks:

We have indicated here only such interrogative final endings of the verb which are frequently used.

For the other interrogative final endings of the verb, please refer to the appendix.

## THE INTERROGATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE ADJECTIVE

104 There are the following interrogative final endings to the adjective:

### 1. The most deferential form:

습니까 [sumnigga] / 뵈니까 [mnigga]

- 1) 습니까 [sumnigga] (*when the stem of the adjective ends in a consonant*)

for example:

당신의 마음은 즐겁 습니까\* ?  
[tangsinui maumun chulgopsumnigga] Is your heart merry?  
your heart merry?

### explanation:

\* 즐겁 + 다 [julgop da] merry  
stem ending

즐겁 + 습니까 (습니까 — *most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective*)

The stem *즐겁* of the adjective *즐겁다* ends in the consonant *ㅂ*.  
 2) *ㅂ* *니까* [mnigga] (when the stem of the adjective ends in  
 a vowel)

for example:

하늘은	푸릅니까?	Is the sky blue?
[hanurun	purumnigga]	
the sky	blue?	

explanation:

\* 푸르 + 다 [puru da] blue  
 stem ending

푸르 + ㅂ니까 (ㅂ니까—most deferential interrogative  
 form of the final ending of the adjective)

푸릅니까 (after contracting the syllable *르* and the sound *ㅂ*)

The stem *푸르* of the verb *푸르다* ends in the vowel—.

## 2. The middle form of courtesy:

*ㄴ*가 [nga]

for example:

날씨가	나쁜가*?	Is the weather bad?
[nalssiga	nabbun·ga]	
the weather	bad?	

explanation:

\* 나쁘 + 다 [nabbu da] bad  
 stem ending

나쁘 + ㄴ가 (ㄴ가—middle interrogative form of the  
 final ending of the adjective)

나쁜가 (after contracting the syllable *ㅂ* and the sound *ㄴ*)

## 3. The low form of courtesy:

1) *냐* [nya]

This final ending is used for the adjective without any end-  
 ing of the tense.

for example:

너는	기쁘냐*?	Are you glad?
[nonun	kibbunya]	
you	glad?	

explanation:

\* 기쁘 + 다 [kibbu da] glad  
 stem ending

기쁘 + 냐 (냐 - low interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)

## 2) 느냐 [nunya]

This final ending is used for the adjective with the ending of the tense.

for example:

너는	얼마나	기쁘겠 느냐*?	How glad are you?
[nonun]	olmana	kibbugennunya]	
you	how	glad	

explanation:

\* 기쁘 + 다 [kibbu da] glad  
 stem ending

기쁘 + 겠 + 느냐 (겠 - ending of the future tense 느냐 - low interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The ending of the future tense 겠 has here not the meaning of the future, but the meaning of surmise.

## 105 Table of interrogative final endings of the adjective

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
습니까/      뵙니까 [sumnigga]    [mnigga]	ㄴ가 [nga]	1) 냐 [nya] 2) 느냐 [nunya]

remarks:

We have indicated here only such interrogative final endings of the adjective which are frequently used.

For the other interrogative final endings of the adjective, please refer to the appendix.



# THE INTERROGATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

106 There are the following interrogative final endings to the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral:

1. The most deferential form:

습니까 [sumnigga] / 뵈니까 [mnigga]

1) 습니까[sumnigga] (*when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the ending of the tense*)

for example:

그는            대학생이였 습니까* ?	Was he a student?
[kunun    taehaksaeng . iyossumnigga]	
he            a student was ?	

explanation:

\* 대학생 + 이 + 었 + 습니까 (대학생 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 었 - ending of the past tense 습니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

2) 뵈니까 [mnigga] (*when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has no ending of the tense*)

for example:

그는            영국사람입니다* ?	Is he an Englishman?
[kunun    yong . guksaramimnigga]	
he            an Englishman is ?	

explanation:

\* 영국사람 + 이 + 뵈니까 (영국사람 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 뵈니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

영국사람입니다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅁ)

2. The middle form of courtesy:

ㄴ가 [nga]

for example:

이	꽃은	조선의	진달래	인가*?		Is this flower
[i	ggochun	chosonui	chindallae	in-ga]		the Korean
this flower	Korea of	the azalia	is?		azalia?	

explanation:

\* 진달래 + 이 + ㄴ가 (진달래 - noun 이 - exchanging ending  
 ㄴ가 - middle interrogative form of the final ending  
 of the verbal form)  
 진달래인가 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)

### 3. The low form of courtesy:

#### 1) 냐 [nya]

This final ending is used for the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral without any ending of the tense.

for example:

너는	누구 냐*?		Who are you?
[nonun	nugunya]		
you	who are?		

explanation:

\* 누구 + 냐 (누구 - interrogative pronoun 냐 - low interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

#### 2) 느냐 [nunya]

This final ending is used for the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral with the ending of the tense.

for example:

그것이	언제였	느냐*?		When was it?
[kugosi	onjeyonnunya]			
it	which time was?			

explanation:

\* 언제 + 였 + 느냐 (언제 - interrogative pronoun 였 - ending of the past tense 느냐 - low interrogative form of

*the final ending of the verbal form)*

107 Table of interrogative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
습니까 / 뵈니까 [sumnigga] [mnigga]	ㄴ가 [n·ga]	1) 냐 [nya] 2) 느냐 [nunya]

*remarks:*

We have indicated here only such interrogative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral which are frequently used.

For the other interrogative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral, please refer to the appendix.

## WORD ORDER

108 The interrogative final form of the verb in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

당신은	어디에	갑니까*?
[tangsinun]	odie	kamnigga]
you	which place to	go ?

Where are you going?

*explanation:*

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go

stem ending

가 + 뵈니까 (뵈니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

갑니까 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 뵈)

The final form 갑니까 in the sentence is the predicate,

and it lies at the end of the sentence.

- 109 The interrogative final form of the adjective in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

당신 의	마 음 은	즐겁 습 니 까 * ?	Is your heart merry?
[tangsinui	maumun	chulgopsumnigga]	
Your	heart	merry ?	

explanation:

\* 즐겁 + 다 [julgop da] merry  
stem ending

즐겁 + 습 니 까 (습 니 까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The final form 즐겁 습 니 까 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

- 110 The interrogative final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

그 는	누 구 입 니 까 * ?	Who is he ?
[kunun	nuguimnigga]	
he	who is ?	

explanation:

\* 누구 + 이 + ㅁ 니 까 (누구—noun 이—exchanging ending  
ㅁ 니 까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

누구 입 니 까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅁ)

The interrogative final form 누구 입 니 까 of the verbal form of the noun 누구 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of sentence.

III The position of the interrogative pronoun in the sentence is as follows:

1. When the interrogative pronoun becomes the subject, it usually lies at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

누가*	옵니까?	Who comes?
[nuga	omnigga]	
who	comes?	

explanation:

\* 누 + 가 (가 - *nominative ending*)

2. The final form of the verbal form of the interrogative pronoun is formed by attaching the final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral to the interrogative pronoun.

This final form in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

너는	누구나*?	Who are you?
[nonun	nugunya]	
you	who are?	

explanation:

\* 누구 + 나 (누구 - *interrogative pronoun* 나 - *low interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form*)

3. When the interrogative pronoun becomes the object, it lies between the subject and the predicate.

for example:

당신은	무엇을*	합니까?	What do you do?
[tangsinun	muosul	hamnigga]	
you	what	do?	

explanation:

\* 무엇 + 을 (무엇 - *interrogative pronoun* 을 - *accusative ending*)

The object 무엇을 lies between the subject 당신은 and the predicate 합니까.

4. When the interrogative pronoun is used as an attribute, it lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

그들은	몇	사람	입니까* ?		How many people are they ?
[kudurun	myot	saramimnigga]			
they	how many	man are?			

explanation:

\* 몇 + 사람 + 이 + ㅁ니까 (몇 — *interrogative pronoun* 사람 — *noun* 이 — *exchanging ending* ㅁ니까 — *most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form*)  
 몇사람입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅁ)

- 112 The form of address usually lies at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

박동무,	나는	정거장에	가오.*		Comrade Pak, I am going to the station.
[pakdongmu	nanun	chong-gojang.e	kao]		
comrade Pak I		the station to go			

explanation:

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
 stem ending  
 가 + 오 오 — *middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)

- 113 An interjection usually lies at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

아*, 나의	고향	이여 !		Ah, my native place !
[a	naui	kohyang.iyo]		
ah	my	native place !		

explanation:

\* The interjection 아 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

## LESSON 7

### THE NUMERALS

114 The Korean language has a double series of numerals:

1. The series of pure Korean numbers
2. The series of numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters

115 The cardinal numbers:

	Korean				
number	The pure Korean cardinal numbers		The cardinal numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters		English
	substantival	adjectival	substantival, adjectival		
1	하나 [hana]	한 [han]	일 [il]		one
2	둘 [tul]	두 [tu]	이 [i]		two
3	셋 [set]	세 [se]	삼 [sam]		three
4	넷 [net]	네 [ne]	사 [sa]		four
5	다섯 [tasot]	다섯 [tasot]	오 [o]		five
6	여섯 [yosot]	여섯 [yosot]	륙 [ryuk]		six
7	일곱 [ilgop]	일곱 [ilgop]	칠 [chil]		seven
8	여덟 [yodol]	여덟 [yodol]	팔 [pal]		eight
9	아홉 [ahop]	아홉 [ahop]	구 [ku]		nine
10	열 [yol]	열 [yol]	십 [sip]		ten
11	열하나 [yolhana]	열한 [yolhan]	십일 [sibil]		eleven
12	열둘 [yoldul]	열두 [yoldu]	십이 [sibi]		twelve
13	열셋 [yolset]	열세 [yolse]	십삼 [sipsam]		thirteen
14	열넷 [yolnet]	열네 [yolne]	십사 [sipsa]		fourteen

15	열다섯 [yoldasot]	열다섯 [yoldasot]	십 오 [sibo]	fifteen
16	열여섯 [yoryosot]	열여섯 [yoryosot]	십 륵 [simryuk]	sixteen
17	열일곱 [yorilgop]	열일곱 [yorilgop]	십 칠 [sipchil]	seventeen
18	열여덟 [yoryodol]	열여덟 [yoryodol]	십 팔 [sippal]	eighteen
19	열아홉 [yorahop]	열아홉 [yorahop]	십 구 [sipgu]	nineteen
20	스물 [sumul]	스무 [sumu]	이십 [isip]	twenty
21	스물하나 [sumulhana]	스물한 [sumulhan]	이십일 [isibil]	twenty one
22	스물둘 [sumuldul]	스물두 [sumuldu]	이십이 [isibi]	twenty two
30	서른 [sorun]	서른 [sorun]	삼십 [samsip]	thirty
40	마흔 [mahun]	마흔 [mahun]	사십 [sasip]	forty
50	쉰 [swin]	쉰 [swin]	오십 [osip]	fifty
60	예순 [yesun]	예순 [yesun]	륙십 [ryuksip]	sixty
70	일흔 [ilhun]	일흔 [ilhun]	칠십 [chilsip]	seventy
80	여든 [yodun]	여든 [yodun]	팔십 [palsip]	eighty
90	아흔 [ahun]	아흔 [ahun]	구십 [kusip]	ninety
100			백 [paek]	hundred
101	백하나 [paek·hana]	백한 [paek·han]	백일 [paegil]	a hundred and one
102	백둘 [paekdul]	백두 [paekdu]	백이 [paegi]	a hundred and two
200			이백 [ibaek]	two hundred
300			삼백 [sambaek]	three hundred
400			사백 [sabaek]	four hundred
500			오백 [obaek]	five hundred
600			륙백 [ryukbaek]	six hundred
700			칠백 [chilbaek]	seven hundred
800			팔백 [palbaek]	eight hundred
900			구백 [kubaek]	nine hundred



1, 000			천 [chon]	thousand
1, 001	천하나 [chonhana]	천한 [chonhan]	천일 [chonil]	a thousand and one
10, 000			만 [man]	ten thousand
100, 000			십만 [simman]	hundred thousand
1, 000, 000			백만 [paengman]	one million
10, 000, 000			천만 [chonman]	ten million
100, 000, 000			억 [ok]	hundred million

It is advisable to read the numeral in the pure Korean numbers as much as possible.

for example:

19 열아홉 [yolahop] nineteen

111 백열하나 [paegyolhana] a hundred and eleven

1007 천일곱 [chonilgop] a thousand and seven

The declension of the numeral is just the same as that of the noun (*refer to 26, 27*).

#### 116 The ordinal numbers:

Korean		English
The pure Korean ordinal numbers	The ordinal numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters	
첫번째 *1 [chotbonjjae], 첫째 [chotjjae]	제일 *2 [cheil]	first

두번째 [tubonjjae],	제이 [chei]	second
둘째 [tuljjae]		
세번째 [sebonjjae],	제삼 [chesam]	third
셋째 [setjjae]		
네번째 [nebonjjae],	제사 [chesa]	fourth
넷째 [netjjae]		
다섯(번)째 [tasot(bon)jjae]	제오 [cheo]	fifth
여섯(번)째 [yosot(bon)jjae]	제륙 [cheryuk]	sixth
일곱(번)째 [ilgop(bon)jjae]	제칠 [chechil]	seventh
여덟(번)째 [yodol(bon)jjae]	제팔 [chepal]	eighth
아홉(번)째 [ahop(bon)jjae]	제구 [chegu]	ninth
열(번)째 [yol(bon)jjae]	제십 [chesip]	tenth
열한(번)째 [yolhan(bon)jjae]	제십일 [chesibil]	eleventh
열두(번)째 [yoldu(bon)jjae]	제십이 [chesibi]	twelfth
스무(번)째 [sumu(bon)jjae]	제이십 [cheisip]	twentieth
서른(번)째 [sorun(bon)jjae]	제삼십 [chesamsip]	thirtieth
마흔(번)째 [mahun(bon)jjae]	제사십 [chesasip]	fortieth
쉰(번)째 [swin(bon)jjae]	제오십 [cheosip]	fiftieth
예순(번)째 [yesun(bon)jjae]	제륙십 [cheryuksip]	sixtieth
일흔(번)째 [ilhun(bon)jjae]	제칠십 [chechilsip]	seventieth
여든(번)째 [yodun(bon)jjae]	제팔십 [chepalsip]	eightieth
아흔(번)째 [ahun(bon)jjae]	제구십 [chegusip]	ninetieth
백(번)째 [paek(bon)jjae]	제일백 [cheilbaek]	hundredth

*explanation:*

- \*<sub>1</sub> ...째 [...jjae] is a suffix. It means "order" and is attached to the pure Korean cardinal number in order to form the corresponding pure Korean ordinal number.
- \*<sub>2</sub> 제 [che] is a prefix. It means "order" and is put before the cardinal number in order to form the corresponding ordinal number.

## THE COUNTING WORD

117 The numbers are connected to a counting word, and then the counting word lies after the main word. These counting words are different according to the objects to be counted. They have the meaning of "piece" in English.

The counting words are:

① 개[gae] "piece" (for objects)

for example:

의자	두 개	two chairs
[uija	tugae]	
chair	two pieces	

② 명[myong] "person" (for persons)

for example:

대 학생	두 명	two students
[taehaksaeng	tumyong]	
student	two persons	

③ 분[bun] "person" (for expressing respect)

for example:

선 생	두 분	two teachers
[sonsaeng	tubun]	
teacher two	persons	

④ 마리[mari] "animal" (for animals)

for example:

소 두 마리	
[so tumari]	two oxen
ox two animals	

⑤ 권 [gwon] "book", "volume" (for books)

for example:

사전 두권

[sajon tugwon]

dictionary two books

two dictionaries

⑥ 장 [jang] "sheet" (for papers, roofing-tiles or bricks)

for example:

종이 두장

[jong-i tujang]

paper two sheets

two sheets of paper

⑦ 벌 [bol] "suit" (for clothes)

for example:

옷 두벌

[ot tubol]

clothes two suits

two suits of clothes

⑧ 대 [dae] "piece" (for machines, cars or airplanes)

for example:

비행기 두대

[pihaeng-gi tuda]

airplane two pieces

two airplanes

⑨ 척 [chok] "ship" (for ships)

for example:

배 세척

[pae sechok]

ship three ships

three ships

⑩ 채 [chae] "house" (for houses)

for example:

집 한 채

[chip hanchae]  
house one house

one house

⑪ 자루 [jaru] "piece" (for pencils or rifles)

for example:

연필 네 자루

[yonpil nejaru]

pencil four pieces

four pencils

⑫ 켄레 [kolle] "pair" (for shoes)

for example:

신 한 켄레

[sin hankolle]

shoes one pair

a pair of shoes

⑬ 문 [mun] "gun" (for guns)

for example:

대포 열문

[taepo yolmun]

gun ten guns

ten guns

⑭ 그루 [guru] "tree" (for trees)

for example:

나무 두 그루

[namu tuguru]

tree two trees

two trees

## THE INCOMPLETE NOUN

- 118 The Korean language has the incomplete noun. An incomplete noun is a noun which cannot express a complete meaning and can express it only when another word lies before it as an attribute.

for example:

○ 선생      두 분*	
[sonsaeng tubun]	two teachers
teacher    two persons	

*explanation:*

\* The adjectival numeral 두 lies before the incomplete noun 분 as an attribute.

○ 우리는 반드시 승리할것이다.*	
[urinun pandusi sungrihalgosida]	We shall
we            surely            win shall	surely win.

*explanation:*

\*승리하 + 다 [sungriha da] win  
stem ending

승리하 + 리 + 것 + 이 + 다

[리 -attributive ending of the verb in its future tense (refer to 147) 것 -incomplete noun 이 -exchanging ending 다 -low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

승리할것이다 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound 리)

○ 그가 올수 있다*	
[kuga olsu itda]	He can come.
he            come\ can	

*explanation:*

\*오 + 다 [o da] come  
stem ending

오 + 리 + 수 있다 (리 -attributive ending of the verb in its future tense 수 -incomplete noun 있다 -verb)

올수 있 + 다 [(다 -low declarative form of the final ending of the verb) after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound 리]

## THE SUGGESTIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

119 There are the following suggestive final endings of the verb:

### 1. The most deferential form :

보시다[psida]

for example:

영 화 를	보시다.*	Let us see the film!
[yonghwarul]	popsida]	
the film	see let us	

*explanation:*

\* 보 + 다 [po da] watch  
           stem    ending

보 + 보 시 다 (보시다—*most deferential suggestive form of the final ending of the verb*)

보 시 다 (after contracting the syllable 보 and the sound ㅁ)

### 2. The middle form of courtesy:

세[se]

This final ending is used in written language.

for example:

오전에	가세.*	Let us go in the
[ojone]	kase]	morning!
the morning in	go let us	

*explanation:*

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
           stem    ending

가 + 세 (세—*middle suggestive form of the final ending of the verb*)

### 3. The low form of courtesy:

자[ja]

for example:

○ 미제를	남	Let us drive the
[mijerul	nam	US imperialists
the US imperialists	south	out of south
조선에서	몰아내자*!	Korea!
josoneso	moranaejja]	
Korea from	drive out let us	

*explanation:*

\* 몰아내 + 다 [moranae da] drive out  
                   stem          ending

몰아내 + 자 (자-low suggestive form of the final ending  
                   of the verb)

○ 녀성들의 권리를 옹호하자*!	Let us defend
[nyosongdurui kwollirul onghohaja]	women's rights.
the women of the right defend let us	

*explanation:*

\* 옹호하 + 다 [onghoha da] defend  
                   stem          ending

옹호하 + 자 (자-low suggestive form of the final ending  
                   of the verb)

### 120 Table of suggestive final endings of the verb

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of cour- tesy
하십시오[psida]	세 [se]	자 [ja]

*remarks:*

We have indicated here only such suggestive final endings.



of the verb which are frequently used.  
For the other suggestive final endings of the verb, please refer to the appendix.

## THE IMPERATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

121 There are the following imperative final endings of the verb:

1. The most deferential form :

십시오 [sipsio]

This final ending is used when the speaker holds the person addressed in high esteem.

for example:

빨리 오 십시오.\*  
[bballi osipsio]  
quickly come!

Come quickly!

*explanation:*

\*오 + 다 [o da] come  
stem ending

오+십시오 (십시오—most deferential imperative form  
of the final ending of the verb)

2. The middle form of courtesy:

시오 [sio]

This final ending is used both in spoken and written Korean.

for example:

어서 앉으시오.\*  
[oso anjusio]  
please sit down!

Please, sit down!

*explanation:*

\* 앉 + 다 [an da] sit down

*stem ending*

앉 + 으 + 시오 (으 - *link vowel* 시오 - *middle imperative form of the final ending of the verb*)

3. The low form of courtesy:

라 [ra]

for example:

빨리 오라.\*  
[bballi ora]  
quickly come!

Come quickly!

*explanation:*

\*오 + 다 [o da] come

*stem ending*

오 + 라 (라 - *low imperative form of the final ending of the verb*)

## 122 Table of imperative final endings of the verb

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
십시오 [sipsio]	시오 [sio]	라 [ra]

*remarks:*

We have indicated here only such imperative final endings of the verb which are frequently used.

For the other imperative final endings of the verb, please refer to the appendix.

## WORD ORDER

### 123 The suggestive final form of the verb in the sentence

is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

미 제를 남조선  
[mijerul namjosen  
the US imperialists south Korea  
에서 몰아내자.\*  
eso moranaeja]  
from drive out let us

Let us drive the  
US imperialists out  
of south Korea!

*explanation:*

\*몰아내+다 [moranae da] drive out  
stem ending

몰아내+자 (자—low suggestive form of the final ending of the verb)

The suggestive final form 몰아내자 of the verb 몰아내다 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

- 124 The imperative final form of the verb in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

*for example:*

핵 무 기 를 철폐 하 라.\*  
[haengmugirul cholpehara]  
the nuclear weapon abolish!

Abolish nuclear  
weapons!

*explanation:*

\* 철폐하+다 [cholpeha da] abolish  
stem ending

철폐하+라 (라—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

The imperative final form 철폐하라 of the verb 철폐하다 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

- 125 The adjectival cardinal number lies before the word

it refers to.

for example:

열 아홉 살

[yorahopsal]

nineteen age

nineteen years old

*explanation:*

The adjectival cardinal number 열아홉 lies before the word 살 it refers to.

## LESSON 8

### THE ADVERB

126 According to their meaning or function adverbs in Korean fall into the following categories:

1. Adverbs which include words pointing out some characteristic feature of an action.

These adverbs denote the quality of an action, the manner in which an action is performed or give a quantitative characteristic of an action or a quality. These adverbs are very closely connected with the verbs which they modify.

for example:

깊이[kipi] deeply

높이[nopi] highly

널리[nolli] widely

반가이[pan-gai] gladly

천천히[chonchoni] slowly

자주[chaju] often

힘껏[himggot] with all

one's strength

가까이[kaggai] near

늘[nul] always

멀리[molli] far

이미[imi] already

2. Adverbs which include words pointing out some characteristic feature of a state.

These adverbs are very closely connected with the ad-

jectives which they modify.

for example:

대단히[taedani] very	좀[chom] a little
아주[aju] very	약간[yakgan] a little
상당히[sangdang.i] fairly	꽤[ggae] fairly
거의[koui] nearly	이리[iri] so; thus

3. Adverbs which are related to the sentence as a whole.

These adverbs are very closely connected with sentences as a whole.

These adverbs denote such modality as conviction, assumption, surmise, doubt and will.

for example:

물론[mullon] of course	만일[manil] if, when
결코[kyolko] never	비록[pirok] although
정말[chongmal] indeed	도대체[todaeche] on earth
사실[sasil] really	응당[ungdang] naturally
만약[manyak] if, when	

4. Adverbs which include words expressing both onomatopoeic and mimetic words

These adverbs are very closely connected with the verbs which they modify. Besides, they are in close relation to the nouns and are used as the attribute or predicate in sentences.

for example:

쿵[kung] bang	쾅[kwang] bounce
꼬끼오[ggoggio]	하하[haha] ha ha
cock-a-doodle-doo	뭉게뭉게[munggemung.ge] densely

5. Connecting adverbs

These adverbs connect some parts of a sentence.

for example:

및[mit] and

또한[ddohan] also

겸[kyom] and concurrently

## 6. Adverbs of negation

These adverbs lie mainly before verbs the meaning of which they deny.

아니[ani] / 안[an] not (negation without condition and cause)

못[mot] not (negation with condition and cause)

- 127 Adverbs have diverse lexical meaning and, besides, differ from each other in their structure. Some of them are single words whereas others are derivatives.

### 1. Single adverb:

for example:

잘[chal] good; often

몸소[momso] personally

매우[maeu] very

### 2. Derivatives:

These are formed by attaching 이[i] or 히[hi] to the root of the adjective.

#### 1) By attaching the suffix 이[i]

for example:

깊이[kipi] deeply

*explanation:*

깊 + 다 [kip da] deep

root ending

깊 + 이 (이-suffix)

The adverb **깊이** is formed by attaching the suffix **이** to the root **깊** of the adjective **깊다**.

2) By attaching the suffix **히** [hi]

for example:

**용감히** [yong·gami] bravely

*explanation:*

**용감** + **하** + **다** [yong·gam ha da] brave

*root suffix ending*

**용감** + **히** (**히** - *suffix*)

The adverb **용감히** is formed by attaching the suffix **히** to the root **용감** of the adjective **용감하다**.

## THE CONNECTING FORM OF THE VERB, ADJECTIVE OR VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

- 128 The connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the form, the ending of which is used as a conjunction.

The connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is formed by attaching the connecting ending to the stem of the verb or adjective or to the noun, pronoun or numeral.

The following are the connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral:

- 129 1. The coordinative connecting endings:

The coordinative connecting endings connect grammatically equivalent units.

The coordinative connecting endings are divided into three kinds:

130 1) The copulative connecting endings:

The copulative connecting endings connect equal units.

(1) 고[go]

This connecting ending is used in order to express the simple linking and the linking of chronological order.

for example:

○ 먹 고* <sup>1</sup> 입 는* <sup>2</sup> . 문제	the question of food
[mog-go imnun munje]	and clothes
eating and dressing question	

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat  
stem ending

먹 + 고 (고-copulative connecting ending)

\*<sub>2</sub> 입 + 다 [ip da] dress  
stem ending

입 + 는 [는-attributive ending of the verb in its present tense (refer to 147)]

○ 조선사람은 슬기롭고* <sup>1</sup>	The Koreans are a
[chosonsaramun sulgiropgo]	wise and brave nation.
the Korean wise and	
용감한* <sup>2</sup> 민족이다.	
yong.gamhan minjogida]	
brave nation is	

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 슬기롭 + 다 [sulgirop da] wise  
stem ending

슬기롭 + 고 (고-copulative connecting ending)

\*<sub>2</sub> 용감하 + 다 [yong.gamha da] brave  
stem ending

용감하 + ㄴ (ㄴ-attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense (refer to 149))



용감한 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㄴ)

○ 맑 고* <sup>1</sup> 푸른* <sup>2</sup> 하늘	the clear, blue sky
[malgo purun hanul]	
clear and blue sky	

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 맑 + 다 [mak da] clear

stem ending

맑 + 고 (고-copulative connecting ending)

\*<sub>2</sub> 푸르 + 다 [puru da] blue

stem ending

푸르 + ㄴ (ㄴ-attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense)

푸른 (after contracting the syllable 르 and the sound ㄴ)

○ 비 료 는 쌀 이 고*	The fertilizer is
[piryonun ssarigo]	rice, and the rice is
the fertilizer rice is and	namely communism.
쌀은 곧 공산주의다.	
ssarun kot kongsanju·uida]	
rice namely communism is	

*explanation:*

\*쌀+이+고 (쌀-noun 이-exchanging ending 고-copulative connecting ending)

(2) 며[myo], 면서[myonso]

These connecting endings are used in order to express a simple link.

for example:

○ 소년 단원들이	
[sonyon danwonduri]	
Children's Union members	
노래를 부르며*	
noraerul purumyo	
a song sing and	

Children's Union members march on the street, singing a song.

거리	를	행진	한다.
korirul		haengjinhanda]	
street		march	

*explanation:*

\* 부르 + 다 [puru da] sing  
 stem ending  
 부르 + 며 (며 - copulative connecting ending)

○ 그는 시인이며* 작곡가이다.		He is a poet and composer.
[kunun si·inimyo chakgokgaida]		
he a poet and composer is		

*explanation:*

\* 시인 + 이 + 며 (시인 - noun 이 - exchanging ending  
 며 - copulative connecting ending)

○ 로동자이면서*		Comrade Kim, a worker and concurrently a student at a university-level factory college
[rodongjaimyonso		
a worker is and		
공장대학생인		
kongjangdaehaksaeng·in		
concurrently a university-level factory		
김동무		
kimdongmu]		
college student being		
Kim comrade		

*explanation:*

\* 로동자 + 이 + 면서 (로동자 - noun 이 - exchanging ending  
 면서 - copulative connecting ending)

### 131 2) The adversative connecting endings:

The adversative connecting endings are used to connect two adversative units.

(1) 지만 [jiman]

*for example:*

우리는	전쟁을	바라지	We don't want
[urinun	chonjaeng·ul	paraji	the war, but
we	the war	want	never fear it.

않	지	만*	결	코	전	쟁	을
anchiman			kyolko		chonjaeng	.ul	
not	but		surely		the	war	
두	려	워	하	지	않	는	다.* <sup>2</sup>
turyowohaji			annunda				
fear			not				

explanation:

\*<sub>1</sub> 바라 + 다 [para da] want  
stem ending

바라 + 지 않다 [지 - connecting ending of negation (refer to 139) 않다 - verb]

바라 + 지 않 + 지만 (지만 - adversative connecting ending)

\*<sub>2</sub> 두려워하 + 다 [turyowoha da] fear  
stem ending

두려워하 + 지 않다 (지 - connecting ending of negation  
않다 - verb)

두려워하 + 지 않 + 는다 (는다 - low declarative form of the  
final ending of the verb)

(2) ㄴ 데 [nde]

ㄴ 데 denotes the present tense.

This connecting ending is used in the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral without ending of the tense and in the adjective without ending of the tense.

for example

그	는	로	동	자	인	데*
[kunun		rodongja		inde		
he	a	worker	is	"but		
공	장					
kongjang						
a	university-level	factory				
대	학	생	이	다		
daehaksaengida						
college	student	is				

He is a worker, but  
a student at a uni-  
versity-level factory  
college.

explanation:

\* 로동자 + 이 + ㄴ 데 (로동자 - noun 이 - exchanging ending ㄴ 데

—adversative connecting ending)

로동자인데 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)

### 132 3) The disjunctive connecting ending:

(1) 나[na], 든[dun]

These connecting endings are used in pairs, but they can also be used alone.

for example:

눈 이	오 나*	비 가	오 나*	the soldiers of our
[nuni	ona	piga	ona	People's Army who
snow	comes or	rain	comes or	always defend the
언제나	초소를	지키는	우리	post whether it snows
onjena	chosorul	chikinun	uri	or rains
always	the post	defending	our	
인민군	군인들			
inmin-gun	gunindul]			
People's	Army soldiers			

explanation:

\* 오 + 다 [o da] come  
stem ending

오 + 나 (나—disjunctive connecting ending)

든[dun] can be used instead of 나[na].

for example:

눈이	오든	비가	오든	whether it snows or
[nuni	odun	piga	odun	rains
snow	comes or	rain	comes or	

(2) 든지[dunji]

This connecting ending is used in pairs, but it can also be used alone.

for example:

내가	가든지* <sup>1</sup>	네가
[naega	kadunji	nega
I	go or	you
가든지* <sup>1</sup>	하여야	한다.* <sup>2</sup>
kadunji	hayoya	handa]
go or	must	

I or you must go.

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending

가 + 든지(든지—disjunctive connecting ending)

\*<sub>2</sub> 하 + 다 [ha da] do  
stem ending

하+여야 하다[여야—connecting ending of condition(refer to 134) 하다—verb]

하+여야 하+ㄴ다(ㄴ다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

하여야 한다—(after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㄴ)

### 133 2. The subordinate connecting endings:

The subordinate connecting endings are divided as follows:

#### 134 1) The connecting endings of condition:

These endings connect subordinate and principal parts, the former of which expresses the condition for the latter.

(1) 면[myon]

for example:

래일	날씨가	좋으면* <sup>1</sup>
[raeil	nalssiga	choumyon
tomorrow	the weather	good when

When the weather is  
fine tomorrow, we  
shall start.

우리는	출발하겠다.* <sup>2</sup>
urinun	chulbalhagetda]
we	start shall

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 좋 + 다 [chota] good

*stem ending*

좋 + 으 + 면 (으—link vowel 면—connecting ending  
of condition)

\*<sub>2</sub> 출발하+다 [chulbalha da] start

*stem ending*

출발하+겠+다 (겠—ending of the future tense 다—low  
declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

(2) 아야 [aya] / 어야 [oya] / 여야 [yoya]

These endings express indispensable condition.

아야 [aya] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the vowel ㅏ [a], ㅑ [ya] or ㅓ [o] in its last syllable.

for example:

나가 + 다 [naga da] go out

*stem ending*

나가+아야 (아야—connecting ending of condition)

나가야 (after contracting the syllables 가 [ga] and 아 [a])

어야 [oya] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the vowel ㅗ [o], ㅛ [yo], ㅜ [u], ㅡ [u] or ㅣ [i] in its last syllable.

for example:

먹 + 다 [mok da] eat

*stem ending*

먹 + 어야 (어야—connecting ending of condition)

여야 [yoya] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral ends in the vowel ㅣ [i], ㅐ [ae], ㅔ [e], ㅚ [oe], ㅟ [wi], ㅢ [ui] or the syllable 하 [ha] in its last syllable.

for example:

공부하+다 [kongbuha da] study

*stem ending*

공부하+여야 (여야—connecting ending of condition)

for example:

너는 열심히 공부 하여야\*  
[nonun yolsimi kongbuhayoya  
you hard only when study  
시험에 합격할 수 있다.  
sihome hapgyokalsu itda]  
to exam pass can

Only when you  
study hard can you  
pass the exam.

*explanation:*

\* 공부하 + 다 [kongbuha da] study  
stem ending  
공부하 + 여야(여야—connecting ending of condition)

135 2) The connecting endings of cause:

The connecting endings of cause connect the subordinate and principal parts, the former of which expresses the cause for the latter.

(1) 므로[muro]

for example:

비가 오므로\* 나는  
[piga omuro nanun  
the rain comes because I

Because it rains, I  
take my umbrella.

우산을 가지고 간다.  
usanul kajigo kanda]  
the umbrella take

*explanation:*

\* 오 + 다 [o da] come  
stem ending  
오 + 므로(므로—connecting ending of cause)

(2) 니[ni], 니까[nigga]

These connecting endings mainly express the reason.

for example:

날 씨 가    몸 시  
 [nalssiga mopssi  
 the weather very  
 추 우 니\*    전 강 에  
 chu·uni      kon·gang·e  
 cold because health to  
 주 의 하 라 .  
 chu·uihara]  
 attention pay!

Look after your  
 health because it is  
 very cold!

*explanation:*

\* 춥 + 다 [chup da] cold  
*stem ending*

추 + 우 + 니 [(니-connecting ending of cause) af-  
 ter exchanging the sound ㅅ for the syllable 우 (re-  
 fer to 196)]

니까 [nigga] can be used instead of 니 [ni].

for example:

추우니까 [chu·unigga] cold because

*explanation:*

춥 + 다 [chup da] cold  
*stem ending*

추 + 우 + 니까 [(니까-connecting ending of cause) after  
 exchanging the sound ㅅ for the syllable 우 (refer to  
 196)]

(3) 더니 [doni-]

This connecting ending expresses the reason or cause.

for example:

그는      열심히      공부하더니\*  
 [kunun yolsimi kongbuhadoni  
 he          diligently studied as  
 성공하였다\*2.  
 song·gonghayotda]  
 succeeded

As he studied  
 diligently, he succeeded.



*explanation:*

- \*<sub>1</sub> 공부하 + 다 [kongbuha da] study  
stem ending  
공부하 + 더니 (더니 -- connecting ending of cause)
- \*<sub>2</sub> 성공하 + 다 [song.gongha da] succeed  
stem ending  
성공하 + 였 + 다 (였 -- ending of the past tense 다 -- low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

136 3) The connecting endings of order:

These endings are used to express that some acts occur in order.

(1) 다[da], 다가[daga]

These connecting endings are mainly used with the verb.

They express that an action is discontinued and followed by another action.

for example:

그 는 책 을  
[kunun chaegul  
he the book  
보다\*  
poda  
to read stopping  
나갔다.  
nagat·da]  
went out

He stopped reading  
the book and went out.

*explanation:*

- \* 보 + 다 [po da] read  
stem ending  
보 + 다 (다 -- connecting ending of order)  
다가[daga] can be used instead of 다[da].

for example:

보다가[podaga] to read stopping

*explanation:*

보 + 다 [po da] read  
stem ending

보 + 다가(다가—connecting ending of order)

(2) 자[ja]

This connecting ending is mainly used with the verb.  
It expresses that an action is followed by another action.

for example:

비 가 오 자\*<sup>1</sup>  
[piga oja  
the rain came immediately  
어 두 워 졌 다\*<sup>2</sup>  
oduwojyotda]  
dark got

Immediately after  
it rained, it got dark.

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 오 + 다 [oda] come  
stem ending

오 + 자(자—connecting ending of order)

\*<sub>2</sub> 어둡 + 다 [odup da] dark  
stem ending

어두+우+어+지다[(어—connecting ending of method or means 지다—verb which is used as an auxiliary) after exchanging the sound ㅁ for the syllable 우(refer to 196)]

어두+워+지+다[(지—stem 다—ending) after contracting the syllables 우 and 어]

어두+워+지+였+다(였—ending of the past tense 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

어두워졌다(after contracting the syllables 지 and 였)

#### 137 4) The connecting endings of method or means

아[a] / 어[o] / 여[yo]

아[a] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the vow-

el ㅏ [a], ㅑ [ya] or ㅓ [o] in its last syllable.

ㅓ [o] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the vowel ㅏ [o], ㅑ [yo], ㅓ [u], ㅕ [u] or ㅗ [i] in its last syllable.

ㅕ [yo] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral ends in the vowel ㅗ [i], ㅛ [ae], ㅜ [e], ㅠ [oe], ㅡ [wi], ㅟ [ui] or the syllable ㅏ [ha] in its last syllable.

for example:

○ 해 가	쫓 아* <sup>1</sup>	오 른 다* <sup>2</sup>	The sun rises.
[haega	sosa	orunda]	
the sun going up	rises		

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 쫓 + 다 [sot da] go up  
*stem ending*  
 쫓 + 아 (아—connecting ending of method or means)

\*<sub>2</sub> 오르 + 다 [oru da] rise  
*stem ending*  
 오르 + ㄴ 다 (ㄴ 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)  
 오 른 다 (after contracting the syllable 르 and the sound ㄴ)

○ 반 제 련 대 성 ,	for anti-imperialist solidarity, peace and friendship
[panjeryondaessong	
anti-imperialist solidarity	
평 화 와 친 선 을 위 하 여*	
pyonghwawa chinsonul wihayo]	
peace and friendship for	

*explanation:*

\* 위하 + 다 [wiha da] serve  
*stem ending*  
 위하 + 여 (여—connecting ending of method or means)

(1) 려[ryo], 려고[ryogo], 사고[jago]

These endings express intention.

for example:

하 자 고\* 결 심 하 면  
[hajago kyolsimhamyon  
to do determines if  
못 해 낼  
motaenael  
not able to finish  
일 이 없 다.  
iri opda]  
work there is not

If man is determined, there is nothing which cannot be finished.

*explanation:*

\* 하 + 다 [ha da] do  
stem ending

하 + 사고(사고-connecting ending of aim or intention)

(2) 러(ro)

This ending expresses purpose.

for example:

나 는 공 부 하 러\*  
[nanun kongbuharo  
I in order to study  
학 교 에 간 다.  
hakgyoe kanda]  
school to go

I go to school in order to study.

*explanation:*

\* 공부하 + 다 [kongbuha da] study  
stem ending

공부하+러(러-connecting ending of purpose or intention)

## 139 6) The connecting ending of negation

지[ji]

This ending is connected to **않다** [anta] "not", **못하다** [motada] "cannot" or **말다** [malda] "not" and is attached to the stem of the verb or adjective.

It expresses an action or situation which is denied.

The word with **지** [ji] becomes a part of the sentence together with **않다** [anta] "not", **못하다** [motada] "cannot" or **말다** [malda] "not".

for example:

푸른 하늘을	더럽히지	말라*!	Don't pollute the blue sky!
[purun hanurul]	toropiji	mallā]	
the blue sky	pollute	not!	

*explanation:*

\* 더럽히 + 다 [toropi da] pollute

*stem ending*

더럽히 + 지 말다 (지—*connecting ending of negation*

말다—*verb which is used as an auxiliary*)

더럽히지 말 + 다

*stem ending*

더럽히지 말 + 라 (라—*low imperative form of the final ending of the verb*)

140 Table of connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

classification		connecting ending
coordinative	copulative	(1) 고 [go] (2) 며 [myo], 면서 [myonso]
	adversative	(1) 지만 [jiman] (2) ┌데 [nde]
	disjunctive	(1) 나 [na], 든 [dun] (2) 든지 [dunji]

subordinative	condition	(1) 면[myon] (2) 아야[aya] / 어아[oya] / 여아[yoya]
	cause	(1) 므로[muro] (2) 니[ni], 니까[nigga] (3) 더니[doni]
	order	(1) 다[da], 다가[daga] (2) 자[ja]
	method or means	아[a] / 어[o] / 여[yo]
	purpose or intention	(1) 려[ryol], 려고[ryogol], 자고[jagol] (2) 러[ro]
	negation	지[ji]

*remarks:*

We have indicated here only such connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral which are often used.

For the other connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral, please refer to the appendix.

## WORD ORDER

- 141 The connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral comes before the unit to be connected.

for example:

조 선 사 람 은      슬 기 록 고 * [chosonsaramun    sulgiropgo the Korean          wise and  용 감 한          민 족 이 다 . yong.gamhan minjogida] brave              nation is	The Koreans are a wise and brave nation.
--	---

*explanation:*

\*The connecting form 슬기롭고 of the adjective 슬기롭다 lies before the unit 용감한 to be connected.

- 142 The position of the adverb

1. The adverb can be an adverbial modifier.
- 1) The adverb can be a modifier to the part of sentence expressed by the verb.
- (1) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the final form of the verb.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the final form of the verb, the final predicate.

for example:

그 는   빨   리 * <sub>1</sub> 달 린 다 * <sub>2</sub> . [kunun   bballi      tallinda] he          quickly      runs	He runs quickly.
--	------------------

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> The adverb 빨리 lies before the final form 달린다 of

the verb 달리다, the final predicate.

\*<sub>2</sub> 달리 + 다 [talli da]run  
stem ending

달리 + ㄴ다(ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

달린다(after contracting the syllable 리 and the sound ㄴ)

(2) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the connecting form of the verb.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the connecting form of the verb, the connecting predicate.

for example:

그	가	안*	오	고*	내	가	온	다		He	does'nt	come
[kuga	anogo				naega	onda]				and	I	come.
he		not	comes	and	I	come						

explanation:

\*<sup>1</sup> The adverb 안 lies before the connecting form 오고 of the verb 오다, the connecting predicate.

\*<sub>2</sub> 오 + 다 [o da] come  
stem ending

오 + 고 (고-copulative connecting ending of the verb)

(3) The adverb can be a modifier to the attribute expressed by the attributive form of the verb.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the attributive form of the verb (refer to 147), the attribute.

for example:

잘*	자	는*	아	이		a	good	sleeping	child
[chal	chanun		ai]						
good	sleeping		child						

explanation:

\*<sub>1</sub> The adverb 잘 comes before the attributive form 자는



of the verb 자다, the attribute.

\*<sub>2</sub> 자 + 다 [cha da] sleep  
stem ending

자 + 는 [는—*attributive ending of the verb in its present tense (refer to 147)*]

2) The adverb can be a modifier to the part of sentence expressed by the adjective

(1) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the final form of the adjective.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and lies before the final form of the adjective, the final predicate.

for example:

이	방	은	아	주	* <sub>1</sub>	큼	니	다	* <sub>2</sub>	This room is very large.
[i	pang	un	aju	kumnida]						
this	room		very	large						

explanation:

\*<sub>1</sub> The adverb 아주 comes before the final form 큼니다 of the adjective 크다, the final predicate.

\*<sub>2</sub> 크 + 다 [ku da] large  
stem ending

크+ㅁ니다(ㅁ니다—*most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the adjective*)

큼니다(*after contracting the syllable 크 and the sound ㅁ*)

(2) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the connecting form of the adjective.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the connecting form of the adjective, the connecting predicate.

for example:

이	방	은	아	주	* <sub>1</sub>	크	고	* <sub>2</sub>	밝	다	This room is very large and bright.
[i	pang	un	aju	kugo							
this	room		very	large and							

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> The adverb 아주 lies before the connecting form 크고 of the adjective 크다, the connecting predicate.

\*<sub>2</sub> 크 + 다 [ku da] large

*stem ending*

크 + 고 (고 - *copulative connecting ending of the adjective*)

(3) The adverb can be a modifier to the attribute expressed by the attributive form of the adjective.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the attributive form of the adjective (*refer to 149*), the attribute.

for example:

아 주\*<sub>1</sub>    큰\*<sub>2</sub>    방  
[aju        kun    pang]  
very        large    room

| a very large room

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> The adverb 아주 lies before the attributive form 큰 of the adjective 크다, the attribute.

\*<sub>2</sub> 크 + 다 [ku da] large

*stem ending*

크 + ㄴ (ㄴ - *attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense (refer to 149)*)

큰 (*after contracting the syllable 크 and the sound ㄴ*)

3) The adverb can be a modifier to the part of sentence expressed by the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

(1) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or

numeral, the final predicate.

for example:

벌써\*<sup>1</sup> 가을이 다\*<sup>2</sup>.  
[polsso kaurida]  
already autumn is

It is already autumn.

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> The adverb 벌써 lies before the final form 가을이다 of the verbal form of the noun 가을, the final predicate.

\*<sub>2</sub> 가을+이+다(가을-noun 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

- (2) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the connecting form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the connecting form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral, the connecting predicate.

for example:

벌써\*<sup>1</sup> 가을이 지만\*<sup>2</sup>  
[polsso kaurijiman]  
already autumn is but  
날씨는 따뜻하다.  
nalssinun ddaddutada]  
the weather warm

It is already autumn,  
but the weather is  
warm.

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> The adverb 벌써 lies before the connecting form 가을이지만 of the verbal form of the noun 가을, the connecting predicate.

\*<sub>2</sub> 가을+이+지만(가을-noun 이-exchanging ending 지만-adversative connecting ending of the verbal form)

- (3) The adverb can be a modifier to the attribute expressed by the attributive form of the verbal form

of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral (*refer to 154*), the attribute.

for example:

벌써\*<sub>1</sub>    대 학 생 인 \*<sub>2</sub>  
[polsso    taehaksaeng .in  
already    student being  
김 동 무  
kimdongmu]  
Kim comrade

Comrade Kim who is  
already a student

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> The adverb 벌써 comes before the attributive form 대학생인 of the verbal form of the noun 대학생, the attribute.

\*<sub>2</sub> 대학생 + 이 + ㄴ (대학생 - noun 이 - exchanging ending ㄴ - attributive ending of the verbal form in its present tense)  
대학생인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)

4) The adverb can be a modifier to another modifier expressed by an adverb or adverbial form.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before another adverb or adverbial form, the adverbial modifier.

for example:

좀\*<sub>1</sub>    천 천 히    걸 어 라\*<sub>2</sub>!  
[chom    chonchoni    korora]  
a little    slowly    walk!

Walk a little slowly!

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> The adverb 좀 comes before another adverb 천천히, the adverbial modifier.

\*<sub>2</sub> 걸 + 다 walk

걸 + 어라 [(어라 - low imperative form of the final ending of

the verb) after exchanging the sound ㄷ for the sound ㄹ  
(refer to 196)]

2. The adverb can be an attribute.

The adverb may lie before the word which it modifies.  
for example:

쿵*	소리		bang
[kung	sori]		
bang	crack		

*explanation:*

\* The adverb 쿵 comes before the word 소리 it refers to.

3. The adverb can be a predicate.

The adverb comes at the end of the sentence.  
for example:

닭	들은	꼬	끼	오*		Hens cry cock- a-doodle-doo.
[tak	durun	ggoggio]				
hens	cock-a-doodle-doo					

*explanation:*

\* The adverb 꼬끼오 comes at the end of the sentence.

4. The connecting adverb connects similar units.  
for example:

정	치,	경	제	및*	문	화		policy, economy and culture
[chongchi	kyongje	mit	munhwa]					
policy,	economy and	culture						

*explanation:*

\* The connecting adverb 및 connects 경제 and 문화 and comes between them.

## LESSON 9

### THE PRE- NOUN

143 The pre-noun is a part of speech which defines the character of the object and is not used as a predicate, but only as an attribute.  
for example:

○	온	사회	[on sahoe]	whole society
	pre-noun	noun		

○ 모든 근로자들\*[modun kullojadul] all working people  
pre-noun noun

explanation:

\* 근로자 + 들(근로자-noun 들-plural ending)

144 The pre-nouns are divided into two kinds:

1. The pre-noun which expresses the quantity of the object

for example:

○ 매 사람 [mae saram] each man  
pre-noun noun

○ 약 3배 [yak sambae] about three times  
pre-noun noun

2. The pre-noun which expresses a property of the object  
for example:

○ 사회주의, 공산주의의  
[sahoeju-ui kongsanju-uiui  
socialism of communism of  
새 기원\*  
sae kiwon]  
new era

the new era of social-  
ism and communism

explanation:

\* 새 기원  
pre-noun noun

○ 또 사람 [ddan saram] another person  
pre-noun noun

145 The pre-noun has no ending and is only used as an attribute.

for example:

온 나라 [on nara] whole country  
pre-noun noun

explanation:

The pre-noun 온 comes before the noun 나라 as an attribute.

## THE INTERJECTION

146 The interjection denotes the emotion and attitude of the speaker.

There are the following interjections:

1. Interjections which express emotions such as joy, sorrow and wonder:

for example:

- 1) joy: 만세! [manse] hurrah!
- 2) sorrow: 오! [o] oh!, 아이고! [aigo] woe!
- 3) wonder: 아! [a] ah!, 오! [o] oh!

2. Interjections which express the demand or will of the speaker.

for example:

- 자[cha] now
- 어서[oso] please

3. Interjections which express the attitude of the person addressed.

for example:

- 응[ung] yes (to a person of the same rank or to an inferior)
- 예[ye] yes (to a superior)

## THE ATTRIBUTIVE FORM OF THE VERB

147 The attributive form of the verb is formed by attaching one of the following attributive endings of the verb to the stem of the verb:

1. The attributive ending which expresses the present tense of the verb

는[nun]

This ending is an attributive ending which expresses the fact that an action occurs simultaneously with another action or at the time when the person is speaking. for example:

싸우는 * 인민	fighting people
[ssaunun inmin]	
fighting people	

*explanation:*

\*싸우 + 다 [ssau da] fight  
stem ending

싸우 + 는 (는—attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)

2. The attributive ending which expresses the past tense of the verb

ㄴ[n]

This attributive ending is the attributive ending which expresses the fact that an action occurs before another action or before the time when the person is speaking. for example:

○ 우리 나라에	the people's power established in our country
[uri nara·e our country in	
세워진* 인민정권	
[sewojin inminjong·gwon] established people power	

*explanation:*

\*세우 + 다 [seu da] establish  
stem ending

세우 + 어 + 지다 (어—connecting ending of method or means  
지다—verb which is used as an auxiliary)

세워 + 지 + 다 (after contracting the syllables 우 and 어)



세워 + 지 + ㄴ (ㄴ—attributive ending of the verb in its past tense)

세워진 (after contracting the syllable 지 and the sound ㄴ)

○ 이 책은 내가

[i chaegun naega

this book I

어제 읽은 \* 책이다.

oje ilgun chaegida]

yesterday read book is

This book is the book  
which I read yesterday.

explanation:

\* 읽 + 다 [ik da] read

stem ending

읽 + 으 + ㄴ (으—link-vowel ㄴ—attributive ending of the verb in its past tense)

읽 + 은 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound ㄴ)

3. The attributive ending which expresses the past continuous tense of the verb

던 [don]

for example:

이 책은 내가

[i chaegun naega

this book I

어제 읽던 \*

oje ikdon

yesterday having been read

책이다.

chaegida]

book is

This book is the book  
which I was reading  
yesterday.

explanation:

\* 읽 + 다 [ik da] read

stem ending

읽 + 던 (던—attributive ending of the verb in its past continuous tense)

4. The attributive ending which expresses the future tense of the verb

ㄹ [l]

for example:

○ 어린이들은 앞날의  
[orinidurun amnarui  
the children the future of  
조국을  
chogugul  
the fatherland  
떠메고나갈\*  
ddomegonagal  
to shoulder and go forward  
우리 혁명의 믿음직한  
uri hyongmyong-ui midumjikan  
our revolution of reliable  
후계자들이 다.  
hugyejadurida]  
successors are

The children are the  
reliable successors of  
our revolution who will  
brighten the future of our  
fatherland.

*explanation:*

\* 떠메 + 다 [ddome da] shoulder  
stem ending

떠메 + 고 + 나가다 (고 — copulative connecting ending  
나가다 — verb which is used as an auxiliary)

떠메 + 고 + 나가 + 다  
stem ending

떠메 + 고 + 나가 + 겐 (겐 — attributive ending of the verb in its  
future tense)

떠메고 나갈 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound  
겐)

○ 이 책은 내가  
[i chaegun naega  
this book I  
래일 읽을\* 책이다.  
raeil ilgul chaegida]  
tomorrow to be read book is

This book is the book  
which I shall read to-  
morrow.

*explanation:*

\* 읽 + 다 [ik da] read  
stem ending

읽 + 으 + 겐 (으 — link-vowel)

ㄴ-*attributive ending of the verb in its future tense*)  
 읽을 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound ㄴ)

148 Table of the attributive endings of the verb

attributive ending of the verb	tense
는[nun]	present
ㄴ[n]	past
던[don]	past continuous
ㄹ[ll]	future

## THE ATTRIBUTIVE FORM OF THE ADJECTIVE

149 The attributive form of the adjective is formed by attaching one of the following attributive endings of the adjective to the stem of the adjective:

1. The attributive ending which expresses the present tense of the adjective

ㄴ[n]

for example:

○ 오늘 우리 사회주의 조국은  
 [onul uri sahoeju-ui jogugun  
 today our socialist fatherland  
 조선인민의 행복\*  
 chosoninminui haengbokan  
 Korean people of happy

Our socialist father-  
 land is today the happy  
 cradle of the Korean  
 people.

보금자리이다.  
pogumjari·ida]  
nest is

*explanation:*

\* 행복하 + 다 [haengboka da] happy  
stem ending

행복하 + L (L—attributive ending of the adjective in its  
present tense)

행복한 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound L)

○ 이것은	붉은*	꽃이다.	This is a red flower.
[igosun	pulgun	ggochida]	
this	red	flower is	

*explanation:*

\* 붉 + 다 [puk da] red  
stem ending

붉 + 으 + L (으—link-vowel

L—attributive ending of the adjective in its  
present tense)

붉은 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound L)

2. The attributive ending which expresses the past continuous tense of the adjective

던 [don]

for example:

어둡던*	하늘이	맑게	The sky which was dark brightens up.
[odupdon	hanuri	malge	
having been dark	sky	clearly	

개인다.  
kaeinda]  
brightens

*explanation:*

\* 어둡 + 다 [odup da] dark  
stem ending

어둡 + 던 (던—attributive ending of the adjective in its  
past continuous tense)

3. The attributive ending which expresses the future tense of the adjective

ㄹ[1]

for example:

이	것	은	클*	나무	이다.	This is a tree that will grow big.
[igosun			kul	namuida]		
this		to grow big	tree is			

explanation:

\* 크 + 다 [ku da] big  
stem ending

크 + ㄹ(ㄹ-attributive ending of the adjective in its  
future tense)

클(after contracting the syllable 크 and the sound ㄹ)

# 150 Table of the attributive endings of the adjective

attributive ending of the adjective	tense
ㄴ[n]	present
던[don]	past continuous
ㄹ[1]	future

## THE ATTRIBUTIVE FORM OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

- 151 The attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the form which is used as an attribute.

The attributive form of the verbal form of the noun.

pronoun or numeral is formed by attaching one of the following attributive endings of the verbal form to the noun, pronoun or numeral by means of the exchanging ending 이:

1. The attributive ending which expresses the present tense of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

ㄴ[n]

for example:

주 체 의 조 국 인 \*  
[chucheui chogugin  
Juche of the fatherland being

Korea, the fatherland  
of Juche

조 선  
choson]  
Korea

*explanation:*

\*조국 + 이 + ㄴ (조국 - noun 이 -exchanging ending

ㄴ -attributive ending of the verbal form in its  
present tense)

조국인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)

2. The attributive ending which expresses the past continuous tense of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

던[don]

for example:

지 난 날 에 조 선 인 민 군  
[chinannare chosoninmingun  
the past in Korean People's Army

Comrade Kim who was a  
soldier of the Korean  
People's Army

군 인 이 던 \*                      김 동 무  
guninidon                      kimdongmu]  
soldier having been Kim comrade

*explanation:*

\*조선인민군 군인 + 이 + 던 (조선인민군 군인 -noun  
이 -exchanging ending 던 -attributive ending of the  
verbal form in its past continuous tense)

3. The attributive ending which expresses the future tense  
of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral  
ㄹ[1]

for example:

나라의	주인공들일*	the new generation who will be heroes of the country
[narau]	chuin-gongduril	
the country of	heroes to be	
새 세대		
sae sedae]		
new generation		

explanation:

\*주인공 + 들 + 이 + ㄹ (주인공 -noun 들 - plural ending  
이 -exchanging ending ㄹ -attributive ending of the  
verbal form in its future tense)

주인공들일 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound  
ㄹ)

152 Table of the attributive endings of the verbal form of  
the noun, pronoun or numeral

attributive ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral	tense
ㄴ[n]	present
던[don]	past continuous
ㄹ[1]	future

# THE FORM OF THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE VERB OR ADJECTIVE

153 This form is a form which is used as an adverbial modifier.

This is formed by attaching one of the following endings of the adverbial modifier to the stem of the verb or adjective:

1. The endings of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective

게[ge], 도록[dorok]

These endings of the adverbial modifier express the manner or circumstance in which some action or situation occurs.

for example:

○ 아름답게 * <sub>1</sub>	피는 * <sub>2</sub>	beautifully blooming
[arumdapge]	pinun	magnolia blossom
beautifully	blooming	
목란꽃		
[mongranggot]		
magnolia blossom		

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 아름답 + 다 [arumdap da] beautiful  
stem ending

아름답 + 게 (게 -ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective)

\*<sub>2</sub> 피 + 다 [pi da] bloom  
stem ending

피 + 는 (는 -attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)

○ 밤이	깊도록 *	till late at night
[pami]	kipdorok]	
night	deep till	



*explanation:*

\* 깊 + 다 [kip da] deep  
stem ending

깊+도록(*도록-ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective*)

2. The endings of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective

듯[dut], 듯이[dusi]

These endings are used to express comparison in actions or situations.

for example:

그가 말하듯이\*  
[kuga malhadusi]  
he says as

as he says

*explanation:*

\* 말하 + 다 [malha da] say  
stem ending

말하+듯이(*듯이-ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective*)

3. The ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective

근수록[lsurok]

This ending expresses intensification in comparison.  
for example:

붉을수록\* 아름다운  
[pulgulsurok arumdaun]  
red the more beautiful

The redder, the more beautiful is Korean azalea.

조선의 진달래  
chosonui chindallae]  
Korean azalea

*explanation:*

\* 붉 + 다 [puk da] red  
stem ending

붉+으+근수록(*으-link-vowel 근수록-ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective*)

붙을수록 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound  
근)

- 154 Table of the endings of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective

ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective
1. 게[ge], 도록[dorok] 2. 듯[dut], 듯이[dusi] 3. 러수록[lsurok]

## WORD ORDER

- 155 The attributive form of the verb comes before the word it refers to.

for example:

싸우는\* 인민  
[ssaunun inmin]  
fighting people

fighting people

explanation:

\* 싸우 + 다 [ssau da] fight  
stem ending

싸우 + 는 (는 - attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)

The attributive form 싸우는 of the verb 싸우다 lies before the word 인민 it refers to.

- 156 The attributive form of the adjective comes before the word it refers to.

for example:

붉은\* 꽃  
[pulgun ggot]  
red flower

red flower

*explanation:*

\* 붉 + 다 [puk da] red  
           stem       ending

붉 + 으 + ㄴ (으 - link-vowel   ㄴ - attributive ending of the  
   adjective in its present tense)

붉은 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound ㄴ)  
 The attributive form 붉은 of the adjective 붉다 lies before  
 the word 꽃 it refers to.

157 The attributive form of the verbal form of the noun,  
 pronoun or numeral comes before the word it refers to.

for example:

로 동 자       발명가인 \*  
 [rodongja   palmyong-gain  
   worker   inventor being

Comrade Kim, an inven-  
 tor and worker

김 동 무  
 kimdongmu]  
 Kim comrade

*explanation:*

\* 발명가 + 이 + ㄴ (이 - exchanging ending   ㄴ - attributive ending  
   of the verbal form in its present tense)

발명가인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the  
   sound ㄴ)

The attributive form 발명가인 of the verbal form of the  
 noun 발명가 lies before the word 김동무 it refers to.

158 The form of the adverbial modifier of the verb or ad-  
 jective comes before the word it modifies.

for example:

아 름 답 게 \* 피는       진 달 래  
 [arumdapge   pinun       chindallae]  
 beautifully   blooming   azalea

beautifully blooming.  
 azalea

*explanation:*

\* 아 름 답 + 다 [arumdap da] beautiful  
           stem       ending

아 름 답 + 게 (게 - ending of the adverbial modifier of the

*verb or adjective* )

The form of the adverbial modifier 아름답게 of the adjective 아름답다 lies before the word 피는 it refers to.

159 The pre-noun comes before the word it refers to.

for example:

○ 새 * 집		new house
[sae chip]		
new house		

*explanation:*

\* The pre-noun 새 comes before the word 집 it refers to.

○ 단 * 둘		only two
[tan dul]		
only two		

*explanation:*

\* The pre-noun 단 comes before the word 둘 it refers to.

160 The interjection depends on no word and mostly comes at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

오 * 평양 !		Oh, Pyongyang!
[o pyongyang		
oh Pyongyang!		
평양 은		
pyongyang-un		
Pyongyang		
나의 심장 .		
naui simjang]		
my heart		

*explanation:*

\* The interjection 오 comes at the beginning of the sentence.

## LESSON 10

### THE TENSES

- 161 The tenses in Korean are expressed by the tense ending.  
162 The tenses expressed by the tense endings are called the absolute tenses.

The absolute tenses are the present, past and future.

#### 1. The present

The present expresses an action or situation which occurs at the time when the person is speaking.

The present is expressed by the zero tense ending, namely without any tense ending.

for example:

열 차 는 달 린 다 \*  
[ryolchanun tallinda]  
the train runs

The train runs.

*explanation:*

\* 달 리 + 다 [talli da] run  
stem ending

달 리 + ㄴ 다 (ㄴ 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

달 린 다 (after contracting the syllable 리 and the sound ㄴ)

There is no tense ending in the final form 달 린 다 of the verb 달 리 다.

#### 2. The past

The past expresses an action or situation which occurred before the time when the person is speaking.

The past is expressed by the ending of the past tense  
았[at]/ 였[ot]/ 었[yot].

았[at] is attached to the stem of a word which is to express the past when the stem of the word has the

vowel ㅏ[a], ㅑ[ya] or ㅓ[o] in its last syllable.

았[ot] is attached to the stem of the word which is to express the past when the stem of the word has the vowel ㅓ[o], ㅕ[yo], ㅗ[u], ㅛ[u] or ㅜ[i] in its last syllable.

였[yot] is attached to the stem of the word which is to express the past when the stem of the word ends in the vowel ㅣ[i], ㅐ[ae], ㅔ[e], ㅚ[oe], ㅞ[wil], ㅟ[ui] or the syllable 하[ha] in its last syllable.

았[at], 았[ot] and 였[yot] come before the ending of the word which is to express the past.

for example:

두 유격대원이\*2

[tu yugyokdaewoni  
two partisans

농막집을

nongmakjibul

the peasant's cottage

찾아왔다\*1

chajawatda]

visited

Two partisans visited the peasant's cottage.

explanation:

\*1, 찾아오 + 다 [chajao da] visit  
stem ending

찾아오 + 았 + 다 (았-ending of the past tense 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

찾아왔다 (after contracting the syllables 오 and 았)

The ending of the past tense 았 is attached to the stem 오 of the verb 오다.

\*2 두 유격대원 + 이  
numeral noun nominative ending

Although the plural ending 들 is not attached to 유격대원, the meaning of the plural of 유격대원 is expressed by the numeral 두 which lies before 유격대원.

3. The future expresses the action or situation which will occur after the person speaks.

The future is expressed by the ending of the future tense 겠[get].

겠 [get] is attached to the stem of the word which is to express the future.

for example:

우리는 래일 영국으로  
[urinun raeil yong-guguro  
We tomorrow England for  
떠나겠습니다\*.  
ddonagetsumnida]  
leave shall

We shall leave for  
England tomorrow.

explanation:

\* 떠나 + 다 [ddona da] start  
stem ending

떠나 + 겠 + 습니다 (겠-ending of the future tense 습니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The ending of the future tense 겠 is attached to the stem 떠나 of the verb 떠나다.

163 The tenses are also expressed by attributive endings.

These tenses are called the relative tenses.

for example:

○ 그는 열린\*1 문을  
[kunun yollin munul  
he the opened door  
닫았다\*2.  
tadatda]  
shut

He shut the opened  
door.

explanation:

\*1 열리 + 다 [yolli da] be opened  
stem ending

열리 + ㄴ [리-ending of the voice (refer to 176) ㄴ-attributive ending of the verb in its past tense]

열린 (after contracting the syllable 리 and the sound ㄴ)

\*2 닫 + 다 [tat da] shut  
stem ending

달+았+다 (았-*ending of the past tense* 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The attributive ending ㄴ of the verb is the past.

And this is anterior to the past 달았다.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>○ 그는 래달에<br/>[kunun raedare<br/>he next month in<br/>수행할*<sup>1</sup><br/>suhaenghal<br/>to be carried out<br/>계획을 세웠다*<sup>2</sup>.<br/>gyehoegul sewot.da]<br/>plan worked out</p> | <p>He worked out the plan<br/>which will be carried<br/>out next month.</p> |
|---|---|

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 수행하 + 다 [suhaengha da] carry out  
stem ending

수행하 + ㄴ (ㄴ-*attributive ending of the verb in its future tense*)

수행할 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㄴ)

\*<sub>2</sub> 세우 + 다 [seu da] work out  
stem ending

세우+았+다 (았-*ending of the past tense*)

세웠다 (after contracting the syllables 우 and 었)

The attributive ending ㄴ of the verb is the future.

And this future is the future in the past 세웠다.

164 We can exactly express complicated relations of time by using tense endings.

1. In order to express the fact that one thing happened in the past and earlier than another thing, the combined form of two endings which express the past is used. Such a combination is made from among the past endings 았[at], 었[ot] and 었[yot].

for example:



이 집 주인은  
[i chip chuinun  
this house of the owner  
그 유격대원들과  
ku yugyokdaewondulgwa  
those partisans with  
전에 만났었으므로 \*1  
chone mannassossumuro  
before had met as  
반갑게 \*2 맞이했다 \*3  
pan-gapge majihaet da]  
gladly received

As the house owner  
had met those partisans  
before, he received them  
gladly.

explanation:

\*1 만나 + 다 [manna da] meet  
stem ending

만나 + 았 + 었 + 으 + 모로 (았-ending of the past tense  
였-ending of the past tense 으-link-vowel 모로-con-  
necting ending of cause)

만났었으므로 (after contracting the syllables 나 and 았)

\*2 반갑 + 다 [pangap da] glad  
stem ending

반갑 + 게 (게-ending of the adverbial modifier of the  
verb or adjective)

\*3 맞이하 + 다 [majiha da] receive  
stem ending

맞이하 + 었 + 다 (였-ending of the past tense 다-low  
declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

맞이했다 (after contracting the syllables 하 and 었)

2. 았[at], 었[ot] and 였[yot] are linked with ㄹ[ll] or 겠[get]  
to express the surmise of a fact in the past.

for example:

○ 그는 평양에  
[kunun pyongyang-e  
he Pyongyang to  
도착하였겠다 \*.  
tochakayotget da]  
may have arrived

He may have arrived  
at Pyongyang.

*explanation:*

- \* 도착하 + 다 [tochaka da] arrive  
stem ending

도착하 + 였 + 겠 + 다 (였-ending of the past tense  
    겠-ending of the future tense 다-low declarative form  
    of the final ending of the verb)

The ending of the past tense 였 and the ending of the future tense 겠 are linked to express the surmise of a fact in the past.

- 그는 평양에  
[kunun pyongyang.e  
he Pyongyang to  
도착하였을것이다\*.  
tochakayossulgosida]  
may have arrived

He may have arrived  
at Pyongyang.

*explanation:*

- \* 도착하 + 다 [tochaka da] arrive  
stem ending

도착하 + 였 + 으 + 겐 (였-ending of the past tense  
    으-link-vowel 겐-attributive ending of the verb in  
    its future tense)

도착하였을 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound 겐)

도착하였을 + 것 + 이 + 다 (것-incomplete noun 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

The ending of the past tense 였 and the attributive ending of the verb in its future tense 겐 are linked to express the surmise of a fact in the past.

165 The tenses can also be expressed by other methods.

1. The past can also be expressed by the connecting ending which begins with [더 [do]].

for example:

그는 열심히 공부하더니\*  
[kunun yolsimi kongbuhadoni]  
he diligently studied as  
성공하였다.  
song·gong·hayotda ]  
succeeded

As he had studied diligently, he succeeded.

*explanation:*

\* 공부하 + 다 [kongbuha da] study  
stem ending

공부하+더니 (더니-connecting ending of cause)

2. The future can also be expressed by attaching **ㄹ것**[lgot] to the stem of the word concerned.

for example:

그는 래일 올것이다\*  
[kunun raeil olgosida]  
he tomorrow come will

He will come tomorrow.

*explanation:*

오 + 다 [o da] come  
stem ending

오 + ㄹ + ㄹ + ㄹ + 이 + 다 (ㄹ-attributive ending of the verb in its future tense ㄹ-incomplete noun 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

올것이다 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound ㄹ)

166 Table of the tense endings

tense name	present	past	future
ending of the tense	zero ending	았[at], 었[ot], 였[yot]	겠[get]

## RESPECT AND COURTESY

- 167 Respect is a grammatical category in which the speaker expresses politeness for the doer.

Respect is expressed by the ending of respect 시[si].

The ending of respect 시[si] is attached to the predicative word.

for example:

선생님이	가십니다*.
[sonsaengnimi]	kasimnida]
the teacher	goes

The teacher goes.

explanation:

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending

가 + 시 + ㅂ니다 (시-ending of respect ㅂ니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

가십니다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㅂ)

선생님 is the owner of the action.

The speaker expresses respect to 선생님 by the ending of respect 시.

- 168 Courtesy is a grammatical category in which the speaker expresses politeness for the person addressed.

Courtesy is expressed in three forms, namely, the most deferential, middle and low forms.

for example:

○ 아버지가	가십니다*.
[abojiga]	kasimnida]
the father	goes

The father goes.

*explanation:*

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending

가 + 시 + ㅂ니다 (시-ending of respect ㅂ니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

가십니다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㅂ)

When a speaker speaks to a superior, he expresses courtesy for the person addressed by the most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb ㅂ니다.

○ 아버지가	가시오*.		The father goes.
[abojiga	kasio]		
the father	goes		

*explanation:*

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending

가 + 시 + 오 (시-ending of respect 오-middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

When a speaker speaks to a person at the same rank, he expresses courtesy for the person addressed by the middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb 오.

○ 아버지가	가신다*.		The father goes.
[abojiga	kasinda]		
the father	goes		

*explanation:*

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending

가 + 시 + ㅅ다 (시-ending of respect ㅅ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

가신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㅅ)

When a speaker speaks to an inferior, he expresses courtesy for the person addressed by the low declarative form of the final ending of the verb ㅅ다.

169 There are two cases in (the relation between) respect and courtesy.

In the first case the person addressed is immediately the doer of an action, etc.

In the second case the person addressed is not the doer of an action, etc.

1. When the person addressed is immediately the doer of an action, etc.

for example:

아버지는 언제  
[abojinun onje  
the father when

평양에 가십니까 \* ?  
pyongyang.e kasimnigga]  
Pyongyang to go?

When do you, father,  
go to Pyongyang?

explanation :

가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending

가 + 시 + 니까 (시-ending of respect 니까-most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)  
가십니까 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 니)

The speaker expresses respect for 아버지, the doer of an action, by the ending of respect 시.

The speaker expresses courtesy for the person addressed, who is 아버지, by the most deferential interrogative form 니까 of the final ending of the verb.

In Korean we do not use the personal pronoun such as you when we speak to a respected person. Instead, we use the denomination of his position in the family or society, such as father, mother and Mr.

2. When the person addressed is not the doer of an action, etc.

- 1) The speaker expresses respect for the doer of an action, etc.:

for example:

아버지	가	평양에	가신다*.		The father goes to Pyongyang.
[abojiga		pyongyang.e	kasinda]		
the father		Pyongyang to	goes		

*explanation:*

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending

가 + 시 + ㄴ다 (시-ending of respect ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

가신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㄴ)

The speaker speaks to an inferior. For example, a mother speaks to her child.

2) The speaker expresses courtesy for the person addressed:

for example:

그	애	가	평양에		That child goes to Pyongyang.
[ku	aega		pyongyang.e		
that child		Pyongyang to			
갑니다*.					
kamnida]					
goes					

*explanation:*

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending

가 + ㅂ니다 (ㅂ니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

갑니다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㅂ)

The speaker speaks to a superior.

For example, a son speaks to his father.

170 There are several words which have the meaning of respect. Such words should be used correctly.

for example:

word	word which has the meaning of respect	English
먹다 [mokda]	잡수시다[chapsusida]	eat
자다 [chada]	주무시다[chumusida]	sleep
있다 [itda]	계시다[kesida]	there is, be
말하다 [malhada]	말씀하시다[malssumhasida]	say
주다 [chuda]	드리다[turida]	give
	올리다[ollida]	give

for example:

○ 아버지가 주무신다\*.      |      The father sleeps.  
     [abojiga      chumusinda]  
     the father      sleeps

*explanation:*

\* 주무시 + 다 [jumusi da] sleep  
     stem      ending

주무시 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

주무신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㄴ)

The speaker expresses respect for 아버지, the doer of an action, by 주무신다.

○ 아이가 잔다\*.      |      The child sleeps.  
     [aiga      chanda]  
     the child      sleeps

*explanation:*

\* 자 + 다 [cha da] sleep  
     stem      ending

자 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)



잔다 (after contracting the syllable 자 and the sound ㄴ)  
 The doer of the action 잔다 is the child. Therefore, the speaker does not express respect for the doer of the action.

The word 잔다 which has no meaning of respect is used here.

## 171 Table of the ending of respect

ending of respect	시 [si]
-------------------	--------

## WORD ORDER

172 The ending of the tense comes directly before the final ending.

for example:

○ 나는 조선으로 간다*.		I go to Korea.
[nanun chosonuro kanda]		
I Korea to go		

explanation:

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
 stem ending

가 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

잔다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

The zero ending of the tense lies directly before the final ending ㄴ다.

○ 나는 조선으로 갔다*.		I went to Korea.
[nanun chosonuro katda]		
I Korea to went		

explanation:

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
 stem ending

가 + 았 + 다 (았-*ending of the past tense* 다-low *declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)

갔다 (after contracting the syllables 가 and 았)

The ending of the past tense 았 comes directly before the final ending 다.

○ 나는	조선으로	가겠다*.		I will go to Korea.
[nanun	chosonuro	kageta]		
I	Korea to	go will		

*explanation:*

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending

가 + 겠 + 다 (겠-*ending of the future tense* 다-low *declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)

The ending of the future tense 겠 comes directly before the final ending 다.

173 The ending of respect comes before the final ending.  
But when there is a tense ending, the ending of respect comes before the ending of the tense.

for example:

○ 아버지는	공장으로		The father goes to
[abojinun	konjang-uro		the factory.
the father	the factory to		
가신다*.			
kasinda]			
goes			

*explanation:*

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending

가 + 시 + ㄴ다 (시-*ending of the respect* ㄴ다-low *declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)

가신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㄴ)

The ending of respect 시 comes before the final ending ㄴ다.

○ 아버지는 공장으로  
[abojinun konjang·uro  
the father the factory to  
가셨다\*.  
kasyotda]  
went

The father went to  
the factory.

*explanation:*

\* 가 + 다 [ka da]  
stem ending

가 + 시 + 였 + 다 (시-ending of respect 였-ending of  
the past tense 다-low declarative form of the final  
ending of the verb)

가셨다 (after contracting the syllables 시 and 였)

The ending of respect 시 comes before the ending of the  
tense 였.

## LESSON 11

### THE VOICE

174 The voice is the form of the verb which shows the relation between the action and its agent—the doer, indicating whether the subject of the sentence is the agent or the object of the action expressed by the predicate verb.

There are three voices in Korean—active, passive and causative.

#### 175 1. active voice

The active voice shows that the action is performed by its subject, that the subject is the doer of the action. The active form is expressed by the zero ending.

for example:

그 동무는 글씨를  
[ku tongmunun kulssirul  
that man the letter

That man writes  
the letter well.

잘 쓴다\*.  
chal ssunda]  
well writes

*explanation:*

\* 쓰 + 다 [ssu da] write  
stem ending

쓰 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다- low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

쓴다 (after contracting the syllable 쓰 and the sound ㄴ)

## 176 2. The passive voice

The passive voice shows that the subject is the recipient—the object of this action.

The passive voice is expressed by the ending of the voice 이[i], 히[hi], 기[gi] or 리[ri] .

for example:

그 종이에<sup>\*2</sup>는 글씨가  
[ku chong-ienun kulssiga  
on that paper the letter

The letter is well  
written on that paper.

잘 쓰인다\*<sup>1</sup>.  
chal ssuinda]  
well is written

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 쓰 + 다 [ssu da] write  
stem ending

쓰 + 이 + ㄴ다 (이-ending of the voice of the passive form ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

쓰인다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)

The action in which the letter is written is expressed by the passive form 쓰인다 which has the ending of the

passive voice 이

\* 2 종이 + 에 + 는 (종이 - noun      에 - dative ending  
    는 - auxiliary ending)

ending of the voice of the passive form	end sound of the stem of the word	example
이[i]	vowel, ㄴ[r] ,  ㄱ[g], ㅈ[gg], ㅍ[p], ㅌ[t], ㅎ[h]	보이다[poida] be seen  (보다[poda] see)
히[hi]	ㅍ[p],  ㅌ[t], ㅈ[j], ㄱ[k]	박히다[pakida] be struck in  (박다[pakda] strike in)
기[gi]	ㅁ[m], ㅌ[t], ㅌ[t], ㅈ[j], ㅊ[ch], ㅅ[t]	씻기다 [ssitgida] be washed  (씻다[ssitda] wash)
리[ri]	ㄴ[l],  ㄹ[ru]	날리다[nallida] be flown  (날다[nalda] fly)

remarks:

We have indicated here only such endings of the voice of

the passive form which are frequently used.

For the other endings of the voice of the passive form, please refer to the appendix.

### 177 3. The causative form

The causative form is expressed by the ending of the voice 이[i], 히[hi], 기[gi] or 리[ri].

for example:

그는      사람들을      잘  
[kunun saramdurul      chal  
he      the people      well

웃긴다\*.  
utginda]  
makes laugh

He's good at making  
the people laugh.

*explanation:*

\* 웃 + 다 [ut da] laugh  
stem ending

웃 + 기 + ㄴ다 (기-ending of the voice of the causative form ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

웃긴다 (after contracting the syllable 기 and the sound ㄴ)

The action in which he makes the people laugh is expressed by the causative form 웃긴다 which has the ending of the voice 기.

ending of the voice of the causative form	end sound of the stem of the word	example
이[i]	vowel, ㄹ[r].	먹이다[mogida] let eat

	ㄱ[g], ㄲ[gg], ㅍ[p], ㅌ[t], ㅎ[h]	(먹다[mokda] eat)
히[hi]	ㅅ[p], ㅊ[t], ㅈ[j], ㅋ[k]	앉히다[an chida] let sit, set (앉다[anda] sit)
기[gi]	ㅁ[m], ㅌ[t], ㅌ[t], ㅈ[j], ㅊ[ch], ㅅ[t]	웃기다[utgida] make laugh (웃다[utda] laugh)
리[ri]	ㄴ[l],  ㄹ[ru]	울리다[ullida] make weep (울다[ulda] weep)

*remarks:*

We have indicated here only such endings of the voice of the causative form which are frequently used.

For the other endings of the voice of the causative form, please refer to the appendix.

178 The voice may also be expressed as follows:

1. In order to express the passive 되다 [toeda] "become", 당하다[tanghada] "suffer", 받다[patda] "receive", -아 지다[ajida] / -어지다[ojida] / -여지다[yojida] "become" or -게 되다[ge toeda] "become", etc. are attached to the root of the verb.

for example:

- 발전되다 | be developed  
[paljondoeda]

*explanation:*

발전하 + 다 [paljonha da] develop  
stem ending

발전 + 하 + 다  
root suffix ending

발전 + 되다  
verb

- 파괴당하다 | be destroyed  
[pagoedanghada]

*explanation:*

파괴하 + 다 [pagoeha da] destroy  
stem ending

파괴 + 하 + 다  
root suffix ending

파괴 + 당하다  
verb

- 착취받다 | be exploited  
[chakchwibatda]

*explanation:*

착취하 + 다 [chakchwiha da] exploit  
stem ending

착취 + 하 + 다  
root suffix ending

착취 + 받다  
verb

- 닦아지다 | be polished  
[taggajida]

*explanation:*

닦 + 다 [tak da] polish  
stem ending

닦 + 아 + 지다 (아-connecting ending of method  
or means 지다-verb which is used as an auxiliary)



2. In order to express the causative 시키다[sikida] “let”,  
 -게 하다[ge hada] “let” or -도록 하다[dorok hada] “let”,  
 etc. are attached to the root of the verb.

for example:

- 공부시키다  
 [kongbusikida] | make study

*explanation:*

공부 + 하 + 다 [kongbuha da] study  
*root suffix ending*

공부 + 시키다 make study  
*verb*

- 먹게 하다  
 [mokge hada] | let eat  
 eat let

*explanation:*

먹 + 다 [mok da] eat  
*stem ending*

먹 + 게 하다 (게-*ending of the adverbial modifier*  
*of the verb 하다-verb*)

- 먹도록 하다  
 [mokdorok hada] | let eat  
 eat let

*explanation:*

먹 + 다 [mok da] eat  
*stem ending*

먹 + 도록 하다 (도록-*ending of the adverbial*  
*modifier of the verb 하다-verb*)

## 179 Table of endings of the voice

ending \ form	passive form	causative form
ending of the voice	이[i], 히[hi], 기[gi], 리[ri]	이[i], 히[hi], 기[gi], 리[ri]

remarks:

We have indicated here only such endings of the voice which are frequently used.

For the other endings of the voice, please refer to the appendix.

## THE EXCHANGING ENDINGS

180 The exchanging endings are the endings which make the noun, pronoun or numeral into the verbal form or in the reverse the verb, adjective or the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral into the noun.

181 When the noun, pronoun or numeral is made into the verbal form, the exchanging ending 이 [i] is attached to the noun, pronoun or numeral.

for example:

○ 평양은

[pyongyang.un  
Pyongyang

조선민주주의

chosonminjuju.ui

the Democratic People's

인민공화국의

inmin.gonghwagugui

Republic of Korea of

수도이다\*.

sudoida]

the capital is

Pyongyang is the capital of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea.

*explanation:*

\* 수도 + 이 + 다 (수도-noun 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

The exchanging ending 이 is attached to the noun 수도.

○ 다음 차례는 네이다*.		Next, it is your turn.
[taum charyenun noida]		
next turn you is		

*explanation:*

\* 네 + 이 + 다 (나-pyon 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)  
The exchanging ending 이 is attached to the pronoun 너.

○ 조선은 하나이다*.		Korea is one.
[chosonun hanaida]		
Korea one is		

*explanation:*

\* 하나 + 이 + 다 (하나-numeral 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

The exchanging ending 이 is attached to the numeral 하나.

182 When the verb, adjective or the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is turned into the noun, the exchanging ending □[m] or 기[gi] is attached to the stem of the verb or adjective or to the stem of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

for example:

○ 아침에 일찍		Getting up early in the
[achime iljjik]		morning is good for the
the morning in early		health.
일어남은* 건강에 좋다.		
ironamun kon-gang-e chota]		
getting up health to good		

*explanation:*

\* 일어나 + 다 [irona da] get up  
stem ending

일어나 + □ (□-exchanging ending)

일어남 (after contracting the syllable 나 and the sound □)

The exchanging ending ㅁ is attached to the stem 일어나  
of the verb 일어나다.

- 그는 일하기를 \*<sup>1</sup> 좋아한다 \*<sup>2</sup>. | He likes working.  
[kunun ilhagirul choahanda]  
he working likes

*explanation:*

- \*<sub>1</sub> 일하 + 다 [ilha da] work  
stem ending

일하 + 기 + 를 (기-exchanging ending 를-accusative ending)

The exchanging ending 기 is attached to the stem 일하  
of the verb 일하다.

- \*<sub>2</sub> 좋 + 다 [cho ta] good  
stem ending

좋 + 아 + 하다 (아-connecting ending of method or means  
하다-verb which is used as an auxiliary do)

좋 + 아 + 하 + 다  
stem ending

좋 + 아 + 하 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final  
ending of the verb)

좋아한다 (after contracting the syllable 하 and sound ㄴ)

- 나는 아침에 일찍 | I know that getting  
[nanun achime iljjik] up early in the morning  
I the morning in early is good for the health.

일어남이 건강에  
ironami kon.gang.e  
getting up health to

좋은 \*<sup>1</sup> 안다 \*<sup>2</sup>.  
choumul anda]  
good being know

*explanation:*

- \*<sub>1</sub> 좋 + 다 [cho ta] good  
stem ending

좋 + 으 + ㅁ + 을 (으-link-vowel ㅁ-exchanging ending)

을-accusative ending)

종음을 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound ㅁ)

The exchanging ending ㅁ is attached to the stem 종 of the adjective 좋다 by the link-vowel 으.

\*<sub>2</sub> 알 + 다 [al da] know

stem ending

알 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

안다 [after dropping the sound ㄴ (refer 196) and contracting the syllable 아 and the sound ㄴ]

○ 나는 주체조선의  
[nanun chuchejasonui  
I Juche Korea of

국민임을\* 자랑한다.  
kongminimul charanghanda]  
citizen being proud

I am proud that I am  
a citizen of Korea of  
Juche.

explanation:

\* 국민 + 이 + 다 [kongmini da] citizen be

(국민-noun 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

국민 + 이 + ㅁ + 을 (ㅁ-exchanging ending 을-accusative ending)

국민임을 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅁ)

The exchanging ending ㅁ is attached to the exchanging ending 이, and the exchanging ending 이 is attached to the noun 국민.

183 The exchanging ending should be used correctly.

1. The exchanging ending 이 can be omitted after noun, pronoun or numeral which ends in a vowel.  
for example:

그는 의사다\*.  
[kunun uisada]  
he doctor is

He is a doctor.

*explanation:*

\* 의사 + 이 + 다 (의사 - noun 이 - exchanging ending  
다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the  
verbal form)

의사 + 다 (The exchanging ending 이 can be omitted.)

The exchanging ending 이 is not omitted in the attributive form.

for example:

의사인*	김동무		Comrade Kim, a doctor
[uisain	kimdongmu]		
doctor being	Kim comrade		

*explanation:*

\* 의사 + 이 + ㄴ (의사 - noun 이 - exchanging ending ㄴ - attributive ending of the verbal form in its present tense)

의사인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)

2. The exchanging ending ㅁ[m] makes the verb, adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral into a noun.

The exchanging ending ㄱ makes the verb, adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral into a noun and also expresses the process of the action.

for example:

의사가	되기 전에*	먼저		Man must become a revolutionary before becoming a doctor.
[uisaga	toegijone	monjo		
a doctor	becoming before	first		
혁명이	되야	한다.		
hyongmyong.gaga	toeyoya	handa		
a revolutionary	become	must		

*explanation:*

\* 되 + 다 [toe da] become  
stem ending

되 + 기 + 전 + 예 (기 - exchanging ending 전 - noun

예 - *dative ending*)

The exchanging ending 기 makes the verb 되다 into the noun and also expresses the process of becoming a doctor.

3. The substantivized form by the exchanging ending □ [m] can also be used as a predicate.

for example:

오늘은 날씨가  
[onurun nalssiga  
today the weather

맑음 \*.  
[malgum]  
clear being

The weather is clear  
today.

*explanation:*

\* 맑 + 다 [mak da] clear  
*stem ending*

맑 + 으 + □ (으 - *link-vowel* □ - *exchanging ending*)

맑음 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound □)

#### 184 Table of the exchanging endings

ending \ for	verbal form	substantive
exchanging ending	ㅁ [i]	ㅁ [m], 기 [gi]

## LESSON 12

### THE AUXILIARY ENDINGS

- 185 The auxiliary endings are attached to various kinds of words. These endings are used to express relations among objects and phenomena as well as actions and states.

There are the following auxiliary endings:

는[nun] (ㄴ[n])	/은 [un]	
야[ya]	/ 이야[iya]	만[man]
나[na]	/ 이나[ina]	부터[buto]
커녕[konyong]		까지[ggaji]
도[do]		

186 There is a difference between the auxiliary endings and the case endings.

As mentioned the auxiliary endings express relations among objects and phenomena as well as actions and states.

But the case endings express the connective relations between words.

for example:

올해에는 과일도* 잘	The fruit also grew well this year.
[olhaeenun kwaildo chal	
this year in the fruit also well	
되었다.	
toeyotda]	
became	

*explanation:*

* 과일	+	도
noun		auxiliary ending

The auxiliary ending 도 expresses the relation between the fruit and other agricultural products such as grain, vegetables and so on.

for example:

올해에는 과일이* 잘 되었다.	The fruit grew well this year.
[olhaeenun kwairi chal toeyotda]	
this year in the fruit good became	

*explanation:*

* 과일	+	이
noun		nominative ending

The nominative ending 이 expresses the relation between



the word 과일 and the word combination 잘 되었다.

187 The auxiliary endings are divided as follows according to the content of the relations which the auxiliary endings express:

1. The auxiliary ending which expresses the relation of inclusion

도[do] also

for example:

올 해에 는	남 새 도 *	The vegetable also grew well this year.
[olhaeenun	namsaedo	
this year in the	vegetable also	
잘 되었다.		
chal toeyotda]		
well became		

*explanation:*

\* 남 새 + 도  
noun auxiliary ending of inclusion

The auxiliary ending 도 expresses the idea that agricultural products including the vegetables have grown well.

2. The auxiliary ending which expresses restriction

만[man] alone

for example:

나 만 * 간 다.	I go alone.
[naman kanda]	
I only go	

*explanation:*

\* 나 + 만  
pronoun auxiliary ending of restriction

The auxiliary ending 만 expresses that I and no one else go alone.

3. The auxiliary endings which express the relation of

limitation:

부터[buto] from      까지[ggaji] till

for example:

1926년 부터* <sup>1</sup>		from 1926 to 1989
[chon·gubaek·isimryungnyon·buto]		
1926 year from		
1989년 까지* <sup>2</sup>		
[chon·gubaek·palsip·gunyon·ggaji]		
1989 year till		

explanation:

\*<sup>1</sup>    1926년      +      부터  
         noun                      auxiliary ending of limitation

\*<sup>2</sup>    1989년      +      까지  
         noun                      auxiliary ending of limitation

4. The auxiliary ending which express the relation of indication

는[nun] (L [n])/은[un]

for example:

○ 나 는*	간다.	I go.
[nanun	kanda]	
I	go	

explanation:

\*    나              +      는  
     pronoun                      auxiliary ending of indication

The auxiliary ending 는 expresses that no one other than I go.

The auxiliary ending 는 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 는 is attached ends in a vowel.

○ 난*	간다.	I go.
[nan kanda]		
I go		

explanation:

\*    나              +      L  
     pronoun                      auxiliary ending of indication

난 (after contracting the syllable 나 and the sound ㄴ)

The auxiliary ending ㄴ expresses that no one other than I go.

The auxiliary ending ㄴ is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending ㄴ is attached ends in a vowel.

○ 하늘은*	푸르다.	The sky is blue.
[hanurun	puruda]	
the sky	blue	

*explanation:*

\* 하늘 + 은  
noun auxiliary ending of indication

The auxiliary ending 은 expresses that nothing other than the sky is blue.

The auxiliary ending 은 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 은 is attached ends in a consonant.

5. The auxiliary endings which express the emphasis

야[ya] / 이야[iya]

for example:

남 이야*	가든지	말든지	You must go whether others go or not.
[namiya	kadunji	maldunji]	
just others	go or	not	
너는 가야 한다.			
nonun kaya handa]			
you go must			

*explanation:*

\* 남 + 이야  
noun auxiliary ending of emphasis

The auxiliary ending 이야 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 이야 is attached ends in a consonant.

The auxiliary ending 야 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 야 is attached ends in a vowel.

6. The auxiliary ending which expresses the relation of concession

나[na] / 이나[ina]

for example:

그 한테 나\* 가자!  
[ku hantena kaja]  
him to let us go!

Let us go to him!

(나—even if he is not the  
very man we want)

explanation:

\* 그 + 한테 + 나 [그—pronoun  
한테—ending which is used as the case ending  
(refer to 189)  
나—auxiliary ending of concession]

The auxiliary ending 나 expresses that he is not the very man we want.

The auxiliary ending 나 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 나 is attached ends in a vowel.

The auxiliary ending 이나 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 이나 is attached ends in a consonant.

## 7. The auxiliary ending which expresses negation

커녕 [konyong]

for example:

비는커녕\* 구름 한점  
[pinunkonyong kurum hanjom]  
rain far from cloud a piece  
없는 날씨였다.  
omnun nalssiyotda]  
not there being weather was

Far from raining, it  
was a cloudless day.

explanation:

\* 비 + 는 + 커녕 (비—noun 는—auxiliary  
ending of indication 커녕—auxiliary ending of negation)

The auxiliary ending 커녕 is usually used together with the auxiliary ending 는 or 은.

The auxiliary ending 는 is attached to a syllable which ends in a vowel.

The auxiliary ending 은 is attached to a syllable which ends in a consonant.

188 Table of auxiliary endings

meaning \ ending	auxiliary ending
relation of inclusion	도 [do] also
relation of restriction	만 [man] only
relation of limitation	부터 [buto] from, 까지 [ggaji] till
relation of indication	는 [nun] (ㄴ [n]) / 은 [un]
relation of emphasis	야 [ya] / 이야 [iya]
relation of concession	나 [na] / 이나 [ina]
relation of negation	커녕 [konyong]

*remarks:*

We have indicated here only such auxiliary endings which are frequently used.

For the other auxiliary endings, please refer to the appendix.

## ENDINGS WHICH ARE USED AS CASE ENDINGS

189 There are the following endings which are used as case endings:

1. 란 [ran] / 이란 [iran]

These endings perform the function of nominative endings and are used to give a definition to the word acting as the subject.

for example:

주체사상 이란\* 한마디로  
[chuchesasang.iran hanmadiro  
Juche Idea in a nutshell  
말하여 혁명과  
malhayo hyongmyong.gwa  
saying revolution and  
건설의 주인은  
konsorui chuinun  
construction of the master  
인민대중이며  
inmindaejung .imyō  
people masses is and  
혁명과 건설을  
hyongmyong.gwa konsorul  
revolution and construction  
추동하는 힘도  
chudonghanun himdo  
driving force also  
인민대중에게 있다는  
inmindaejung.ege itdanun  
the people masses to there being  
사상이다.  
sasang .ida]  
idea is

In a nutshell, the idea of Juche means that the masters of the revolution and construction are the masses of the people and that they are also the motive force of the revolution and construction.

*explanation:*

\* 주체사상 + 이란(주체사상—noun 이란—ending which is used as the case ending)

The ending 이란 which expresses a case is used when the word to which the ending 이란 is attached ends in a consonant.

The ending 란 which expresses a case is used when the word to which the ending 란 is attached ends in a vowel.

2. 한테[hante]

This ending is mostly used in spoken language and serves the function of a dative ending.

for example:

그는	나 한테*	묻는다.		He asks me.
[kunun	nahante	mununda]		
he	me to	asks		

*explanation:*

\* 나 + 한테 (나—pronoun 한테—ending which is used as the case ending)

### 3. 하고[hago]

This ending serves the same function as that of the ending of the coordinative case.

for example:

김동무 하고*	나		Comrade Kim and I
[kimdongmuhago	na]		
Kim comrade and	I		

*explanation:*

\* 김동무 + 하고 (김동무—noun 하고—ending which is used as the case ending)

### 4. 보다[boda] (more) than

처럼 [chorom] as, 마다[mada] every

The endings 보다, 처럼 are used to express comparison.

for example:

○ 그는 나보다* 크다.		He is bigger than I.
[kunun naboda kuda]		
he I than big		

*explanation:*

\* 나 + 보다 (나—pronoun 보다—ending which is used as the case ending)

○ 눈 처럼*	흰		white as snow
[nunchorom	huin]		
snow as	white		

*explanation:*

\* 눈 + 처럼 (눈 - noun 처럼 - ending which is used as the case ending)

○ 해 마다  
[haemada]  
year every

every year

*explanation:*

해 + 마다 (해 - noun 마다 - ending which is used as the case ending)

190 Table of endings which are used as case endings:

ending case	ending which is used as the case ending
nominative	란 [ran]/ 이란 [iran]
dative	한 데 [hante]
coordinative	하고 [hago]
others	보다 [boda] 처럼 [chorom] 마다 [mada]

*remarks:*

We have indicated here only such endings which are frequently used.

For the other endings, please refer to the appendix.

## LESSON 13

### STEM AED ENDING

191 The distinction between the stem and the ending is clear in the formation of Korean words.

When a certain grammatical meaning is necessary, the



ending to express it is attached to the stem, when unnecessary, some omissions are made.

for example:

보 + 다 [po da] see  
stem ending

in order to express respect

보 + 시 + 다 [po si da] see  
(시-ending of respect)

in order to express the causative

보 + 이 + 다 [po i da] show  
(이-ending of the causative voice)

in order to express the past

보 + 았 + 다 [po at da] saw  
(았-ending of the past tense)

In order to express both the causative and respect, the ending of the causative voice 이 [i] and the ending of respect 시 [si] are attached to the stem.

보 + 이 + 시 + 다 [po i si da] show  
(이-ending of the causative voice 시-ending of respect)

In order to express both the causative and the past, the ending of the causative voice 이 [i] and the ending of the past tense 았 [yot] are attached to the stem.

보 + 이 + 았 + 다 [po i yot da] showed  
(이-ending of the causative voice 았-ending of the past tense)

In order to express both respect and the past, the ending of respect 시 [si] and the ending of the past tense 았 [yot] are attached to the stem.

보 + 시 + 았 + 다 [po si yot da] saw  
(시-ending of respect 았-ending of the past tense)

In order to express causative, respect and the past simultaneously, the ending of the causative voice 이 [i],

n the ending of respect 시[si] and the ending of the past tense 였[yot] are attached to the stem.

보 + 이 + 시 + 였 + 다 [po i si yot da] showed  
(이-*ending of the causative voice* 시-*ending of respect*  
였-*ending of the past tense*)

When the grammatical meaning of the causative in 보이시였다 [poisiyotda] "showed" is not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이[i] is omitted.

보 + 시 + 였 + 다 [po si yot da] saw  
(시-*ending of respect* 였-*ending of the past tense*)

When the grammatical meaning of the past in 보이시였다 [poisiyotda] "showed" is not necessary, the ending of the past tense 였[yot] is omitted.

보 + 이 + 시 + 다 [po i si da] show  
(이-*ending of the causative voice* 시-*ending of respect*)

When the grammatical meanings of the causative and respect in 보이시였다 [poisiyotda] "showed" are not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이[i] and the ending of respect 시[si] are omitted.

In this case the ending of the past tense is directly attached to the stem. The stem 보[po] has the vowel ㅓ[ɔ]. Therefore, not the ending of the past 였[yot] but the ending of the past tense 았[at] is attached to the stem.

보 + 았 + 다 [po at da] saw  
(았-*ending of the past tense*)

When the grammatical meanings of respect and the past in 보이시였다 [poisiyotda] "showed" are not necessary, the ending of respect 시[si] and the ending of the past tense 였[yot] are omitted.

보 + 이 + 다 [po i da] show  
(이-*ending of the causative voice*)

When the grammatical meanings of the causative and the past in 보이시였다 [poisiyotda] "showed" are not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이 [i] and the ending of the past tense 였 [yot] are omitted.

보 + 시 + 다 [po si da] see

(시 - ending of respect)

When the grammatical meanings of the causative, respect and the past in 보이시였다 [poisiyotda] "showed" are not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이 [i], the ending of respect 시 [si] and the ending of the past tense 였 [yot] are omitted.

보 + 다 [po da] see

stem ending

## ATTACHING OF ENDINGS

192 The endings are attached one by one.

for example:

공장에서의	모임	the meeting in the factory
[kongjang-esoui moim]		
the factory in the meeting		

explanation:

공장	+	에서
noun		locative ending

First, the locative ending 에서 is attached to the noun 공장.

공장에서	+	의
genitive ending		

Next, the genitive ending 의 is attached to 공장에서.

## PAIRS OF ENDINGS

193 There are pairs of endings, which have the same grammatical meaning. Their usage differs according to the last sounds which the stems have.

for example:

1. 나무가* <sup>1</sup>	높다.	The tree is high.
[namuga the tree	nopda] high	
물이* <sup>2</sup>	맑다.	The water is clear.
[muri the water	makda] clear	

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 나무 + 가  
noun nominative ending

\*<sub>2</sub> 물 + 이  
noun nominative ending

The endings 가 and 이 form a pair of nominative endings.

The nominative ending 가 is attached to a word which ends in a vowel.

The nominative ending 이 is attached to a word which ends in a consonant.

2. 노래와* <sup>1</sup>	춤	song and dance
[noraewa song and	chum] dance	
춤과* <sup>2</sup>	노래	dance and song
[chumgwa dance and	norae] song	

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 노래 + 와  
noun ending of the coordinative case

\*<sub>2</sub> 춤 + 과  
noun ending of the coordinative case

The endings 와 and 과 form a pair of endings of the coordinative case.

The ending of the coordinative case 와 is attached to a word which ends in a vowel.

The ending of the coordinative case 과 is attached to a word which ends in a consonant.

3. 나는 가오\*<sup>1</sup> . I go.  
 [nanun kao]  
 I go  
 그는 갔소\*<sup>2</sup>. He went.  
 [kunun katso]  
 he went

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
 stem ending

가 + 오 (오—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

\*<sub>2</sub> 가 + 다 go  
 stem ending

가 + 았 + 소 (았—ending of the past tense 소—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

갔소 (after contracting the syllables 가 and 았)

The final endings 오 and 소 form a pair of final endings. The final ending 오 is attached to a stem which ends in a vowel.

The final ending 소 is attached to a stem which ends in a consonant.

## THE LINK-VOWEL

- 194 When an ending which begins with a consonant is attached to a word or stem which ends in a consonant, the syllable 이[i] or 으[u] is inserted between them in some cases.

This syllable 이[i] or 으[u] is called the link-vowel.

### 1. syllable 이[i]

for example

○ 책 + 이 + नाम [chaeg i nama] though the book  
 noun link-vowel auxiliary ending

*explanation:*

The link-vowel 이 is inserted between the noun 책 which

ends in a consonant and the auxiliary ending **나마** which begins with a consonant.

- **그들** + **이** + **나마** [ku duri nama] though they  
*pronoun link-vowel auxiliary ending*  
*explanation:*

The link-vowel **이** is inserted between the pronoun **그들** which ends in a consonant and the auxiliary ending **나마** which begins with a consonant.

- **둘** + **이** + **나마** [tur i nama] though two  
*numeral link-vowel auxiliary ending*  
*explanation:*

The link-vowel **이** is inserted between the numeral **둘** which ends in a consonant and the auxiliary ending **나마** which begins with a consonant.

- **책** + **이** + **다** [chaeg i da] it's a book  
[**책**—noun **이**—exchanging ending (link-vowel) **다**—low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

*remarks:*

The syllable **이** which is inserted between the stem and predicative ending is the exchanging ending.

## 2. The syllable **으**[u]

for example

- **책** + **으** + **로** [chaeg u ro] with the book  
*noun link-vowel instrumental ending*

- **이것** + **으** + **로** [igos u ro] with this  
*pronoun link-vowel instrumental ending*

- **셋** + **으** + **로** [ses u ro] with three  
*numeral link-vowel instrumental ending*

- **읽으며** [ilgumyo] read and

**읽** + **다** [ik da] read

stem ↓ ending

**읽** + **으** + **며** (**으**—link-vowel **며**—copulative connecting ending)

○ 맑으며 [malgumyo] clear and

맑 + 다 [mak da] clear

stem ↓ ending

맑 + 으 + 며 (으—link-vowel 며—copulative connecting ending)

## THE VOCAL HARMONY

### 195 The vocal harmony

1. when the vowel ㅏ [a], ㅑ [ya] or ㅓ [o] is in the last syllable of the stem, the ending 아[a], 아라 [ara], 아도 [ado] or 았[at] is attached to the stem.

for example:

ㅁㅅ + ㄷㅏ [mak da] block

stem ending

○ ㅁㅅ + ㅏ [mag a] blocking

(ㅏ—connecting ending of method or means)

○ ㅁㅅ + ㅏㅓ [mag ara] block !

(ㅏㅓ—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

○ ㅁㅅ + ㅏ도 [mag ado] even if block

(ㅏ도—connecting ending of condition)

○ ㅁㅅ + 았 + ㄷㅏ [mag at da] blocked

(았—ending of the past tense ㄷㅏ—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

remarks:

The verb 하ㅏ [hada] “do” is excluded here.

Although the stem 하 of the verb 하ㅏ has the vowel ㅏ, the ending 여[yo], 여ㅓ [yora], 여도[yodo] or 았[yot] is attached to the stem 하.

for example

하 + ㄷㅏ [ha da] do

stem ending

- 하 + 여 [ha yo] doing  
(여—connecting ending of method or means)
- 하 + 여라 [ha yora] do!  
(여라—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)
- 하 + 여도 [ha yodo] even if do  
(여도—connecting ending of condition)
- 하 + 었 + 다 [ha yot da] did  
(였—ending of the past tense 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

2. When the vowel ㅓ [o], ㅕ [yo], ㅓ [u], ㅡ [u] or ㅣ [i] is in the last syllable of the stem, the ending 어[ɔ], ㅓ라 [ora], ㅓ도[odo] or ㅓㅓ[ot] is attached to the stem.

for example:

- |             |   |               |              |
|-------------|---|---------------|--------------|
| 먹           | + | 다             | [mok da] eat |
| <i>stem</i> |   | <i>ending</i> |              |
- 먹 + 어 [mog ɔ] eating  
(어—connecting ending of method or means)
  - 먹 + ㅓ라 [mog ora] eat!  
(ㅓ라—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)
  - 먹 + ㅓ도 [mog odo] even if eat  
(ㅓ도—connecting ending of condition)
  - 먹 + ㅓㅓ + 다 [mog ot da] ate  
(ㅓㅓ—ending of the past tense 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

3. when the stem ends in the vowel ㅣ[i], ㅐ[ae], ㅓ[e], ㅓ[oe], ㅓ[wi], ㅓ[ui] or syllable 하[ha] in its last syllable, the ending 여[yɔ], ㅓ라[yora], ㅓ도[yodo] or ㅓㅓ[yot] is attached to the stem.



for example:

가지 + 다 [kaji da] have  
stem ending

○ 가지 + 여 [kaji yo] having  
(여—connecting ending of method or means)

○ 가지 + 여라 [kaji yora] have!  
(여라—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

○ 가지 + 여도 [kaji yodo] even if have  
(여도—connecting ending of condition)

○ 가지 + 였 + 다 [kaji yot da] had  
(였—ending of past 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

## THE EXCHANGE OF SOUNDS

196 The exchange of sounds is also made partly in Korean when some endings are attached to stems.

In such cases the changed sound also belongs to the stem.

The exchange of sounds is as follows:

1. The last syllable ㄹ[ru] of the stem of the verb or adjective is changed to ㄴ[ll] before the connecting ending of method or means 어[ɔ], before the ending of the past tense 였[ot] or before the low imperative form of the final ending of the verb 어라[ora].

for example:

흐르 + 다 [huru da] flow  
stem ending

○ 흘러 [hullo] flowing

흐+ㄴㄴ+어 (어—connecting ending of method or means)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 흐르 of the verb 흐르다 is changed to 르르 before the connecting ending of method or means 어.

흘 + 르 + 어 (after contracting the syllable 흐 and the sound 르)

흘러 (after contracting the sound 르 and the syllable 어)

○ 흘렀다 [hullotda] flowed

흐 + 르르 + 었 + 다 (었 - ending of the past tense 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 흐르 of the verb 흐르다 is changed to 르르 before the ending of the past tense 었.

흘 + 르 + 었 + 다 (after contracting the syllable 흐 and the sound 르)

흘렀다 (after contracting the sound 르 and the syllable 었)

○ 흘러라 [hullora] flow!

흐 + 르르 + 어라 (어라 - low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 흐르 of the verb 흐르다 is changed to 르르 before the low imperative form of the final ending of the verb 어라.

흘 + 르 + 어라 (after contracting the syllable 흐 and the sound 르)

흘러라 (after contracting the sound 르 and the syllable 어)

2. The last consonant ㄷ[t] of the stem of the verb is partly changed to ㄹ[r] before an ending which begins with a vowel and before an ending which requires the link-vowel 으[u].

for example:

듣 + 다 [tut da] hear  
stem ending

○ 들어 [tur o] hearing

들+어 (어-connecting ending of method or means)

The last consonant ㄷ of the stem 듣 of the verb 듣다 is changed to ㄱ before the connecting ending of method or means 어 which begins with a vowel.

○ 들으니 [turuni] as hear

들+으+니 (으-link-vowel 니-connecting ending of cause)

The last consonant ㄷ of the stem 듣 of the verb 듣다 is changed to ㄱ before the connecting ending of cause 니 which requires the link-vowel 으.

3. The last consonant ㅂ [p] of the stem of the verb or adjective is partly changed to 오[o] / 우[u] before an ending which begins with a vowel and before an ending which requires the link-vowel 으[u].

for example:

돕 + 다 [top da] help  
stem ending

○ 도와 [towa] helping

도 + 오 + 아 (아-connecting ending of method or means)

The last consonant ㅂ of the stem 돕 of the verb 돕다 is changed to 오 before the connecting ending of method or means 아 which begins with a vowel.

도와 (after contracting the syllables 오 and 아)

○ 도우니 [touni] as help

도 + 우 + 니 (니 - connecting ending of cause)

The last consonant ㅂ of the stem 돕 of the verb 돕다

is changed to 우 before the connecting ending of cause 니 which requires the link-vowel 으.

4. The last syllable 르[ru] of the stem 누르[nuru] of the adjective 누르다[nuruda], the last syllable 르[ru] of the stem 푸르[puru] of the adjective 푸르다[puruda] and the last syllable 르[ru] of the stem 이르[iru] of the verb 이르다[iruda] are changed to 르[ru] ㄹ[r] before an ending which begins with a vowel.

for example:

누르 + 다 [nuru da] golden  
stem ending

누 + 르 ㄹ + 어 (어—connecting ending of method or means)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 누르 of the adjective 누르다 is changed to 르 ㄹ before the connecting ending of method or means 어 which begins with a vowel.

누르러 (after contracting the sound ㄹ and the syllable 어)

for example:

푸르 + 다 [puru da] blue  
stem ending

푸 + 르 ㄹ + 었 + 다 (었—ending of the past tense  
다—low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 푸르 of the adjective 푸르다 is changed to 르 ㄹ before the ending of the past tense 었 which begins with a vowel.

푸르렀다 (after contracting the sound ㄹ and the syllable 었)

for example:

이르 + 다 [iru da] arrive  
 stem ending

이 + 르 + 어라 (어라—low imperative form  
 of the final ending of the verb)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 이르 of the verb 이르  
 다 is changed to 르 + 어 before the low imperative form  
 of the final ending of the verb 어라 which begins  
 with a vowel.

이르러라 (after contracting the sound 르 and  
 the syllable 어)

5. The last sound ㄹ [l] of the stem of the verb or  
 adjective disappears before an ending which begins with  
 ㄴ [n] or ㅂ [p] and before the ending 시 [si] or 오 [o].

for example:

울 + 다 [ul da] weep  
 stem ending

- 우는 [unun] weeping

우 + 는 (는—attributive ending of the verb in its  
 present tense)

The last sound ㄹ of the stem 울 of the verb 울다  
 disappears before the attributive ending of the verb  
 in its present tense 는 which begins with ㄴ.

- 읍니다 [umnida] weep

우 + ㅂ니다 (ㅂ니다—most deferential declarative form of  
 the final ending of the verb)

The last sound ㄹ of the stem 울 of the verb 울다 di-  
 appears before the most deferential declarative fo-  
 rm of the final ending of the verb ㅂ니다 which be-  
 gins with ㅂ.

읍니다 (after contracting the syllable 우 and the sound ㅂ)

- 우시며 [usimyo] weep and  
 우 + 시 + 며 (시—ending of respect  
 며—copulative connecting ending)

The last sound ㄹ of the stem 울 of the verb 울다 disappears before the ending of respect 시.

- 우오 [uo] weep  
 우 + 오 (오—middle declarative form of  
 the final ending of the verb)

The last sound ㄹ of the stem 울 of the verb 울다 disappears before the middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb 오.

6. The last sound ㄸ [t] of the stem of the verb or adjective disappears before an ending which begins with a vowel and before an ending which requires the link vowel 으.

for example:

낫 + 다 [nat da] cure  
 stem ending

- 나아서 [naaso] curing  
 나 + 아 + 서 (아—connecting ending of method  
 or means 서—emphasizing ending)

The last sound ㄸ of the stem 낫 of the verb 낫다 disappears before the connecting ending of method or means 아서 which begins with a vowel.

- 나으며 [naumyo] cure and  
 나 + 으 + 며 (으—link-vowel 며—copulative  
 connecting ending)

The last sound ㄸ of the stem 낫 of the verb 낫다 disappears before the copulative connecting ending

며 which requires the link-vowel 으.

7. The last sound **ㅎ** [h] of the stem of an adjective disappears before an ending which begins with a vowel.

for example:

빨강 + 다 [bbalga ta] red  
stem ending

빨가오 [bbalgao] red

빨가 + 오 (오-middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The last sound **ㅎ** of the stem 빨강 of the adjective 빨강다 disappears before the middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective 오 which begins with a vowel.

## LESSON 14

### THE PARTS OF THE SENTENCE

197 There are eleven parts of the sentence in Korean.

1. The predicate
2. The subject
3. The object
4. The quotation
5. The adverbial modifier
6. The attribute
7. The form of address
8. The parenthesis
9. The exclamatory word
10. The conjunctive
11. The appended modifier

198 The part of the sentence as a unit performs its own function in the sentence, but its composition differs. Accordingly the simple part of the sentence and the expanded part of the sentence are distinguished.

199 The simple part of the sentence is the part of the sentence which consists of an independent word or of a combination of words which is used as one word.

for example:

조선은* <sup>1</sup>	아름다운* <sup>2</sup>	나라이다.* <sup>3</sup>	Korea is a beautiful country.
[chosonun	arumdaun	naraida]	
Korea	a beautiful country is		

explanation:

\*<sub>1</sub> 조선 + 은  
*noun auxiliary ending*

조선은 is the subject which consists of the noun 조선 and the auxiliary ending 은.

조선은 is the simple part of sentence which consists of one independent word.

\*<sub>2</sub> 아름답 + 다 [arumdap da] beautiful  
*stem ending*

아름다 + 우 + ㄴ [(ㄴ—attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense) after exchanging the sound ㅂ for the syllable 우(refer to 196)]

아름다운 (after contracting the syllable 우 and the sound ㄴ)

아름다운 is the attribute which consists of the adjective 아름답.

아름다운 is the simple part of sentence which consists of one independent word.

나라 + 이 + 다 (이—exchanging ending 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

나라이다 is the predicate which consists of the noun 나라, the exchanging ending 이 and the low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form 다.



나라이다 is the simple part of sentence which consists of one independent word.

200 The expanded part of the sentence is the part of the sentence which is formed by the syntactical combination of two or more independent words.

for example:

사람은	자연과	사회의* <sup>1</sup>	Man is the master
[saramun	chayon-gwa	sahoeui	of nature and society
the man	nature and	society of	and the most precious
주인이며	세상에서		and powerful being in
chuinimyo	sesang.eso		the world.
the master is and	the world in		
가장	귀중하고	가장	
kajang	kwijunghago	kajang	
most	precious and	most	
힘있는* <sup>2</sup>	존재이다		
himinnun	chonjaeida]		
powerful	being is		

explanation:

\*<sub>1</sub>, 자연+과 사회+의 (자연—noun 과—ending of the coordinative case 사회—noun 의—genitive ending)

자연과 사회의 is the syntactical combination of two independent words 자연 and 사회.

자연과 사회의 is the expanded part of the sentence.

\*<sub>2</sub> 세상+에서 가장 귀중하+고 가장 힘+있+는

(세상—noun 에서—locative ending 가장—adverb 귀중하—stem of the adjective 귀중하다 고—copulative connecting ending 가장—adverb 힘—noun 있—stem of the verb 있다 는—attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)

The above-mentioned combination of words is the syntactical combination of two or more independent words and the expanded part of the sentence.

## THE PREDICATE

- 201 The predicate is the part of the sentence which is used to express the action, state or character of an object.

The predicate answers the question of “*who is?*”, “*what is?*” “*how does?*” or “*how is?*” in the sentence.

for example:

- (who is? )

우리는      관광객들입니다. [urinun kwan·gwang·gaekdurimnida] we              tourits are	We are tourists.
---	---------------------

- (what is? )

함흥은 [hamhung ·un Hamhung 공업도시이다. kong·opdosiida] an industrial city is	Hamhung is an industrial city.
---	-----------------------------------

- (how does? )

그는      파시즘을 [kunun pasijumul he              the fascism 반대하여      싸웠다. pandaehayo ssawotda] opposing      fought	He fought against fascism.
---	-------------------------------

- (how is? )

조선의      가을하늘은 [chosonui kaulhanurun Korea of      autumn sky 끝없이      맑다. ggudopsi makda] endlessly      clear	The autumn sky in Korea is extremely clear.
--	--

- 202 The predicates are classified as the final predicate

and the connecting predicate.

1. The final predicate

The final predicate comes at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

The final predicate is expressed as follows:

- 1) The final form of a word becomes the final predicate.  
for example:

저는	영국으로	돌아갑니다.*	I go back to
[chonun	yong·guguro	toragamnida]	England.
I	England to	go back	

*explanation:*

\* 돌아가 + 다 [toraga da] go back  
stem ending

돌아가 + ㅂ니다 (ㅂ니다 - *most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)

돌아갑니다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㅂ)

The final form 돌아갑니다 of the verb 돌아가다 lies at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

- 2) The connecting form of a word becomes the final predicate.

for example:

동무는	래일	You leave for London tomorrow, don't you?
[tongmunun	raeil	
comrade	tomorrow	
런던으로	떠난다면*?	
londonuro	ddonandamyonso]	
London for	leave and?	

*explanation:*

\* 떠나 + 다 [ddona da] leave  
stem ending

떠나 + ㄴ다 + 면서 (ㄴ다 - *low declarative form of the final ending of the verb* 면서 - *copulative connect-*

ing ending)

떠난다면서 (after contracting the syllable 나 and the sound ㄴ)

The connecting form 떠난다면서 of the verb 떠나다 comes at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

- 3) The final predicate is also formed by attaching an exchanging ending to the stem of the word.

for example:

저녁에	모임이	있음*.	There is a meet- ing in the evening.
[chonyoge	moimi	issum]	
the evening in	a meeting	is	

explanation:

\*    있            +            다    [it da]    be  
     stem                            ending

있    +    으    +    □ (으 - link-vowel □ - exchanging ending)

있    음 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound □)

The substantive form 있음 of the verb 있다 comes at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

- 4) Sometimes, a word without any ending becomes the final predicate.

for example:

우리는	영용한	We are the heroic and brave Korean People's Army.
[urinun	yong·yonghan	
we	heroic and brave	
조선인민군*.		
chosoninmin·gun]		
Korean People's Army		

explanation:

\*    조선        +        인민        +        군  
     noun                    noun                    noun

The noun 조선인민군 lies at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

2. The connecting predicate lies before the final predicate.

The connecting predicate expresses that a sentence is not closed yet and connects two units of the sentence.

The connecting predicate is usually expressed by the connecting form.

- 1) The connecting form of a word becomes the connecting predicate.

for example:

하늘은 푸르고*	내 마음	The sky is blue and
[hanurun purugo nae maum	I am merry.	
the sky blue and my heart		
즐겁다.		
chulgopda]		
merry		

explanation:

\* 푸르 + 다 [puru da] blue  
           stem           ending

푸르 + 고 (고—copulative connecting ending)

The connecting form 푸르고 of the adjective 푸르다 becomes the connecting predicate.

- 2) The final form of a word becomes the connecting predicate.

for example:

날이	밝았다*,	안개가	자욱하다.	The day has
[nari	palgatda	an-gaega	chaukada]	dawned, the
the day	dawned	the fog	dense	fog is dense.

explanation:

\* 밝 + 다 [pak da] dawn  
           stem           ending

밝 + 았 + 다 (았—ending of the past tense 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The final form 밝았다 of the verb 밝다 becomes the connecting predicate.

- 3) In Korean there are nouns and adverbs which perform the function of connection. Some such nouns are 동시[tongsi] "same time", 반면[panmyon] "contrary", 한편[hanpyon] "one side", 일방[ilbang] "one side", 이상[isang] "over" and 한[han] "limit", etc. And we can cite 겸[kyom] "and concurrently" as an example of such adverbs.

Those words become the connecting predicate together with the attributive form of the word which lies before them.

for example:

그는	소설가인	He is both a novelist
[kunun	sosolgain	and a poet.
he	a novelist being	
동시에*	시인이 다.	
tongsie	siinida]	
the same time at	a poet is	

explanation:

\* 소설가 + 이 + ㄴ 동시 + 에  
 (소설가—noun 이—exchanging ending ㄴ—attributive  
 ending of the verbal form in its present tense 동  
 시—noun 에—dative ending)

소설가인 동시에 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)

- 203 Between the connecting predicate and the final predicate such a phenomenon is found as the grammatical meaning which is expressed in the final predicate has something to do with the connecting predicate. It is expressed as follows:

1. By the ending of respect

for example:

아버지는 나의 말을  
[abojinun naui marul  
the father my word  
듣고\* 이렇게 말씀하시였다.  
tutgo iroke malssumhasiyotda]  
heard thus said

Father listened to  
me and said thus.

*explanation:*

\* 듣 + 다 [tut da] hear  
stem ending

듣 + 고 (고—copulative connecting ending)

The meaning of respect which must be expressed in the connecting form 듣고 of the verb 듣다 has been expressed by the ending of respect 시 in the final form 말씀하시였다 of the verb 말씀하다.

## 2. By the ending of the tense

for example:

바람은 불어도\*  
[paramun purodo  
the wind blew although  
세지 않았따.  
seji anatda]  
strong not was

Although the wind  
blew, it was not  
strong.

*explanation:*

\* 불 + 다 [pul da] blow  
stem ending

불 + 어도 (어도—connecting ending of condition)

The meaning of the past which must be expressed in the connecting form 불어도 of the verb 불다 has been expressed by the ending of the past tense 았 in the final form 않았따 of the adjective 았다.

## 3. By the final ending

for example:

춤을 추고\* 노래를  
[chumul chugo noraerul  
the dance dance and the song

Let us dance and sing!

부릅시다.  
purupsida]  
sing!

explanation:

\* 추 + 다 [chu da] dance  
stem ending

추 + 고 (고—copulative connecting ending)

The meaning of suggestion which must be expressed in the connecting form 추고 of the verb 추다 has been expressed by the ending of the most deferential suggestive form ㅂ시다 in the final form 부릅시다 of the verb 부르다.

#### 4. By the word which is used as an auxiliary

for example:

우리는 이 달의  
[urinun i darui  
we this month of  
생산계획도  
saengsan-gyehoekdo  
production plan also  
완수하고\*1 래 달의  
wansuhago raedarui  
fulfil and next month of  
생산계획도  
saengsan-gyehoekdo  
production plan also  
완수하고야 말것이다\*2.  
wansuhagoya malgosida]  
fulfil surely shall

We shall surely fulfil  
the production plan  
for this month as well  
as next month.

explanation:

\*1 완수하 + 다 [wansuha da] fulfil  
stem ending

완수하 + 고 (고—copulative connecting ending)

The modal meaning of conviction which must be expressed in the connecting form 완수하고 of the verb 완수하



다 has been expressed by the word 말것이다 which is used as an auxiliary.

\*<sub>2</sub> 완수하 + 다 [wansuha da] fulfil  
           stem           ending

완수하 + 고 + 야 말다 [wansuha go ya malda] fulfil surely (고—copulative connecting ending 야—auxiliary ending of emphasis 말다—verb which is used as an auxiliary)

완수하 + 고 + 야 말 + 것 + 이 + 다 (것—incomplete noun 이—exchanging ending 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

When the connecting predicate and the final predicate are related to different subjects, there is no relation in the grammatical meaning between the connecting predicate and the final predicate.

for example:

그는	왔으니까	저는	As he came, I will go.
[kunun	wassunigga	chonun	
he	came as	I	
가겠습니다.			
kagetsumnida]			
go will			

explanation:

The person who came is he, and the person who will go is I.

Therefore, there is no relation in grammatical meaning between the connecting predicate 왔으니까 and the final predicate 가겠습니다.

## THE SUBJECT

204 The subject is the doer of the action, etc. expressed by the predicate.

But the subject can be omitted in some cases.

The subject is expressed mainly by the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive.

1. The subject is expressed by attaching one of the following endings to the word:

the nominative ending 깨서[ggeso], 가[ka] or 이[i]

the ending which is used as the ending of the case 란 [ran] or 이란[iran]

the auxiliary ending 는[nun]/ㄴ[n] or 은[un]

for example:

- |                      |               |
|----------------------|---------------|
| ○ 아버지 깨서* 오신다.       | Father comes. |
| [aboji ggeso osinda] |               |
| father comes         |               |

*explanation:*

- \* 아버지 + 깨서 (아버지 — noun 깨서 — nominative ending)

The subject 아버지깨서 is expressed by attaching the nominative ending 깨서 to the noun 아버지.

- |                      |            |
|----------------------|------------|
| ○ 제가* 가겠습니다.         | I will go. |
| [chega kagetsumnida] |            |
| I go will            |            |

*explanation:*

- \* 제 + 가 (제 — pronoun 가 — nominative ending)

The subject 제가 is expressed by attaching the nominative ending 가 to the pronoun 제.

- |                               |                  |                   |
|-------------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| ○ 지구란* 태양계의                   | The earth is one |                   |
| [chiguran taeyang-gyeui       |                  | of the planets of |
| the earth the solar system of |                  | the solar system. |
| 한 행성이다.                       |                  |                   |
| [han haengsong-ida]           |                  |                   |
| a planet is                   |                  |                   |

*explanation:*

- \* 지구 + 란 (지구—noun 란—ending which is used as the ending of the case)

The subject 지구란 is expressed by attaching the ending 란, which is used as the ending of the case, to the noun 지구.

- |   |          |             |               |                                |
|---|----------|-------------|---------------|--------------------------------|
| ○ | 오늘의      | 날씨는         | 어떻습니까?        | What's the weather like today? |
|   | [onurui  | nalssinun   | oddosumnigga] |                                |
|   | today of | the weather | how is?       |                                |

*explanation:*

- \* 날씨 + 는 (날씨—noun 는—auxiliary ending)

The subject 날씨는 is expressed by attaching the auxiliary ending 는 to the noun 날씨.

2. The locative ending 에서 [eso] is also used for the subject when a collective object is expressed.

for example:

- |              |           |                  |   |
|--------------|-----------|------------------|---|
| 이 해에도        | 우리        | 농장에서*            | Our farm produced a lot of vegetables this year, too. |
| [i haeedo    | uri       | nongjang·eso]    |   |
| this year in | also our  | farm in          |   |
| 많은           | 남새를       | 생산했다.            |   |
| manun        | namaerul  | saengsan haetda] |   |
| much         | vegetable | produced         |   |

*explanation:*

- \* The subject 우리 농장에서 is expressed by attaching the locative ending 에서 to the noun 농장.

3. A word without ending becomes the subject.  
Such a subject is often used in poems or scenarios.

for example:

- |      |       |           |  |
|------|-------|-----------|--|
| 저    | 노래*1  | 우리에게는*2   | That song will give courage to us but fear to the enemy. |
| [cho | norae | uriegenun |  |
| that | song  | us to     |  |

용기를	주고	원썬에게는	
yong-girul	chugo	wonssuegenun	
the courage	give and to	the enemy	
공포를	주리라*3 !		
kongporul	churira]		
the fear	give will !		

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> The noun 노래 is used as a subject without ending.  
The noun 노래 is in absolute case.

\*<sub>2</sub> 우리 + 에제 + 는 (우리—personal pronoun 에제—  
dative ending 는—auxiliary ending)

\*<sub>3</sub> 주 + 다 [chu da] give  
stem ending

주 + 리라 (리라—middle declarative form of the final  
ending of the verb)

리라 expresses surmise.

## THE OBJECT

205 The object expresses the object which makes up the action or state expressed by the predicate.

The object implies such a content as answers the following question:

*whom? what? to whom? to what? by whom? in what? with what? or (more) than who? (more) than what?*

for example:

○ (whom?)

나는	매일	그를* 만난다.	I meet him
[nanun	maeil	kurul mannanda]	everyday.
I	everyday	him meet	

*explanation:*

\* The object 그를 makes up the action which is expressed

by the predicate 만난다.

○ (what? )

저는	커피를*	마십니다.	I drink a cup of coffee.
[chonun	kopirul	[masimnida]	
I	coffee	drink	

*explanation:*

\* The object 커피를 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 마십니다.

○ (to whom? )

그는	나에게*	이	책을	주었다.	He gave me this book.
[kunun	naege	i	chegul	chuotda]	
he	me to	this	book	gave	

*explanation:*

\* The object 나에게 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 주었다.

○ (to what? )

나는	공장에*	간다.	I go to the factory.
[nanun	kongjang.e	kanda]	
I	the factory to	go	

*explanation:*

\* The object 공장에 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 간다.

○ (by whom? )

나는	그에게서*	강의를	I attend his lecture.
[nanun	kuegeso	kang·uirul	
I	him by	lecture	
받는다.			
pannunda]			
get			

*explanation:*

\* The object 그에게서 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 받는다.

○ (in what? )

저는	런던에서*	삽니다.	I live in London.
[chonun	londoneso	samnida]	
I	London in	live	

**explanation:**

- \* The object 런던에서 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 삽니다.

○ (to whom?)

우리는 가장 행복한  
[urinun kajang haengbokan  
we the happiest.

We have become the  
happiest people.

인민으로\* 되었다.  
inminuro toeyotda]  
people became

**explanation:**

- \* The object 인민으로 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 되었다.

○ (with what?)

나는 톱으로\*  
[nanun toburo  
I a saw with  
나무를 벤다.  
namurul penda]  
the wood cut

I cut the wood with a  
saw.

**explanation:**

- \* The object 톱으로 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 벤다.

○ [(more)than who? ]

그는 나보다\* 크다.  
[kunun naboda kuda]  
he I than big

He is bigger than I.

**explanation:**

- \* The object 나보다 makes up the state which is expressed by the predicate 크다.

○ [(more) than what? ]

이 집은 저  
[i chibun cho  
this house that

This house is bigger  
than that one.

집보다*	크다.
chipboda	kuda]
house than	big

*explanation:*

- \* The object 저 집보다 makes up the state which is expressed by the predicate 크다.

206 The object is usually expressed by the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive.

1. The object is expressed by attaching the ending of the case or the auxiliary ending to the word.

for example:

○ 저는	차를*	I prefer to drink tea.
[chonun	charul	
I	tea	
즐거	마십니다.	
chulgyo	masimnida]	
for preference	drink	

*explanation:*

- \* The object 차를 is expressed by attaching the accusative ending 를 to the noun 차.

○ 저는	평양에서* <sub>1</sub>	I go from Pyongyang to London.
[chonun	pyongyang-eso	
I	Pyongyang from	
런던까지* <sub>2</sub>	갑니다.	
london-ggaji	kamnida]	
London to	go	

*explanation:*

- \*<sub>1</sub> The object 평양에서 is expressed by attaching the locative ending 에서 to the noun 평양.  
 \*<sub>2</sub> The object 런던까지 is expressed by attaching the auxiliary ending 까지 to the noun 런던.

2. The object is expressed without attaching any ending of the case to the word.

for example:

저는	사이다*	마십니다.		I drink a glass of
[chonun	saida	masimnida]		lemonade.
I	lemonade	drink		

*explanation:*

\* The object 사이다 has no ending of the case.

3. The object is expressed by attaching to itself the word which is used as an auxiliary such as 위하여[wihayo] "for", 대하여[taehayo] "for", 의하여[uihayo] "through", 관하여[kwanhayo] "about" and 말미암아[malmiama] "because of".

for example:

조국을	위하여*	싸우자.		Let us fight for
[chogugul	wihayo	ssauja]		the fatherland!
the fatherland	for let us	fight!		

*explanation:*

\* The object 조국을 위하여 is expressed by attaching to the word 조국을 the word 위하여 which is used as an auxiliary.

## THE QUOTATION

- 207 The quotation expresses the object or additional description which is introduced to give a concrete explanation of the predicate.

for example:

○ (who he is? )

그는	나에게	김동무가		He said to me that
[kunun	na·ege	kimdongmuga		Comrade Kim was a
he	me to	Kim comrade		football player.
축구선수라고*	말하였다.			
chukgusonsurago	malhayotda]			
football player	was said			



*explanation:*

- \* The quotation 김동무가 축구선수라고 expresses that comrade Kim was a football player.

○ (what it is? )

그는	나에게	이것이	그의	He said to me
[kunun	na·ege	igosi	ku·ui	that this was his
he	me to	that this	his	school.
학교라고*	말하였다.			
hakgyorago	malhayotda]			
school was	said			

*explanation:*

- \* The quotation 이것이 그의 학교라고 expresses that this was his school.

○ (how man does?)

그는	열심히	공부하자고*	He was determined
[kunun	yolsimi	kongbuhajago	to study hard.
he	hard	to study	
결심하였다.			
kyolsimhayotda]			
determined			

*explanation:*

- \* The quotation 열심히 공부하자고 expresses to study hard.

208 The quotation is expressed as follows:

1. The quotation is expressed by -라고[-rago] (-이라고[-ir-ago]), -느냐고[-nunyago], -냐가고[-ngago] and -다고[-daggo] which are formed by attaching the connecting ending 고[go] to the final form of the word.

for example:

그들은	금강산이	They admired Mt.
[kudurun	kumgangsani	Kumgang very much for
they	Mt. Kumgang	it's supreme natural
대자연의		beauty.
taejyonui		
the great nature of		

으뜸가는	
uddumganun	
the best being	
아름다움이라고*	못내
arumdaumirago	monnae
beauty is that	very
감탄하였다.	
kamtanhayotda]	
admired	

*explanation:*

\* The quotation 금강산이 대자연의 으뜸가는 아름다움이라고 is expressed by the connecting form -이라고.

2. The quotation is expressed by the final form of the word with such final endings as 다[da], 자[ja] and 느냐 [nunya].

for example:

그	아이는	《아버지다》*
[ku	ainun	abojida
that	child	"father is"
소리쳤다.		
sorichotda]		
shouted		

That child shouted:  
"Father's coming".

*explanation:*

\* The quotation 《아버지다》 is expressed by the final form with the final ending 다 of the verbal form of the noun 아버지.

3. The quotation is expressed by attaching 하고[hago] to the quoted word.

The quoted word is put in quotation marks.

for example:

나는	그에게	《고맙습니다》	I said to him:
[nanun	kuege	komapsumnida	"Thank you".
I	him to	"Thank you"	

하고 말하였다.  
hago malhayotda]  
said

## THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER

- 209 The adverbial modifier defines the grade or form of the action or state to be expressed by the predicate or adds the modality to the aforementioned content.

for example:

그는	빨리	간다.	He goes fast.
[kunun	bballi	konnunda]	
he	fast	goes	

- 210 The adverbial modifier is usually expressed by the adverb or by a form of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective.

1. The adverbial modifier form of the verb or adjective becomes the adverbial modifier.

for example:

그는	밤이	깊도록*	He studies till late at night.
[kunun	pami	kipdorok	
he	the night	deep till	
공부한다.			
kongbuhanda]			
studies			

*explanation:*

\* 깊 + 다 [kip da] deep  
stem ending

깊 + 도록 (도록—ending of the adverbial modifier)

2. The adverb or the noun used adverbially becomes the adverbial modifier.

- 1) All adverbs except the connecting adverb such as **및** [mit] “and” and **겸** [kyom] “and concurrently” become the adverbial modifier.

for example:

그는	조선말을	아주*	잘한다.	He speaks very well in Korean.
[kunun	chostonmarul	aju	chal handa]	
he	Korean	very well	speaks	

*explanation:*

\* The adverb **아주** becomes the adverbial modifier.

- 2) The noun used adverbially becomes the adverbial modifier without ending.

for example:

그는	나를	적극*	He actively helps me.
[kunun	narul	chokguk	
he	me	actively	
돕는다.			
tomnunda]			
helps			

*explanation:*

\* The noun **적극** used adverbially becomes the adverbial modifier.

- 3) The noun in the form **-적** [-jok] with the instrumental ending **로** [ro] or without ending becomes the adverbial modifier.

for example:

그는	나를	적극적으로*	He actively helps me.
[kunun	narul	chokgukjoguro	
he	me	actively	
돕는다.			
tomnunda]			
helps			

*explanation:*

\* 적극적 + 으 + 로 (으-link-vowel 로-instrumental ending)

### 3. The following become the adverbial modifier:

- 1) The incomplete nouns such as 채[chaе] “just as it is”, 대로[taero] “as” and 족족[chokjok] “every time” are attached to the attributive form of the word and become the adverbial modifier.

for example:

우리는	곰을	산채로*	잡았다.	We captured the bear alive.
[urinun	komul	sanchaero	chabatda]	
we	the bear	alive	captured	

explanation:

\* 살 + 다 [sal da] live  
stem ending

사 + ㄴ + 채 + 로 [(ㄴ-attributive ending of the verb in its past tense 채-incomplete noun “just as it is” 로-instrumental ending) after disappearance of the sound ㄴ (refer to 196)]

산채로 (after contracting the syllable 사 and the sound ㄴ)

- 2) The repeated connecting forms such as -나 -나[-na -na]

-든 -든[-dun -dun] and -거나 -거나[-gona -gona] become the adverbial modifier.

for example:

그가	가든	안가든*	Not depending on it, whether he goes or not, I go.
[kuga	kadun	angadun	
he	whether goes or not goes or		
나는	간다.		
nanun	kanda]		
I	go		

explanation:

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending

가 + 든 안+가 + 든 (든-disjunctive connecting ending  
 안-*adverb of negation* 든-disjunctive connecting ending)

## THE ATTRIBUTE

211 The attribute comes before attributed words and defines their character or denomination or expresses their belonging.

for example:

우리 청년들은  
 [uri chongnyondurun  
 our youths  
 혁명하는\*  
 hyongmyonghanun  
 revolution making

세대이며  
 sedaeimyo  
 generation are and  
 투쟁하는\*<sub>2</sub> 세대이며  
 tujaenghanun sedaeimyo  
 fighting generation are and  
 전진하는\*<sub>3</sub> 세대이다.  
 chonjinhanun sedaeida]  
 marching forward generation are

Our youths are the  
 generation making  
 revolution, the  
 fighting generation  
 and the generation  
 marching forward.

explanation:

\*<sub>1</sub> 혁명하 + 다 [hyongmyongha da] the revolution  
 stem ending make

혁명하 + 는 (는-*attributive ending of the verb in its present tense*)

\*<sub>2</sub> 투쟁하 + 다 [tujaengha da] fight  
 stem ending

투쟁하 + 는 (는-*attributive ending of the verb in its present tense*)

\*<sub>3</sub> 전진하 + 다 [jonjinha da] march forward  
           stem           ending

전진하 + 는 (는 - *attributive ending of the verb in its present tense*)

212 The attribute is expressed as follows:

1. The attributive form of words becomes the attribute.
  - 1) The attributive form of the verb or adjective becomes the attribute.

for example:

그 때는	따뜻한*	It was a warm spring day.
[ku ddaenun	ddaddutan	
that time	warm	
봄날이었다.		
pomnariyotda]		
a spring day was		

*explanation:*

\* 따뜻하 + 다 [ddadduta da] warm  
           stem           ending

따뜻하 + ㄴ (ㄴ - *attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense*)

따뜻한 (*after contracting the syllable 하 and sound ㄴ*)

- 2) The attributive form of some verbs which are used as an auxiliary becomes the attribute.

for example:

그는	자기	고향에	He talked about his own native place.
[kunun chagi	kohyang.e		
he	own	native place	
대한*	이야기를	하였다.	
taehan	iyagirul	hayotda]	
about	the story	did	

*explanation:*

대하 + 다 [taeha da] be confronted (*verb which is used as an auxiliary*)  
           stem           ending

대하 + ㄴ (*ㄴ* - *attributive ending of the verb in its past tense*)

대한 (*after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㄴ*)

## 2. All pre-nouns become attribute.

for example:

선생은	매 * 학생의
[sonsaeng-un	mae haksaeng-ui
the teacher	each pupil of
이름을	불렀다.
irumul	pullotda]
name	called

The teacher called  
the name of each  
pupil.

*explanation:*

\* 매 학생 + 의 (*매* - *pre-noun* 학생 - *noun* 의 - *genitive ending*)

The pre-noun 매 is the attribute to the noun 학생.

## 3. The noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive becomes the attribute.

### 1) Without ending

for example:

저것이	우리 *	집이다.
[chogosi	uri	chibida]
that	our	house is

That is our house.

*explanation:*

\* 우리 집 + 이 + 다 (*우리* - *personal pronoun* 집 - *noun* 이 - *exchanging ending* 다 - *low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form*)

The personal pronoun 우리 is the attribute to the noun 집.

The genitive ending 의 of the personal pronoun 우리, which is in the genitive, is omitted.

### 2) With the genitive ending

for example:



저것이	우리의*	집이다.		That is our house.
[chogosi	uriui	chibida]		
that	our	house is		

*explanation:*

\* 우리 + 의 집 + 이 + 다 (우리 - *personal pronoun*  
의 - *genitive ending* 집 - *noun* 이 - *exchanging ending* 다 -  
*low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal*  
*form*)

The personal pronoun in the genitive 우리의 is the attribute to the noun 집.

#### 4. The adverb becomes the attribute.

##### 1) Without ending

for example:

붕붕*	벌소리		a bee's buzzing sound
[pungbung	polsori]		
buzz bee	sound		

*explanation:*

\* 붕붕 벌소리 (붕붕 - *adverb* 벌소리 - *noun*)

The adverb 붕붕 is the attribute to the noun 벌소리.

##### 2) With the genitive ending

for example:

스스로 의*	가책		One's own reproach
[susuroui	kachaek]		
one's own	reproach		

*explanation:*

\* 스스로 + 의 가책 (스스로 - *adverb* 의 - *genitive ending* 가책 -  
*noun*)

The adverb 스스로 with the genitive ending 의 is the attribute to the noun 가책.

## THE FORM OF ADDRESS

213 The form of address is the word with which the

speaker calls the person addressed.

for example:

조국이며,	영원히	번영하라 !	Fatherland, prosper forever!
[chogugiyo	yong ·woni	ponyonghara]	
fatherland	forever	prosper!	

214 The form of address is expressed as follows:

1. A word with the vocative ending becomes the form of address.

for example:

전우들 이여* ,	동지들에게	Comrades-in-arms! We send militant greetings to you!
[chonuduriyo	tongjidurege	
comrades-in-arms	comrades to	
뜨거운	전투적	
ddugoun	chontujok	
warm	insarul	
보냅니다 !	greetings	
ponaemnida]		
send		

*explanation:*

\* 전우 + 들 + 이여 (전우 - noun 들 - plural ending  
이여 - vocative ending)

2. A word without ending becomes the form of address.

for example:

김동무* !	잘	가게 !	Comrade Kim! Good-bye!
[ kimdongmu	chal	kage]	
Kim comrade	well	go!	

*explanation:*

\* 김동무 !  
noun

The word 김동무 has no ending and becomes the form of address.

## THE PARENTHENSIS

- 215 The parenthesis is the part of sentence which is in-

serted to express the source of the fact about which a person is talking or to give an additional explanation in the sentence.

for example:

듣건대*	김동무는	They say Comrade Kim is a top student.
[tutgondae	kimdongmunun	
they say	Kim comrade	
최우등생이다.		
choeudungsaeng·ida]		
a top student is		

*explanation:*

\* 듣건대 is the parenthesis.

## 216 The parenthesis is expressed as follows:

1. The connecting form of the word becomes parenthesis.

for example:

말하자면*	김동무는	Comrade Kim is a top student, so to speak.
[malhajamyon	kimdongmunun	
so to speak	Kim comrade	
최우등생이다.		
choeudungsaeng·ida]		
a top student is		

*explanation:*

\* 말하 + 다 [malha da] speak  
stem ending

말하 + 자면 (자면 - *connecting ending of condition*)

The connecting form 말하자면 of the verb 말하다 becomes the parenthesis.

2. Phrases become parenthesis.

for example:

보는바와	같이*	우리	As you see, our foot- ball players won.
[ponunbawa kachi	uri		
as see	our		

축구선수들이	이겼다.	
chukgusonsuduri	igyotda]	
football players	won	

*explanation:*

\* 보 + 다 [po da] see  
       stem                      ending

보 + 는 바 + 와 같이 (는—*attributive ending of the verb in its present tense* 바—*incomplete noun* 와—*ending of the coordinative case* 같이—*adverb*)

The firm composition of the words 보는바와 같이 becomes the parenthesis.

## THE EXCLAMATORY WORD

- 217 The exclamatory word expresses the thought or attitude of the speaker according to his feelings.

for example:

예*,	저도	가겠습니다.	Yes, I will go, too.
[ye	chodo	kagetsumnida]	
yes	I also	go will	

*explanation:*

\* The interjection 예 becomes the exclamatory word.

- 218 The exclamatory word is expressed as follows:

1. An interjection becomes an exclamatory word.

for example:

예*,	저도	갑니다.	Yes, I go, too.
[ye	chodo	kamnida]	
yes	I also	go	

*explanation:*

\* The interjection 예 becomes the exclamatory word.

2. A non-interjection becomes an exclamatory word.

for example:

옳소*,	자네가	옳소.	Right, you are right.
[olso	chanega	olso]	
right	you	right	

explanation:

\* 옳 + 다 [ol ta] right  
stem ending

옳 + 소 (소—middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The final form 옳소 of the adjective 옳다 becomes the exclamatory word.

## THE CONJUNCTIVE

219 The conjunctive is the part of a sentence which connects two contents to each other.

The conjunctive usually lies at the beginning of the sentence and connects the content of a sentence with the content of another sentence in which the conjunctive lies.

for example:

래일은	아침	일찌기	We must leave early to-
[raeirun	achim	iljjigi	morrow morning.
tomorrow	morning	early	Therefore, go to bed
떠나야	하오.	그러니까*	early this evening!
ddonaya	hao	kuronigga	onul
leave	must	therefore	today
저녁에는	일찌기	자시오!	
chonyogenun	iljjigi	chasio]	
evening in	early	sleep!	

explanation:

\* The conjunctive 그러니까 connects the content of a sentence with that of the sentence in which the conjunctive lies.

But in some cases the conjunctive performs the function of connecting two parts of a sentence to each other.

for example:

기적과 혁신은	공장에서,	Miracles and innovations take place
[kijokgwa hyoksinun kongjang · eso	the factory in	one after another
농촌에서,	광산에서	in the factory,
nongchoneso kwangsaneso	the mine in	countryside, mine
the countryside in		and fishing village.
그리고*	어촌에서	
kurigo ochoneso	the fishing village in	
and		
련이어	일어나고 있다.	
ryonio ironagoitda]		
one after another	take place	

*explanation:*

- \* The conjunctive 그리고 connects an object 광산에서 and another object 어촌에서 to each other.

## 220 The conjunctive is expressed as follows:

### 1. The adverb becomes the conjunctive.

for example:

이	공장에서	In this factory they
[i kongjang · esonun		produce both cars and
this factory in		buses.
승용차를	생산한다.	
sungyongcharul saengsanhand		
the passenger car produce		
또한*	버스도 생산한다.	
ddohan bbosudo saengsanhandal		
as well the bus also produce		

*explanation:*

- \* The conjunctive 또한, which is an adverb, connects the content of a sentence with that of another sentence in

which the conjunctive lies.

2. A non-adverb becomes the conjunctive.

for example:

처음에	박동무가	First Comrade Pak
[choume	pakdongmuga	will make a speech
first	Pak comrade	and then Comrade
연설하겠습니다.	다음으로*	Kim.
yonsolhagetsumnida	taumuro	
speech make will	next	
김동무가	연설하겠습니다.	
kimdongmuga	yonsolhagetsumnida]	
Kim comrade	speech make will	

*explanation:*

- \* The conjunctive 다음으로, which is a non-adverb, connects the content of a sentence with that of another sentence in which the conjunctive lies.

3. Phrases become the conjunctive.

for example:

그	녀자는	노래를	She sings well. Besides
[ku	nyojanun	noraerul	she dances well.
	she	the song	
잘	부른다.	그뿐아니라*	
chal	purunda	kubbunanira	
well	sings	besides	
춤도	잘	춘다.	
chumdo	chal	chunda]	
the dance	also	well dances	

*explanation:*

- \* The conjunctive 그뿐아니라 connects the content of a sentence with that of another sentence in which the conjunctive lies.

## THE APPENDED MODIFIER

221 The appended modifier is the part of a sentence which

is presented for emphasis.

for example:

백두산, 그 이름은  
[paekdusan ku irumun  
Mt. Paekdu the name  
모든 조선사람의  
modun chosonsaramui  
all Korean of  
심장속에 영원히  
simjangsoge yong · woni  
the heart in forever  
살아있을것이다.  
saraisulgosida]  
live will

Mt. Paekdu!  
The name will live for-  
ever in the hearts of  
all Koreans.

## THE EXPANDED PART OF SENTENCE

222 The expanded part of a sentence consists of word combinations.

223 1. The expanded predicate

for example:

혁명의 요람  
[hyongmyong.ui yoram  
revolution of the cradle  
만경대는 경치가  
mangyongdaenun kyongchiga  
Mangyongdae the scenery  
매우 아름답다\*.  
maeu arumdapda]  
very beautiful

The scenery of  
Mangyongdae, the  
cradle of the revo-  
lution, is very  
beautiful.

*explanation:*

\* 경치 + 가 매우 아름답다. (경치—*noun* 가—*nominative ending* 매우—*adverb* 아름답다—*final form of adjective*)

경치가 매우 아름답다 is a word combination and the



expanded part of the sentence.

In the word combination 경치가 매우 아름답다 the final form 아름답다 of the adjective 아름답다 lies at the end of the sentence.

Therefore, the word combination 경치가 매우 아름답다 is an expanded predicate.

## 224 2. The expanded subject

This is similar to the complex subject in English.  
for example:

조선말을	배우기가*	The Korean language is not difficult to learn.
[chosonmarul	paeugiga	
the Korean language	to learn	
어렵지 않다.		
oryopji anta]		
difficult not		

*explanation:*

\* 조선말 + 을 배우다 [chosonmarul paeuda] the Korean language to learn (조선말 - *noun* 을 - *accusative ending* 배우다 - *verb*)

조선말 + 을 배우 + 기 + 가 (기 - *exchanging ending* 가 - *nominative ending*)

조선말을 배우기가 is a word combination and the expanded part of the sentence.

The word 배우기가, which comes at the end of the word combination 조선말을 배우기가, has the nominative ending 가.

Therefore, the word combination 조선말을 배우기가 is the expanded subject.

## 225 3. The expanded object

This is similar to complex object in English.

for example:

나는	그가	돌아오기를*	I waited for him to come back.
[nanun	kuga	toraogirul	
I	he	to come back	

기다렸다.  
kidaryotda]  
waited

*explanation:*

\* 그+가 돌아오다 [kuga toraoda] he+to come back (그 -  
pronoun 가 - nominative ending 돌아오다 - verb)

그 + 가 돌아오 + 기 + 를 (기 - exchanging end-  
ing 를 - accusative ending)

그가 돌아오기를 is a word combination and the expanded  
part of the sentence.

The word 돌아오기를, which comes at the end of the word  
combination 그가 돌아오기를, has the accusative ending 를.

Therefore, the word combination 그가 돌아오기를 is the  
expanded object.

## 226 4. The expanded quotation:

for example:

그는 저녁식사전에  
[kunun chonyoksiksajone  
he supper before  
집에 가야 하므로  
chibe kaya hamuro  
the house to had to go as  
돌아가겠다고\* 나에게  
toragagetdago na . ege  
go back would that me to

말했다.  
malhaeta]  
said

He said to me that he  
would go back because he  
had to go home before  
supper.

*explanation:*

\* 저녁식사전에 집에 가야 하므로 돌아가겠다고 is a word com-  
bination and the expanded part of the sentence.

This expanded part of the sentence answers the question  
"how does a person?"

Therefore, this expanded part of the sentence is the expanded quotation.

## 227 5. The expanded adverbial modifier

for example:

강물이	눈이	The river glitters daz - zlingly.
[kangmuri	nuni	
the river water	the eye	
부시게*	번쩍거린다.	
pusige	ponjjokgorinda]	
dazzlingly	glitters	

*explanation:*

\* 눈 + 이 부시다 [nun i pusida] the eye dazzling  
(눈—*noun* 이—*nominative ending* 부시다—*adjective*)

눈이 부시 + 게 (게—*ending of the adverbial modifier*)

눈이 부시게 is a word combination and the expanded part of the sentence.

The word 부시게, which comes at the end of the word combination 눈이 부시게, has the ending of the adverbial modifier 게.

Therefore, the word combination 눈이 부시게 is the expanded adverbial modifier.

## 228 6. The expanded attribute

for example:

나라와	인민의	The noble character of loving and setting sto- re by the property of the country and people	
[narawa	inminui		
the country	and the people of		
재산을	아끼고		
chaesanul	aggigo		
the property	sparing		
사랑하는*	고상한		품성
saranghanun	kosanghan		pumsong]
and loving	noble		character

*explanation:*

\* 사랑하 + 다 [sarangha da] love  
 stem ending

사랑하 + 는 (는—*attributive ending of the verb in its present tense*)

나라와 인민의 재산을 아끼고 사랑하는 is a word combination and the expanded part of the sentence.

The word 사랑하는, which lies at the end of the word combination 나라와 인민의 재산을 아끼고 사랑하는, is the attributive form of the adjective 사랑하다.

Therefore, the word combination 나라와 인민의 재산을 아끼고 사랑하는 is the expanded attribute.

## LESSON 15

### THE AGREEMENT OF PARTS OF SENTENCE

229 The agreement of parts of sentence means that a part of sentence agrees with another part of sentence in an expression.

for example:

○ 선생님이	오 십 니 다.*	The teacher is coming.
[sonsaengnimi	osimnida]	
the teacher	comes	

*explanation:*

\* 오 + 다 [o da] come  
 stem ending

오+시+ㅂ니다 (시—*ending of respect* ㅂ니다—*most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)  
 오십니다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㅂ)

The ending of respect 시 lies in the predicate 오십니다 because the subject 선생님 is respected.

○ 선생님이	주 무 신 다.*	The teacher sleeps.
[sonsaengnimi	chumusinda]	
the teacher	sleeps	

*explanation:*

\* 주무시 + 다 [chumusi da] sleep (in the meaning of respect)  
stem ending

주무시 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

주무신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㄴ)

The predicate 주무신다 has the meaning of respect of "sleep".

The predicate 주무신다 which has the meaning of respect of "sleep" is used in order to show respect to the subject 선생님.

There are agreement in the expressions of respect and courtesy as well as agreement in the expressions of the adverbial modifier, the question and the forms of address.

## 230 1. The agreement in expressions of respect and courtesy

### 1) The agreement in an expression of respect

When a respected person is the subject, the ending of respect 시 [si] is used in the predicate.

for example:

선생님이	오신다.*
[sonsaengnimi	osinda]
the teacher	comes

The teacher is coming.

*explanation:*

\* 오 + 다 [o da] come  
stem ending

오 + 시 + ㄴ다 (시 - ending of respect ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

오신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㄴ)

The ending of respect 시 lies in the predicate 오신다 in order to show respect to the subject 선생님.

### 2) The agreement in an expression of courtesy

The agreement in an expression of courtesy is agreement in which the final ending in the final predicate is changed corresponding to the attitude of the speaker toward the person addressed.

(1) Agreement in the most deferential form

When the speaker respects the person addressed, the most deferential form of the final ending lies in the final predicate.

for example:

교 장 선 생 님 이	오 십 니 다*	The principal teacher is coming.
[kyojangsonsaengnimi	osimnida]	
the principal teacher	comes	

*explanation:*

\* 오 + 다 [o da] come  
stem ending

오+시+ㅁ니다 (시—ending of respect ㅁ니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)  
오십니다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㅁ)

The most deferential form of the final ending ㅁ니다 lies in the final predicate 오십니다 in order to show respect to the person addressed.

(2) When the speaker and the person addressed are equals, the middle form of the final ending comes in the final predicate.

for example:

선 생 님 이	오 시 오*.	The teacher is coming.
[sonsaengnimi	osio]	
the teacher	comes	

*explanation:*

\* 오 + 다 [o da] come  
stem ending

오+시+오 (시—ending of respect 오—middle declarative

*form of the final ending of the verb)*

The middle form of the final ending 오 lies in the final predicate 오시오 in order to express that the person addressed is on equal terms with the speaker.

(3) The agreement in the low form

When the person addressed is in a lower position to the speaker, the low form of the final ending lies in the final predicate.

for example:

어	머	님	이	오	신	다*.	The mother is coming.			
[o	m	n	i	o	s	i		n	d	a]
the	mother			comes						

*explanation:*

\* 오 + 다 [o da] come  
stem ending

오 + 시 + ㄴ 다 (시—ending of respect ㄴ 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

오신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㄴ)

The low form of the final ending ㄴ 다 lies in the final predicate 오신다 in order to express that the person addressed is on a lower level than the speaker.

3) The agreement in words which have the meaning of respect

Korean has words which have the meaning of respect in themselves. Therefore, one must use such words when he speaks to a superior.

for example:

이	책	을	아	버	님	에	게	올	려	라*!	Give this book to the father!
[i	chaegul		abonimege					ollyora]			
this	book		the	father	to			give!			

*explanation:*

\* 올리 + 다 [olli da] give (in the meaning of respect).  
stem ending

올리+여라 (여라—*low imperative form of the final ending of the verb*)

올려라 (*after contracting the syllables 리 and 여*)

The predicate 올려라 is used here in order to show respect to “father”.

## 231 2. The agreement in the adverbial modifier and other parts of the sentence

for example:

우 리 는	전 쟁 을	바 라 지	않 지 만	We don't
[urinun chonjaeng.ul		paraji	anchiman	want the
we	the war	want	not but	war, but
결 코	전 쟁 을	두 려 워 하 지	않 는 다.*	never fe-
kyolko chonjaeng.ul		turyowohaji	annunda]	ar it.
never	the war	fear	not	

*explanation:*

\* 두려워하 + 다[turyowoha da] fear  
stem ending

두려워하 + 지 않다 (지—*connecting ending of negation* 않다  
—*verb which is used as an auxiliary*)

두려워하 + 지 않 + 는다 (는다—*low declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)

The low declarative form of the final ending of the verb 않는다 in the final predicate 두려워하지 않는다, which expresses negation, is in agreement with the adverbial modifier 결코.

## 232 3. The agreement in interrogative words and other parts of the sentence

for example:

무 슌	말 을	그 령 제	What an interesting
[musun	marul	kuroke	story are you telling?
which	word	so	



재 미 있 제 하 는 가\*?  
chemiitge hanunga]  
interestingly do?

*explanation:*

\* 하 + 다 [ha da] do  
stem ending

하+는가 (는가—middle interrogative form of the final  
ending of the verb)

The final predicate of interrogation하는가 is in agree-  
ment with the interrogative word 무슨, which lies at  
the beginning.

#### 233 4. The agreement in the forms of address and other parts of the sentence

This is the agreement in which the final predicate  
in the low form of courtesy follows after the forms  
of address with the vocative ending 아[a]/ 야[ya].

for example:

너 백 두 야\*!  
[no paekduya  
you Paekdu!

조 선 의 산 아\*!  
chosonui sana  
Korea of the mountain!

말 하 라\*!  
malhara  
say!

어 뎡 제 떨 어 졌 던  
oddoke ddorojyotdon  
how fallen  
태 양 이 이 나 라 에  
taeyang.i i narae  
sun this country in  
다 시 솟 았 더 나 !  
tasi sosatdonya]  
again went up!

You Paekdu!

The mountain of Korea!  
Speak out!

How has the sun, which  
had sunk, risen again  
in this country?

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 백 두 + 아  
noun vocative ending

\*<sub>2</sub> 산 + 아  
noun vocative ending

\*<sub>3</sub> 말하 + 다 [malha da] say  
stem ending

말하+라 (라-low imperative form of the final ending  
of the verb)

The final predicate 말하라 in the low form of courtesy  
follows after the vocative words 백두야 and 산아.

## THE ORDER OF PARTS OF SENTENCE

### 234 1. The position of the predicate

The predicate usually comes at the end of the  
sentence.

for example:

기 차 가 온 다.\*

[kichaga onda]

the train comes

The train comes.

explanation:

\* 오 + 다 [o da] come

stem ending

오+ㄴ다 (ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final end-  
ing of the verb)

온다 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound  
ㄴ)

The predicate 온다 lies at the end of the sentence and  
closes the sentence.

### 235 2. The position of the subject

The subject usually comes at the beginning of the  
sentence.

So long as the speaker doesn't emphasize a certain part of the sentence, the subject always comes first.

for example:

버스가*	저기에	온다.	A bus comes there.
[bbosuga	chogie	onda]	
a bus	that place to	comes	

*explanation:*

\* 버스 + 가

*noun nominative ending*

The subject 버스가 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

### 236 3. The position of the object

The object often lies between the subject and the predicate.

for example:

○ 그는	새로운	기계를*	He made a new machine.
[kunun	saeroun	kigyerul	
he	new	machine	
만들었다.			
mandurotda]			
made			

*explanation:*

\* 기계 + 를

*noun accusative ending*

The object 기계를 comes between the subject 그는 and the predicate 만들었다.

○ 우리는	평화를*	원한다.	We want peace!
[urinun	pyonghwarul	wonhanda]	
we	the peace	want	

*explanation:*

\* 평화 + 를

*noun accusative ending*

The object 평화를 comes between the subject 우리는 and the predicate 원한다.

When a sentence has many objects, the object to which the action of the predicate of the transitive verb directly goes over always lies nearer to the predicate than other objects.

for example:

나	는	그	에	제
[nanun		kuege		
I		him		
그	책	을*	주	었
ku	chaegul	chuotda]		
that	book		gave	

I gave him the book.

*explanation:*

\* 그 책 + 을

*pronoun noun accusative ending*

The object 그 책을 which the action of the predicate 주  
었다 directly influences comes nearer to the predicate  
주었다 than the object 그에게.

The expanded object comes before other objects.

for example:

나	는	일	을
[nanun		irul	
I		the work	
끝	냈	다	는
ggunnaetdanungosul			
finished	that		
그	에	제	보
kuege		pogohayotda]	
him		reported	

I reported to him that  
I had finished the  
work.

*explanation:*

\* 끝 내 + 다 [ggunnae da] finish

*stem ending*

끝내 + 였 + 다 + 는 + 것 + 을 (였 - ending of the past tense  
다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the  
verb 는 - auxiliary ending 것 - incomplete noun 을  
- accusative ending)

끝냈다는것을 (*after contracting the syllables* 내 and 였)  
 The expanded object 일을 끝냈다는것을 comes before another object 그에게.

The objects expressing time and place usually come at the beginning of the sentence.

When there are objects expressing time and place, the time comes first.

for example:

오늘 저녁에  
 [onul chonyoge  
 today evening in  
 구락부에서  
 kurakbueso  
 the club in

모임이 있다.  
 moimi itda]  
 a meeting is

This evening there is  
 a meeting in the club.

*explanation:*

The object expressing time 오늘 저녁에 comes before the object expressing place 구락부에서.

#### 237 4. The position of the quotation

The quotation usually comes between the object and the predicate.

for example:

전사는 자기 이름을  
 [chonsanun chagi irumul  
 the soldier own name  
 박철수라고\* 보고하였다.  
 pakcholsurago pogohayotda]  
 Pak Chol Su as reported

The soldier reported  
 his own name as Pak  
 Chol Su.

*explanation:*

\* 박철수+라+고 (박철수—*noun* 라—*low declarative form* of

the final ending of the verbal form 고—copulative connecting ending)

The quotation 박철투라코 comes between the object 자기 이름을 and the predicate 보고하였다.

The expanded quotation comes before the object in order to avoid an ambiguity in meaning.

for example:

그 는 저 녁 식 사 전 에 집 에  
[kunun chonyoksiksajone chibe  
he supper before the house to  
가 야 하 므 로 돌 아 가 겠 다 고\*  
kayahamuro toragagetdago  
has to go as would go back that  
나 에 게 말 했 다 .  
naege malhaetda]  
me to said

He said to me that he  
would go back because  
he had to go home  
before supper.

explanation:

\* The expanded quotation 저녁식사전에 집에 가야 하므로 돌아가겠다고 comes before the object 나에게 in order to avoid an ambiguity in meaning.

## 238 5. The position of the adverbial modifier

The adverbial modifier usually comes after the subject, object and quotation.

for example:

만 경 봉 에 아 침 노 을 이  
[mangyongbong.e achimnouri  
Mangyong Hill on the morning glow  
아 름 답 게\* 비 치 였 다 .  
arumdapge pichiyotda]  
beautifully shone

The morning  
glow beautifully  
shone on  
Mangyong Hill.

explanation:

\* 아 름 답 + 다 [arumdap da] beautiful  
stem ending

아 름 답 + 게 ( 게—ending of the adverbial modifier )

The adverbial modifier 아름답게 comes after the object 만경봉에 and the subject 아침노을이.

At the beginning of the sentence come the modal adverbial modifiers such as 아마 [ama] "perhaps" 글썄 [kulsse] "perhaps"; 결코 [kyolko] "never", 비록 [pirok] "even if"; 아무리 [amuri] "however"; 실로 [sillo] "really" and 물론 [mullon] "of course".

for example:

물론*	그도	옵니다.	Of course, he's coming, too.
[mullon	kudo	omnida]	
of course	he also	comes	

explanation:

\*The modal adverbial modifier 물론 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

When two adverbial modifiers lie side by side before the predicate, the positions of the two adverbial modifiers are interchangeable.

for example:

○ 그는 말없이*	조용히	He hurried up the work in silence.
[kunun maropsi	choyong.i	
he without word	still	
일을	다그쳤다.	
irul	taguchotda.]	
the work	hurried up	

explanation:

\* 말 + 없 이  
noun      adverb

○ 그는	조용히	He hurried up the work in silence.
[kunun	choyong.i	
he	still	
말없이	일을	
maropsi	irul	
without word	the work	

다 그 쳤 다.

taguchotda]

hurried up

*explanation:*

The positions of the two adverbial modifiers 말없이 and 조용히 are interchangeable.

The adverbial modifier -적으로 [-joguro] usually comes before another adverbial modifier.

for example:

그 는 부모 에 게

[kunun pumoege

he the parents to

편 지 를

pyonjirul

the letter

정 상 적 으 로\*

chongsangjoguro

a regular way in

꼭 쓴 다.

ggok ssunda]

surely writes

He regularly writes  
the letter to his  
parents without fail.

*explanation:*

\*The adverbial modifier 정상적으로 comes before another adverbial modifier 꼭.

## 239 6. The position of the attribute

The attribute always comes before the part of sentence which it qualifies.

for example:

이 애 가 저 의\*딸 입 니 다.

[i aega choui ddarimnida]

this child my daughter is

This child is my daughter.

*explanation:*

\*The attribute 저의 lies before the verbal form 딸입니다 of the noun 딸.

When two attributes lie side by side, their positions are in-



terchangeable in consideration of their syntactic relations to the part of sentence which lies after them.

for example:

○ 인 민 경 제*	all branches of the
[inmin.gyongje	national economy
national economy of	
모 든 부 문	
modun pumun]	
all branch	

*explanation:*

\* The attribute 인민경제 is in the form of absolute case of genitive 인민경제의 of the noun 인민경제.

○ 모 든	all branches of the
[modun	national economy
all	
인 민 경 제 부 문	
inmin.gyongje pumun]	
the national economy of	
the branch	

*explanation:*

The positions of the attributes 인민경제 and 모든 are interchangeable.

When there are a verbal attribute and an adjectival attribute side by side, the verbal attribute comes before the adjectival attribute.

for example:

잠 자 는*	귀 여 운*	애 기	sleeping lovely baby
[chamjanun	kwiyoun	aegi]	
sleeping	lovely	baby	

*explanation:*

\*: 잠자 + 다[chamja da] sleep  
stem ending

잠자+는 (는-*attributive ending of the verb in its present tense*)

\*<sub>2</sub> 귀엽 + 다 [kwiyoop da] *lovely stem ending*

귀여+우+ㄴ [(ㄴ-*attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense*) after exchanging the sound ㅂ for the syllable 우 (refer to 196)]

귀여운 (after contracting the syllable 우 and the sound ㄴ)  
The verbal attribute 잠자는 comes before the adjectival attribute 귀여운.

When an attribute in the form of the genitive of the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive goes side by side with an adjectival attribute, the attribute in the form of the genitive of the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive comes before the adjectival attribute.

for example:

당원 의* <sub>1</sub>	고귀한* <sub>2</sub> 영예	the noble honour of a party member
[tang·wonui	kogwihan yong·e]	
a party member of noble	honour	

*explanation:*

\*<sub>1</sub> 당원 + 의  
*noun genitive ending*

\*<sub>2</sub> 고귀하+다 [kogwiha da] *noble stem ending*

고귀하+ㄴ (ㄴ-*attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense*)

고귀한 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㄴ)

The attribute 당원 의 in the form of the genitive of the noun 당원 comes before the adjectival attribute 고귀한.

When an adjectival attribute lies side by side with an attribute in the form of the absolute case of the personal pronoun, the adjectival attribute comes before the attribute in the form of the absolute case of the personal

pronoun.

for example:

영 광 스 러 운\*<sup>1</sup>  
[yong.gwangsuroun  
glorious  
우 리\*<sup>2</sup> 조 국  
uri choguk]  
our fatherland

our glorious fatherland

explanation:

\*<sub>1</sub> 영광스럽 + 다 [yong.gwangsurop da] glorious  
stem ending

영광스러 + 우 + L [(L-*attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense*) after exchanging the sound ㅅ for the syllable 우 (refer to 196)]

영광스러운 (after contracting the syllable 우 and the sound L)

\*<sub>2</sub> The attribute 우리 is in the form of the absolute case of the genitive 우리의 of the personal pronoun 우리. The adjectival attribute 영광스러운 lies before the attribute 우리 in the form of the absolute case of the genitive 우리의 of the personal pronoun 우리.

The expanded attribute comes before another attribute in order to avoid an ambiguity in meaning.

for example:

나 라 와            인 민 의  
[narawa            inminui  
the country and the people of  
재 산 을            아 끼 고  
chaesanul            aggigo  
the property    sparing and  
사 랑 하 는\*<sup>1</sup> 고 상 한\*<sup>2</sup> 품 성  
saranghanun kosanghan pumsong]  
loving            noble            character

the noble character of  
loving and setting sto-  
re by the property of  
the country and people

explanation:

\*<sub>1</sub> 사랑하 + 다 [sarangha da] love  
stem ending

사랑하+는 (는-*attributive ending of the verb in its present tense*)

\*<sub>2</sub> 고상하+다 [kosangha da] noble  
stem ending

고상하+ㄴ (ㄴ-*attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense*)

고상한 (*after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㄴ*)

The expanded attribute 나라와 인민의 재산을 아끼고 사랑하  
는 comes before another attribute 고상한.

- 240 7. The position of the form of address, exclamatory word, parenthesis, conjunctive or appended modifier  
The form of address, exclamatory word, conjunctive or appended modifier usually comes at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

어머니.\* 아버지 가  
[omoni abojiga  
mother father  
돌아오 십 니 다.  
toraosimnida]  
comes back

Mother! Father is back.

*explanation:*

\* The form of address 어머니 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

The form of address or an exclamatory word comes also at the end of the sentence.

for example:

○ 아버지 가  
[abojiga  
father  
돌아오 십 니 다. 어머니\*  
toraosimnida omoni]  
comes back mother

Father is back, mother!

*explanation:*

- \* The exclamatory word 어머니 comes at the end of the sentence.

○ 우리 기어이 그대 품으로 [uri kioi kudae pumuro we surely your bosom to 돌아가리라, toragarira go back will  어머니 조국이여*! omonijogugiyol mother fatherland!	We will surely go back to your bosom, our motherland!
--	---

*explanation:*

- \* 어머니 + 조국 + 이여  
noun noun vocative ending

The form of address 어머니조국이여 comes at the end of the sentence.

When the conjunctive performs its function of connecting two parts of sentence, it comes between them.

for example:

너와 나 그리고* 그는 [nowa na kurigo kunun you and I and he 함께 간다. hamgge kanda] together go	You and I as well as he go together.
---	---

*explanation:*

- \* The conjunctive 그리고 comes between the subject 나 and the subject 그.

## LESSON 16

### THE KINDS OF SENTENCES

241 Korean sentences are classified into five kinds ac-

according to the state of things and the viewpoint of the speaker — declarative, interrogative, suggestive, imperative and exclamatory.

## 242 1. The declarative sentence

A declarative sentence expresses some statement in the affirmative or negative form.

for example:

저는 대학생입니다.	I am a student.
[chonun taehaksaeng.imnida]	
I a student am	

- 1) The declarative sentence contains the following contents of statement:

- (1) Some phenomenon, result or fact:

for example:

어린이들은 앞날의	The children are
[orinidurun amnarui	masters of the future.
the children the future of	
주인들이 다.	
chuindurida]	
the masters are	

- (2) Some work or action to be done obligatorily:

for example:

우리는	We must keep the
[urinun	labour safety regula-
we	tions.
로동안전규정을	
rodong.anjon.gyujong.ul	
the labour safety regulation	
지켜야 한다.	
chikyoya handa]	
keep must	

- (3) The estimation of some fact:

for example:

너는 공부를 잘 하였다.  
[nonun kongburul chal hayotda]  
you the study well did

You have studied well.

(4) The determination or intention of the speaker:

for example:

래일 저는 영국으로  
[raeil chonun yong.guguro  
tomorrow I England to  
돌아가겠습니다.  
toragagetsumnida]  
go back will

Tomorrow I will return  
to England.

(5) The promise of the speaker to the person addressed:

for example:

래일 다시 오마\*  
[raeil tasi oma]  
tomorrow again come will

Tomorrow I will come  
again.

*explanation:*

\* 오 + 다 [o da] come  
stem ending

오+마(마-low declarative form of the final ending of  
the verb)

The low declarative form of the final ending of the  
verb 마 expresses the promise of an action foreseen in  
the future.

(6) The affirmation or negation of some fact or the  
word of some person:

① When the interrogator is superior to the person  
addressed:

for example:

○ 동무는 가오?  
[tongmunun kao]  
comrade go?

Are you going?

○ 너 는 가 니 ?

[nonun kani]  
you go?

| Are you going?

예. [ye] Yes.

*explanation:*

예 is the answer that one will go.

아니요. [aniyo] No.

*explanation:*

아 니 + 요

(아니—adverb of negation 요—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

아니요 is the answer that one will not go.

○ 동 무 는 안 가 오\*?

[tongmunun an.gao]  
comrade not go?

| Aren't you going?

*explanation:*

\* 안 + 가다 [an.gada] not go

(안—adverb of negation 가다—verb)

안+가+오(오—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

○ 너 는 안 가 니\*?

[nonun an.gani]  
you not go?

| Aren't you going?

*explanation:*

\* 안 + 가 다

안 + 가 + 니(니—low interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

예. [ye] yes.

*explanation:*

예 is the answer that one will not go.

The answer 예 is the affirmation of "not go?".

In this case the answer in English would be "no".



아니요. [aniyo] No.

*explanation:*

아니요 is the answer that one will go.

The answer 아니요 is the negation of "not go?"

In this case the answer in English would be "yes"

- ② When the interrogator and the person addressed are on an equal footing:

for example:

- (between friends)

동무는 가나?  
[tongmunun kana]  
you go?

Are you going?

- (between children)

너는 가니?  
[nonun kani]  
you go?

Are you going?

응. [ung] yes.

*explanation:*

응 is the answer of one who will go.

아니. [ani] No.

*explanation:*

아니 is the answer of one who will not go.

- (between friends)

동무는 안가나\*?  
[tongmunun an·gana]  
you not go

Aren't you going?

*explanation:*

\* 안+가다 [an gada] not go

(안—adverb of negation 가다—verb)

안+가+나

(나—middle interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

○ (between children)

너 는 안 가 니\*?

[nonun angani]

you not go?

Aren't you going?

*explanation:*

\* 안+가다

안+가+니 (니 - low interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

응[ung] Yes.

*explanation:*

응 is the answer of one who will not go.

The answer 응 is the affirmation of "not go?".

In this case the answer in English would be "no".

아니. [a ni] No.

*explanation:*

아니 is the answer of one who will go.

The answer 아니 is the negation of "not go?".

In this case the answer in English would be "yes".

③ When the interrogator is inferior to the person addressed:

for example:

○ 당신 은 가 십 니 까?

[tangsinun kasimnigga]

you go?

Are you going?

○ 아 버 지 는 가 십 니 까?

[abojinun kasimnigga]

father goes?

Are you going, father?

응. [ung] Yes.

*explanation:*

응 is the answer of one who will go.

아 니. [ani] No.

*explanation:*

아니 is the answer of one who will not go.

○ 당신 은

[tangsinun

you

안 가 십 니 까 \*?

an. gasimnigga]

not go?

Aren't you going?

*explanation:*

\* 안 + 가다

안 + 가 + 시 + 뵈 니 까

(시 — ending of respect 뵈 니 까 — most deferential  
interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

안 가 십 니 까 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the  
sound 뵈)

○ 아버지 는 안 가 십 니 까 ?

[abojinun an. gasimnigga]

father does not go?

Aren't you going, father?

응. [ung] Yes.

*explanation:*

응 is the answer of one who will not go.

The answer 응 is the affirmation of "not go? "

In this case the answer in English would be "no".

아니. [ani] No.

*explanation:*

아니 is the answer of one who will go.

The answer 아니 is the negation of "not go? "

In this case the answer in English would be "yes".

(7) The declarative sentence only shows that there is  
a certain object.

for example:

군 중 의 물 결,

[kunjung-ui mulgyol

the masses of the wave

the streams of the

masses, the cheers of

joy

기쁨의	환호.
kibbumui	hwanho]
joy of	the cheer

- 2) The characteristics of the declarative sentence  
The final predicate of the declarative sentence is usually expressed in the declarative form.

for example:

나는	조국으로
[nanun	choguguro
I	the fatherland to
돌아간다.*	
toraganda]	
go back	

I go back to the fatherland.

*explanation:*

\* 돌아가+다[toraga da] go back  
stem ending

돌아가+ㄴ다(ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

돌아간다(after contracting the syllable가 and the sound ㄴ)

돌아간다 is the declarative form of the verb 돌아가다.

But in some cases the final predicate of the declarative sentence can be expressed in other forms.

for example:

저녁	8시부터
[chonyok	yodolsibuto
evening	8 o'clock from
회의가	있음*.
hoeuiga	issum]
the meeting	to be

There is a meeting at 8 o'clock in the evening.

*explanation:*

\* 있 + 다 [it da] be  
stem ending

있+으+ㅁ (으-link-vowel ㅁ-exchanging ending)

있음(after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound ㅁ)

The final predicate 있음 is the substantive form of the verb 있다.

## 243 2. The interrogative sentence

The interrogative sentence means that the speaker asks another person something.

for example:

언 제 당 신 은  
[onje tangsinun  
when you  
조 국 으 로  
choguguro  
the fatherland to  
돌 아 가 십 니 까?  
toragasimnigga]  
return?

When do you return to  
the fatherland?

1) The interrogative sentences are classified as follows according to their function and contents:

(1) The interrogative sentence which requires an answer from the person addressed

① The affirmation of some fact:

for example:

당 신 은 통 역 원 입 니 까?  
[tangsinun tong.yogwonimnigga]  
you an interpreter are?

Are you an interpreter?

예.  
[ye]  
yes

Yes.

② The answer to a concrete fact:

for example:

몇 시 입 니 까?  
[myotsiimnigga]  
how much time is?

What time is it?

5 시 입니다.  
[tasotsiimnida]  
five o'clock is

It is five o'clock.

(2) The interrogative sentence which doesn't require an answer from the person addressed

① It is required that the person addressed does some action.

for example:

애 들 아 , 왜 들 \* 아 직  
[aedura waedul ajik  
children! why yet  
학 교 에 안 가 니 ?  
hakgyo·e an·gani]  
school to not go?

Children! Why haven't  
you gone to school yet?

*explanation:*

\* 왜 + 들  
*adverb plural ending*

The plural ending 들 is attached to the adverb 왜 in order to emphasize the plural of "children".

The interrogative sentence has the instruction that the children should quickly go to school.

② A strong affirmation or negation for some fact is expressed.

for example:

너 는 갈 수 없 단 말 이 나 \* ?  
[nonun kalsu opdanmarinya]  
you go can not?

Can't you go?

*explanation:*

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
*stem ending*

가 + ㄱ + 수 없다.

(ㄱ - *attributive ending of the verb in its future tense* 수 - *incomplete noun* 없다 - *adjective*)

갈+수 없+다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

갈+수 없+다+ㄴ 말+이+냐

(ㄴ - attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense 말 - noun which is used as an auxiliary 이 - exchanging ending 냐 - low interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

갈수 없단 말이냐 (after contracting the syllable 다 and the sound ㄴ)

말이냐 is a strong affirmation of 갈수 없다.

- 2) The characteristics of the interrogative sentence  
The final predicate of the interrogative sentence is usually expressed in the interrogative form.

for example:

당신은 영국사람입니까*?	Are you an English?
[tangsinun yong 'guksaramimnigga]	
you an English are?	

explanation:

\* 영국사람+이+ㅂ니까

(이 - exchanging ending ㅂ니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

영국사람입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

영국사람입니까 is the interrogative form of the verbal form of the noun 영국사람.

But in some cases the final predicate of the interrogative sentence can be expressed in other forms.

for example:

《네가 나의 친구의	As you are the son of
[nega naui chin-gu-ui	
you my friend of	
아들이라니*?	
adurirani]	
son are as ?	my friend, I am very glad.

정 말 반 갑 다. >  
 chongmal pangapda]  
 really glad

*explanation:*

\* 아들 + 이 + 라 + 니

(아들 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 라 - low declarative  
 form of the final ending of the verbal form 니 - con-  
 necting ending of cause)

The final predicate 아들이라니 is the connecting form of  
 the verbal form of the noun 아들

### 244 3. The suggestive sentence

The suggestive sentence means that the speaker re-  
 quires the person addressed to do some action together  
 with him.

for example:

동 무 들 갑 시 다.  
 [tongmudul kapsida]  
 comrades let us go

Comrades, let us go!

1) The suggestive sentence contains the following:

(1) It is required to do some action together.

for example:

동 무 들 춤 을 춤 시 다.  
 [tongmudul chumul chupsida]  
 comrades a dance let us dance

Comrades, let us  
 dance !

(2) The person addressed is required to do some action.

for example:

박 동 무 줌  
 [pakdongmu chom  
 Pak comrade a little

Comrade Pak, read a  
 little slowly!



천 천 히	읽 으 시 다.
chonchoni	ilgupsida]
slowly	let us read

(3) One's own determination or one's own aim is expressed.

for example:

과 학 자 가	되 자!	To become a scientist!
[kwahakjaga	toeja	It was my determina-
scientist	let us become	tion.
이 것이	나의 결 심 이 였 다.	
igosi	nau	kyolsimiyotda]
it	my determination was	

2) The characteristics of the suggestive sentence  
The final predicate of the suggestive sentence is expressed in the suggestive form.

for example:

동 무 들 ,	노 래 합 시 다.*	Comrades, let us sing!
[tongmudul	noraehapsida]	
comrades	let us sing	

*explanation:*

\* 노래하+다[noraeha da] sing  
stem ending

노래하+ㅂ시다

(ㅂ시다—most deferential suggestive form of the final ending of the verb)

노래합시다(after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㅂ)

노래합시다 is the suggestive form of the verb 노래하다.

The suggestive sentence has its particular accent.

(1) The tone is even at the end of the sentence.

for example:

→ 가 자 !	Let us go!
[kaja]	
let us go!	

- (2) The tone is even and short at the end of the sentence when a determination or aim is expressed.

for example:

동무들, 혁명을  
[tongmudul hyongmyong-ul  
comrades the revolution  
위하여 우리와  
uihayo uriwa  
for us with  
함께 싸웁시다.  
hamgge ssaupsida]  
together let us fight

Comrades, let us  
fight together for the  
revolution!

- (3) When high requirements are expressed, the tone is loud and strong at the end of the sentence.

for example:

○ 자주성을 옹호하자.  
[chajusong-ul onghohaja]  
Chajusong let us defend

Let us defend  
Chajusong!

○ 원수를 소멸하자.  
[wonssurul somyolhaja]  
the enemy let us annihilate

Let us smash the  
enemy!

- (4) When a recommendation or the request is expressed, the tone is relatively low and soft at the end of the sentence.

for example:

여기에서  
[yogieso  
this place in  
이야기를 하자.  
iyagirul haja]  
the talk let us do

Let us talk here!

The imperative sentence means that the speaker makes the person addressed do a certain action.

for example:

곧 떠나시오.

[kot ddonasio]

at once leave!

Leave at once!

1) The imperative sentence contains the following:

(1) An order, instruction, prohibition or appeal is expressed.

for example:

자 세.

[chage]

sleep!

Sleep!

*explanation:*

자 + 다 [cha da] sleep

stem ending

자 + 제

(제 - *middle imperative form of the final ending of the verb*)

(2) Congratulations, a wish or a hope is expressed.

for example:

안녕히 가십시오.

[annyong.i kasipsio]

well go!

Good-bye!

(3) A request, recommendation or permission is expressed.

for example:

그렇게 하시오.

[kuroke hasio]

so do!

Do so!

- 2) The characteristics of the imperative sentence  
The final predicate of the imperative sentence is usually expressed in the imperative form.

for example:

빨리	가라.*	Go quickly!
[bballi	kara]	
quickly	go!	

explanation:

\* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending  
가 + 라

(라-low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

가라 is the imperative form of the verb 가다.

But in some cases the final predicate of the imperative sentence can be expressed in other forms.

- (1) In the form of 근것 [lgot]

for example:

모두	모일 것.*	All should gather!
[modu	moilgot]	
all	gather!	

explanation:

\* 모이 + 다 [moi da] gather  
stem ending  
모이 + 근 + 것

(근-attributive ending of the verb in its future tense 것-incomplete noun)

모일것(after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 근)

The final predicate 모일것 is in the form of 근것.

- (2) Without ending

for example:

빨 리    빨 리\*.  
[bballi bballi]  
quickly quickly

Hurry up!

*explanation:*

\*The final predicate 빨리 is without ending.

- (3) In the form of the instrumental of the noun  
for example:

분 대,    나 를  
[pundae narul  
squad me  
따 라    앞 으 로\*!  
ddara apuro ]  
following forward!

Squad! Forward after  
me!

*explanation:*

\* 앞 + 으 +        로

*noun link-vowel instrumental ending*

The final predicate 앞으로 is in the form of the instrumen-  
tal of the noun 앞.

- (4) By attaching ㅅ [s] to the connecting form of the  
verb ㅏ [a]/ ㅓ [o]/ ㅜ [yo]

for example:

ㅅ.  
[sot]  
stop!

Stop!

*explanation:*

ㅅ + 다 [so da] stop  
*stem ending*

ㅅ + ㅅ

ㅅ(after contracting the syllable ㅅ and the sound ㅅ)

The final predicate ㅅ is formed by attaching ㅅ to the  
connecting form ㅅ of the verb ㅅ다.

## 246 5. The exclamatory sentence

The exclamatory sentence expresses some kind of emo-

tion or feeling.

for example:

오 , 조 국 의	바 다 여 !	Oh, the sea of the
[o chogugui	padayo]	fatherland!
oh the fatherland of the sea		

1) The exclamatory sentence contains the following:

(1) An emotion is expressed differently.

for example:

아 , 동 해 가	보 인 다 !	Ah, we see the East
[a tonghaega	poinda]	Sea!
ah the East Sea is seen!		

The sentence which contains 만세[manse] "hurrah" also belongs to the exclamatory sentence.

for example:

○ 만 세 !	Hurrah!
[manse]	
hurrah!	

○ 조 선 민 주 주 의 인 민	Long live the Demo-
[choson·minjujuui·inmin·	cratic People's
the Democratic People's	Republic of Korea!
공 화 국 만 세 !	
gonghwaguk manse]	
Republic of Korea long live!	

(2) Feelings such as respect, pride, congratulations, conviction and determination are expressed.

for example:

우 리 의 평 양 은	Our Pyongyang is
[uriui pyongyang·un	truly magnificent.
our Pyongyang	
참 으 로 웅 장 하 구 나*!	
chamuro ungjanghaguna]	
truly magnificent!	

*explanation:*

\* 웅장하+다 [ungjangha da] magnificent  
stem ending

웅장하+구나

(구나—low declarative form of the final  
ending of the adjective)

- 2) The characteristics of the exclamatory sentence  
The exclamatory sentence has the emotional  
accent.

for example:

동무들 ! 백두산이  
[tongmudul paekdusani  
comrades! Mt. Paekdu  
보입니다 !  
poimnida]  
is in sight !

Comrades!  
Here is Mt. Paekdu!

In many cases the exclamatory word is in the exclama-  
tory sentence, too.

for example:

오 , 조국여 !  
[o chogugiyō  
oh fatherland!  
영원히 번영하여라\*!  
yong·woni ponyonghayora]  
forever prosper!

Oh, fatherland!  
Prosper forever!

*explanation:*

\* 번영하+다 [ponyongha da] prosper  
stem ending

번영하+여라

(여라—low imperative form of the final ending  
of the verb)

## SIMPLE, COMPOUND AND COMPLEX SENTENCES

247 Sentences are classified into simple, compound and complex sentences according to the structure.

### THE SIMPLE SENTENCE

248 The simple sentence has only one declarative unit.

for example:

저 는 기 사 입 니 다.  
[chonun kisaimnida]  
I an engineer am

I am an **engineer**.

*explanation:*

There is only one declarative unit in the **sentence** 저는 기사입니다.

The simple sentences are classified as follows:

#### 1. The common simple sentence

The common simple sentence consists of the parts of sentence in agreement.

for example:

우 리 는 평 양 으 로  
[urinun pyongyang.uro]  
we Pyongyang to  
갑 니 다.  
kamnida]  
go

We go to Pyongyang.

*explanation:*

우리는, 평양으로 and 갑니다 are the parts of sentence in agreement.

#### 2. The one-member sentence



The one-member sentence consists of one word.

for example:

당신은 갑니까?	Are you going?
[tangsinun kamnigga]	
you go?	
예.	Yes.
[ye]	
yes	

*explanation:*

예 is the one-member sentence.

### 3. The sentence of denomination

This is a sentence in which the object, the phenomenon or state is denominated and affirmed.

for example:

○ 조선로동당	the Workers' Party of
[chosonrodongdang]	Korea
○ 제 13 차 세계 청년 학생 축전	
[chesipsamcha.segye.chongnyonhaksaeng.chukjon]	
the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students	

### 4. The elliptical sentence

for example:

《우리는 래일	
[urinun raeil	“... to Pyongyang by
“we tomorrow	night train tomorrow.”
밤차로 평양으로...》	
pamcharo pyongyang.uro	
night train by Pyongyang to...”	

## THE COMPOUND SENTENCE AND COMPLEX SENTENCE

249 The compound sentence and complex sentence have two

or more declarative units in the sentence.

1. The compound sentence

The compound sentence consists of two or more coordinated simple sentences.

for example:

그 는	어 제	도 착 하 고	He arrived yesterday,
[kunun	oje	tochakago	and I arrived today.
he	yesterday	arrived and	
저 는	오 늘	도 착 했 습 니 다.	
chonun	onul	tochakaetsumnida]	
I	today	arrived	

*explanation:*

The declarative units, 그는 어제 도착하고 and 저는 오늘 도착했습니다, in the sentence 그는 어제 도착하고 저는 오늘 도착했습니다 are connected to each other by the copulative connecting ending 고. But they have the same qualification.

2. The complex sentence

The complex sentence consists of a main declarative unit and one or more subordinate declarative units.

for example:

래 일	날 씨 가	If the weather is
[raeil	nalssiga	fine tomorrow,
tomorrow	the weather	I will leave.
좋 으 면	나 는 떠 나 겠 다.	
choumyon	nanun ddonagetda]	
good when	I leave will	

*explanation:*

The declarative units, 래일 날씨가 좋으면 and 나는 떠나겠다, in the sentence 래일 날씨가 좋으면 나는 떠나겠다 are connected to each other by the connecting ending 면.

## THE ORDER OF THE PRINCIPAL CLAUSE AND THE SUBORDINATE CLAUSE

250 In Korean the subordinate clause always lies before the principal clause.

for example:

래 일	날 씨 가	좋 으 면	When the weather is fine tomorrow, we will leave.
[raeil	nalssiga	choumyon	
tomorrow	the weather	good when	
우 리 는	떠 나 겠 습 니 다.		
urinun	ddonagetsumnida]		
we	leave will		

*explanation:*

The subordinate clause 래일 날씨가 좋으면 lies before the principal clause 우리는 떠나겠습니다 in the sentence 래일 날씨가 좋으면 우리는 떠나겠습니다.

## DIRECT SPEECH

251 Direct speech conveys the original speaker's exact words.

for example:

《가자!》	고* 그는 말 하 였 다.	He said: "Let us go!"
[kaja	ko kunun malhayotda]	
"let us go!"	he said	

*explanation:*

\*고 is the copulative connecting ending.

The original speaker's words in direct speech are connected to the principal clause as follows:

1. The endings such as 고 [ko], 라고 [rago] and 라 [ra] come after the original speaker's words.

for example:

《가자!》고 그는 말하였다.	He said:
[kaja ko kunun malhayotda]	"Let us go!"
"let us go!" he said	

2. The word such as 하고[hago] and 이렇게[iroke] "so" comes after the original speaker's words.

for example:

《가자!》 그는	He said:
[kaja kunun	"Let us go!"
"let us go!" he	
이렇게 말하였다.	
iroke malhayotda]	
so said	

3. The original speaker's words are connected to the principal clause without any means.

for example:

《가자!》 그는 말하였다.	He said:
[kaja kunun malhayotda]	"Let us go!"
"let us go!" he said	

## THE ORDER OF THE ORIGINAL SPEAKER'S WORDS IN DIRECT SPEECH

- 252 The original speaker's words can lie before the principal clause, in the middle of the principal clause or after the principal clause.

1. The original speaker's words come before the principal clause.

for example:

《너는 어디에 가니?》	He asked me:
[nonun odie kani	"Where are you going?"
you which place to go?	

라고	그는	나에게	물었다.
rago	kunun	na·ege	murotda]
	he	me to	asked

*explanation:*

The original speaker's words 《너는 어디에 가니?》 come before the principal clause 그는 나에게 물었다 in the sentence 《너는 어디에 가니?》라고 그는 나에게 물었다.

2. The original speaker's words come in the middle of the principal clause.

*for example:*

그는	나에게	《너는
[kunun	na·ege	nonun
he	me to	"you
어디에		가니?》
odie		kani
which place to		go?"
라고	물었다.	
rago	murotda]	
	asked	

He asked me: "Where are you going?"

*explanation:*

The original speaker's words 《너는 어디에 가니?》 lie in the middle of the principal clause 그는 나에게 물었다 in the sentence 그는 나에게 《너는 어디에 가니?》라고 물었다.

3. The original speaker's words lie after the principal clause.

*for example:*

그는	나에게	물었다.
[kunun	na·ege	murotda
he	me to	asked
《너는	어디에	가니?》
nonun	odie	kani]
"you	which place to	go?"

He asked me:  
"Where are you going?"

*explanation:*

The original speaker's words 《너는 어디에 가니?》 lie

after the principal clause 그는 나에게 물었다.

## INDIRECT SPEECH

253 Indirect speech reports in one's own words what somebody has said.

for example:

그는	오겠다고*	말하였다.	He said that he would come.
[kunun	ogetdago	malhayotda]	
he	come would that	said	

explanation:

\* 오 + 다 [o da] come  
stem ending

오 + 겠 + 다 + 고

(*겠—ending of the future tense 다—low declarative  
form of the final ending of the verb 고—copulative  
connecting ending*)

## THE CHANGING OF DIRECT SPEECH INTO INDIRECT SPEECH

254 Direct speech is changed into indirect speech according to the following rules:

1. Person, time, place and direction of the direct speech are changed in conformity with the reporter's point of view.

for example:

○ Direct speech

그는	《저도*1	래일*2
[kunun	chodo	raeil
he	“I also tomorrow	

He said: “I will also go to the library tom- orrow.”
--

도서관에 가겠습니다\*3»  
 tosogwane kagetsumnida  
 the library to go will"

라고 말하였다.  
 rago malhayotda]  
 said

○ Indirect speech

그는 자기도\*1  
 [kunun chagido  
 he own also  
 다음날\*2 도서관에  
 daumnal tosogwane  
 next day the library to  
 오겠다\*3고  
 ogetdago  
 come would that  
 말하였다.  
 malhayotda]  
 said

He said that he would  
 also come to the  
 library the next day.

*explanation:*

- \*<sub>1</sub> 저도 in direct speech is changed into 자기도 in indirect speech.
- \*<sub>2</sub> 래일 in direct speech is changed into 다음날 in indirect speech.
- \*<sub>3</sub> 가겠습니다 in direct speech is changed into 오겠다 in indirect speech.

2. The different forms of courtesy in direct speech are changed into the low form of courtesy in indirect speech.

for example:

○ Direct speech

그는 《저도 래일  
 [kunun chodo raeil  
 he "I also tomorrow

He said: "I will also  
 go to the library  
 tomorrow."

도서관에 가겠습니다\*》  
 dosogwane kagetsumnida  
 the library to go will”  
 라고 말하였다.  
 rago malhayotda]  
 said

○ Indirect speech

그는 자기도  
 [kunun chagido  
 he own also  
 다음날 도서관에  
 daumnal dosogwane  
 next day the library to  
 오겠다고\* 말하였다.  
 ogetdago malhayotda]  
 come would that said

He said that he would  
 also come to the library  
 the next day.

*explanation:*

\* 가겠습니다 in direct speech is the most deferential form of courtesy. 오겠다 in indirect speech is the low form of courtesy.

3. The forms of address, exclamatory words and some other expressions in direct speech are changed into other expressions.

for example:

○ Direct speech

그는 《아\*, 우리  
 [kunun a uri  
 he “ah our  
 조국은 얼마나  
 chogugun olmana  
 fatherland how  
 아름다운가!》라고  
 arumdaun.ga rago  
 beautiful!”  
 말하였다.  
 malhayotda]  
 said

He said: “Ah, how  
 beautiful our father-  
 land is!”



○ Indirect speech

그 는   우 리   조 국 은  
[kunun uri   chogugun  
he       our   fatherland  
참으로\*   아름답다고  
chamuro   arumdapdago  
truly       beautiful that  
말하였다.  
malhayotda]  
said

He said that our father-  
land was truly beautiful.

*explanation:*

\* The exclamatory word 아 in the direct speech is changed into the adverbial modifier 참으로 in the indirect speech.

for example:

○ Direct speech

그 는   《박동무\*,  
[kunun pakdongmu  
he       "Pak comrade  
모 임 이   끝났습니까?》  
moimi       ggunnatsumnigga  
the meeting finished?"  
라고 물었다.  
rago   murotda]  
asked

He asked: "Comrade  
Pak, is the meeting  
over?"

○ Indirect speech

그 는   박동무에게\*  
[kunun pakdongmuege  
he       Pak comrade to  
모 임 이  
moimi  
the meeting  
끝났는가 고   물 었 다.  
ggunnannun·gago   murotda]  
finished whether asked

He asked Comrade Pak  
whether the meeting  
was over.

*explanation:*

\* 박동무 in direct speech is changed into 박동무에게 in indirect speech.

4. The original speaker's words in more than one sentence in direct speech are changed into one quotation in indirect speech.

for example:

○ Direct speech

《늦었다.      빨리가라!》 고	He said:
[nujotda      bballikara ko	“It is late. Hurry up!”
“late is      fast go!”	
그는      말하였다.	
kunun malhayotda]	
he      said	

○ Indirect speech

늦었으니      빨리 가라고*	He said that I had to
[nujossuni      bballi karago	hurry up      as it was
late is as      fast go! that	late.
그는      말하였다.	
kunun malhayotda]	
he      said	

*explanation:*

- \* The original speaker's words in two sentences, 늦었다 and 빨리 가라 in direct speech are changed into one quotation phrase 늦었으니 빨리 가라고 in indirect speech.

5. The quotation marks in direct speech are omitted in indirect speech. 하고[hago] or 이렇게[iroke] “so” which are used as means of connecting the original speaker's words and the principal clause are also omitted.

for example:

○ Direct speech

《비가 온다.》      그는	He said:
[piga      onda      kunun	“It's raining.”
“rain      comes      ” he	
이렇게      말하였다.	
iroke      malhayotda]	
so      said	

○ Indirect speech

그 는 비 가 온 다 고  
[kunun piga ondago  
he the rain came that  
말 하 였 다.  
malhayotda]  
said

He said that  
it was raining.

*explanation:*

The quotation marks in direct speech are omitted in indirect speech.

The word 이렇게 in direct speech is omitted in indirect speech.

## TABLES OF ENDINGS

TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE CASE  
OF THE NOUN

number of the word to be declined case	singular	plural
nominative	께서[ggeso], 가[ga]/이[i]	께서[ggeso], 이[i]
accusative	를[rul] (군)[l]/ 을[ul]	을[ul]
genitive	의[ui]	의[ui]
dative	께[gge], 에게[ege], 에[e]	께[gge], 에게[ege], 에[e]

locative	에게서[egeso], 에서[eso]	에게서[egeso], 에서[eso]
instrumental	로[ro]	로[ro]
coordinative case	와[wa]/과[gwa]	과[gwa]
vocative	이시여[isiyo], 여[yo]/이여[iyo], 야[ya]/아[a]	이시여[isiyo], 이여[iyo], 아[a]

TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE CASE OF  
THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

number of the word to be declined case	singular	plural
nominative	가[ga]	가[ga]/이[i]
accusative	를[rul](ㄹ)[l]	를[rul](ㄹ)[l]/ 을[ul]
genitive	의[ui]	의[ui]
dative	에게[ege]	에게[ege]
locative	에게서[egeso]	에게서[egeso]
instrumental	로[ro]	로[ro]
coordinative case	와[wa]	와[wa]/과[gwa]
vocative	여[yo]	여[yo]/이여[iyo]

TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE CASE OF THE  
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN WHICH INDICATES PLACE

number of the word to be declined case	singular
nominative	가[ga]
accusative	를[rul] (ㄹ[1])
genitive	의[ui]
dative	에[e]
locative	에서[eso]
instrumental	로[ro]
coordinative case	와[wa]
vocative	여[yo], 야[ya]

TABLE OF THE ENDINGS WHICH ARE USED AS CASE  
ENDINGS

ending case	ending which is used as the case ending
nominative	란[ran]/이란[iran]
dative	더러[doro], 한데[hante]
coordinative case	랑[rang]/이랑[irang], 하고[hago]
others	보다 [boda], 처럼[chorom], 마냥 [manyang], 마다[mada]

TABLE OF THE DECLARATIVE FINAL ENDINGS

courtesy for	the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
the verb, the adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral	1) 습니다[sum nida]/ㅁ니다 [mnida] 2) 탑니다 [damnida] 3) 습디다[sup tida]/ㅁ디다 [ptida] 4) 답디다 [daptida] 5) 아요[ayo]/ 어요[oyo]/ 여요[yoyo]	1) 오[o]/ 소 [so] 2) 다오[dao] 3) 네[ne], 다네[dane] 4) 데[de], 습데[supte]/ ㅁ데[pte] 5) 군[gun], 구려[guryo], 구만[guman], 더군[dogun], 더구만[dogu- man] 6) 지[ji] 7) 아[a]/어[o] /여[yo] 8) 는걸 [nun- gol], 던걸[don·gol], 르걸[lkol] 9) 는데 [nunde] 던데[donde] 10) 더니 [doni], 더라니[dora ni],	1) 다[da], 단다[danda] 2) 도다[doda],  아라[ara]/ 어라[ora]/ 여라[yora] 3) 구나[guna], 더구나 [doguna] 4) 노라[nora], 더라[dora]

		더라니까 [doranigga] 11) 거턴 [godon] 12) 리 [ri], 리라 [rira], 리다 [rida] 13) 다구야 [daguya]	
the adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral		1) L결 [n·gol]  2) L데 [nde]	
the verb		1) 누만 [numan] 2) 르게 [lge], 르래 [llae]	1) 누나 [nuna] 2) 르라 [lla] 3) 마 [ma]
the adjective		르시고 [lsigo]	
the verbal form of the noun, pro- noun or numeral	1) 랍니다 [ramnida] 2) 랍디다 [raptida] 3) 야요 [yayo]	1) 요 [yo] 2) 라오 [rao] 3) 라네 [rane] 4) 로군 [rogun], 로구만 [roguman] 5) 야 [ya] 6) 라구야 [raguya]	1) 라 [ra], 란다 [randa] 2) 로다 [roda] 3) 로구나 [roguna]

TABLE OF THE INTERROGATIVE FINAL  
ENDINGS

courtesy for	the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
the verb, the adjective and the verbal form of	1) 습니까 [sum nigga]/ ㅁ니까[mnigga]	1) 나 [na]	1) 느냐 [nunya] 더냐 [donya] 르소냐 [lsonya]
the noun, pronoun or numeral	2) 답니까 [damnigga] 3) 습디까 [suptigga]/ ㅁ디까 [ptigga] 4) 답디까 [daptigga] 5) 리까 [rigga]	2) 는가 [nun·ga], 던가 [don·ga], 르가 [lga] 3) 다지 [daji] 4) 는지 [nunji], 던지 [donji], 르지 [hji], 르는지 [llunji]	2) 란 [rya] 3) 니 [ni]
the adject- ive and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral		1) ㄴ가 [n·ga] 2) ㄴ지 [nji]	냐 [nya]
the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral	람니까 [ramnigga], 람디까 [raptigga]	라지 [raji]	



TABLE OF THE SUGGESTIVE FINAL ENDINGS  
OF THE VERB

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
1) 하시다[psida] 2) 자구요[jaguyo], 자요[jayo]	1) 세[se] 2) 하세[pse] 3) 자구[jagu]	1) 자[ja] 2) 자꾸나[jagguna]

TABLE OF THE IMPERATIVE FINAL  
ENDINGS OF THE VERB

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
1) 심시오[sipsio], 세요[seyo] 2) 라구요[raguyo], 라요[rayo]	1) 시오[sio] 2) 게[ge] 3) 구려[guryo], 라구[ragu]	1) 라[ra] 2) 아라[ara]/어라 [ora]/여라[yora] 3) 려무나[ryomuna] 4) 려[ryom], 려아[ryoma]

TABLE OF THE CONNECTING ENDINGS OF THE  
VERB, ADJECTIVE OR VERBAL FORM OF THE  
NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

classification		connecting ending
coordinative	copulative	(1) 고[go] (2) 며 [myo], 면서[myonso] (3) 겠더러[lbbundoro] (4) 거니와[goniwa], 려니와[ryoniwa]

	adversative	(1) 나[na], 되[doe] (2) 지만[jiman], 지마는[jimanun], 건만[gonman], 건마는[gonmanun], 련만[ryonman], 련마는[ryonmanun] (3) ㄴ데[nde], 는데[nunde], 던데[donde] (4) ㄴ바[nba], 는바[nunba]
	disjunctive	(1) 나[na], 건[gon], 든[dun] (2) 거나[gona], 든지[dunji], 든가[dun-ga] (3) 거니[goni], ㄹ라[lla]
subordinative	condition	(1) 면[myon], 거든[godun], 느라면[nuramyon], 더라면[doramyon], ㄹ라면[llamyon], 자면[jamyon] (2) 아도[ado]/어도[odo]/여도[yodo], 더라도[dorado] (3) ㄹ 망정[lmangjong], ㄹ 지언정[ljionjong], ㄹ 지라도[ljirado] (4) 기로[giro], 기로서니[girosoni] (5) ㄴ들[ndul], 던들[dondul] (6) 나마[nama] (7) 아야[aya]/어야[oya]/여야[yoya]
	cause	(1) 므로[muro] (2) 니[ni], 니까[nigga], 느라니[nurani], 느라니까[nuranigga]

		(3) 더니[doni] (4) ㄴ만큼[nmankum], ㄴ즉[njuk], ㄴ만큼[nunmankum], ㄴ니만큼[nunimankum], 던만큼[donmankum] (5) 기에[gie], 길래[gillae], 거늘[gonul]
	order	(1) 다[da], 다가[daga] (2) 자[ja] (3) 고서[goso]
	method or means	아[a]/어[o]/여[yo]
	purpose or intention	(1) 려[ryo], 려고[ryogol], 자고[jago], 고저[gojo], 느라고[nurago] (2) 러[ro]
	negation	지[ji]

TABLE OF THE ATTRIBUTIVE ENDINGS OF THE VERB

attributive ending of the verb	tense
ㄴ[nun]	present
ㄴ[n]	past
던[don]	past continuous
ㄹ[l]	future

TABLE OF THE ATTRIBUTIVE ENDINGS OF  
THE ADJECTIVE

attributive ending of the adjective	tense
ㄴ[n]	present
던[don]	past continuous
ㄹ[l]	future

TABLE OF THE ATTRIBUTIVE ENDINGS OF THE  
VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN  
OR NUMERAL

attributive ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral	tense
ㄴ[n]	present
던[don]	past continuous
ㄹ[l]	future

TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE ADVERBIAL  
MODIFIER OF THE VERB OR ADJECTIVE

ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective
1. 게 [ge], 도록[dorok] 2. 듯[dut], 듯이[dusi] 3. ㄹ수록[lsurok]

TABLE OF THE TENSE ENDINGS

tense name	present	past	future
tense ending	zero ending	았[at], 었[ot], 었[jot]	겠[get]

TABLE OF THE ENDING OF RESPECT

ending of respect	시[si]
-------------------	-------

TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE VOICE

form ending	passive form	causative form
ending of the voice	이[i], 히[hi], 기[gi], 리[ri],  기우[giu], 히우[hiu], 리우[riu], 이우[iu]	이[i], 히[hi], 기[gi], 리[ri], 구[gu], 추[chu], 우[u], 기우[giu], 히우[hiu], 리우[riu], 이우[iu], 으키[uki], 이키[iki]

TABLE OF THE EXCHANGING ENDINGS

for ending	verbal form	substantive
exchanging ending	이[i]	ㅁ[m], 기[gi]

TABLE OF THE AUXILIARY ENDINGS

meaning \ ending	auxiliary ending
relation of inclusion	도[do] also, 마저[majo] also, 조차[jocha] also
relation of restriction	만[man] only
relation of limitation	부터[buto] from, 까지[ggaji] till
relation of indication	는[nun](ㄴ[n])/은[un]
relation of emphasis	야[ya]/이야[iya]
relation of concession	나[na]/이나[ina], 나마[nama]/이나마[inama], 라도[rado]/이라도[irado]
relation of negation	커녕[konyong]

## SUBJECT INDEX

The numerals indicate the paragraphs and others indicate the pages.

- absolute tenses 162 ..... 216
- accusative 18 ..... 80
- active voice 175 ..... 230
- adjective 76 ..... 124
- adverb 126 ..... 175
- adverbial modifier 209 ..... 286
- adversative connecting endings 131 ..... 181
- agreement of parts of sentence 229 ..... 303
- agreement in expressions of respect and  
courtesy 230 ..... 304
- agreement in the adverbial modifier and other  
parts of sentence 231 ..... 307
- agreement in interrogative words and other  
parts of sentence 232 ..... 307
- agreement in the forms of address and other  
parts of sentence 233 ..... 308
- appended modifier 221 ..... 298
- attribute 211 ..... 289
- attributive form of the verb 147 ..... 202
- attributive form of the adjective 149 ..... 206
- attributive form of the verbal form of the  
noun, pronoun or numeral 151 ..... 208
- auxiliary endings 185 ..... 242
- cardinal numbers 115 ..... 162
- causative form 177 ..... 233
- change of sounds 12 ..... 24
- changing of direct speech into indirect  
speech 254 ..... 345

• classification of the predicates 202 .....	269
• compound sentence and complex sentence 249 .....	340
• conjunctive 219 .....	296
• connecting endings of condition 134 .....	184
• connecting endings of cause 135 .....	186
• connecting endings of order 136 .....	188
• connecting endings of method or means 137 .....	189
• connecting endings of purpose or intention 138 .....	190
• connecting ending of negation 139 .....	191
• connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 128 .....	178
• consonants 8 .....	16
• coordinative case 23 .....	85
• coordinative connecting endings 129 .....	178
• copulative connecting endings 130 .....	179
• counting words 117 .....	166
• courtesy 168 .....	223
• courtesy of the final ending of the verb 74 .....	122
• courtesy of the final ending of the adjective 81 .....	129
• courtesy of the final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 88 .....	136
• dative 20 .....	81
• declarative final endings to the verb 90 .....	137
• declarative final endings to the adjective 92 .....	141
• declarative final endings to the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 94 .....	143
• declarative sentence 242 .....	321
• declension of a word to which a sense of respect is given 25 .....	87



• declension of a word which ends in a vowel 26 .....	87
• declension of a word which ends in a consonant 27 .....	88
• declension of a noun in the plural 28 .....	89
• declension of a word in the plural to which a sense of respect is given 29 .....	90
• declension of a word in the plural which indicates an animate being 30 .....	90
• declension of a word in the plural which indicates an inanimate being 31 .....	91
• declension of the personal pronoun 40 .....	98
• declension of the personal pronoun 저[cho] "I" 41 .....	98
• declension of the personal pronoun 나[na] "I" 42 .....	99
• declension of the personal pronoun 저희[chohui] "we" 43 .....	99
• declension of the personal pronoun 우리[uri] "we" 44 .....	100
• declension of the personal pronoun 너[no] "you" 45 .....	101
• declension of the personal pronoun 너희[nohui] "you" 46 .....	102
• declension of the noun 당신[tangsin] "you" 47 .....	103
• declension of 그[ku] "he" 48 .....	104
• declension of 그 여자[ku nyoja] "she" 49 .....	105
• declension of 그것[kugot] "it" 50 .....	105
• declension of 그들[kudul] "they" 51 .....	105
• declension of 그 녀자들[ku nyojadul] "they" 52 .....	106

• declension of 그것들[kugotdul] "they" 53 .....	106
• declension of the demonstrative pronoun which indicates an object isn't 60 .....	111
• declension of the substantively used demonstrative pronoun 그[ku] "he" 61 .....	112
• declension of 그들[kudul] "they" 62 .....	112
• declension of 이들[idul] "these men" 63 .....	113
• declension of the demonstrative pronoun which indicates the place 64 .....	113
• declension of the interrogative pronoun 101 .....	151
• demonstrative pronoun 57 .....	109
• difference between the auxiliary endings and the case endings 186 .....	243
• diphthongs 5 .....	13
• direct speech 251 .....	342
• disjunctive connecting endings 132 .....	183
• division of the demonstrative pronouns 58 .....	110
• division of the verbal forms of the noun, pronoun or numeral 84 .....	132
• division of the pre-nouns 144 .....	201
• division of the auxiliary endings 187 .....	244
• endings are attached one by one 192 .....	254
• endings which are used as case endings 189 .....	248
• exchange of sounds 196 .....	260
• exchanging ending 180 .....	237
• exchanging ending ㅇ[i] 181 .....	237
• exchanging endings □[m], 기[gi] 182 .....	238
• exclamatory word 217 .....	295
• exclamatory sentence 246 .....	336
• expanded part of sentence 200 .....	268
• expanded part of sentence 222 .....	299
• expanded predicate 223 .....	299

● expanded subject 224 .....	300
● expanded object 225 .....	300
● expanded quotation 226 .....	301
● expanded adverbial modifier 227 .....	302
● expanded attribute 228 .....	302
● expression of the voice in another way 178 .....	234
● expression of the object 206 .....	282
● expression of the quotation 208 .....	284
● expression of the adverbial modifier 210 .....	286
● expression of the attribute 212 .....	290
● expression of the form of address 214 .....	293
● expression of the parenthesis 216 .....	294
● expression of the exclamatory word 218 .....	295
● expression of the conjunctive 220 .....	297
● final ending of the verb 72 .....	120
● final ending of the adjective 79 .....	128
● final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 86 .....	134
● final form of the verb 71 .....	120
● final form of the adjective 78 .....	127
● final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 85 .....	133
● form of address 213 .....	292
● form of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective 153 .....	211
● formation of the adverb from the adjective 127 .....	177
● forms of the verb 70 .....	117
● forms of the adjective 77 .....	124
● gender and article aren't 14 .....	78
● genitive 19 .....	80
● genitive of the personal pronoun 54 .....	107

● he, she, it, they 39 .....	97
● imperative final endings of the verb 121 .....	172
● imperative sentence 245 .....	333
● incomplete noun 118 .....	168
● indirect speech 253 .....	345
● infinitive 69 .....	117
● instrumental 22 .....	83
● interjection 146 .....	202
● interrogative final endings to the verb 102 .....	151
● interrogative final endings to the adjective 104 .....	153
● interrogative final endings to the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 106 .....	156
● interrogative pronoun 99 .....	147
● interrogative sentence 243 .....	328
● intonation of a sentence 13 .....	31
● kinds of sentences 241 .....	320
● Korean alphabet 2 .....	12
● Korean alphabet table 1 .....	10
● link- vowels ㅇ [i] and ㅜ [u] 194 .....	256
● locative 21 .....	82
● mood of the final ending of the verb 73 .....	121
● mood of the final ending of the adjective 80 .....	128
● mood of the final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 87 .....	135
● nominative 17 .....	79
● numeral 114 .....	162
● object 205 .....	279
● order of the predicate 33 .....	93
● order of the subject 34 .....	93
● order of the genitive 35 .....	94
● order of the object 36 .....	94

• order of the genitive of the personal pronoun 56 .....	108
• order of the adjectively used demonstrative pronoun 66 .....	115
• order of the attribute 67 .....	116
• order of the adverbial modifier 68 .....	116
• order of the declarative final form of the verb in the sentence 96 .....	145
• order of the declarative final form of the adjective in the sentence 97 .....	146
• order of the declarative final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral in the sentence 98 .....	146
• order of the interrogative final form of the verb in the sentence 108 .....	158
• order of the interrogative final form of the adjective in the sentence 109 .....	159
• order of the interrogative final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral in the sentence 110 .....	159
• order of the form of address in the sentence 112 .....	161
• order of the interjection in the sentence 113 .....	161
• order of the suggestive final form of the verb in the sentence 123 .....	173
• order of the imperative final form of the verb in the sentence 124 .....	174
• order of the adjectival cardinal number 125 .....	174
• order of the connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 141 .....	194
• order of the attributive form of the verb 155 .....	213

• order of the attributive form of the adjective 156 .....	213
• order of the attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 157 .....	214
• order of the form of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective 158 .....	214
• order of the pre-noun 159 .....	215
• order of the interjection in the sentence 160 .....	215
• order of the ending of the tense 172 .....	228
• order of the ending of respect 173 .....	229
• order of the principal clause and the subordinate clause 250 .....	342
• order of the original speaker's words in direct speech 252 .....	343
• ordinal numbers 116 .....	164
• pairs of endings 193 .....	254
• parenthesis 215 .....	293
• parts of sentence 197 .....	266
• passive voice 176 .....	231
• personal pronouns 37 .....	95
• plural of the noun 15 .....	78
• plural ending 16 .....	78
• position of the interrogative pronoun in the sentence 111 .....	160
• position of the adverb 142 .....	194
• position of the predicate 234 .....	309
• position of the subject 235 .....	309
• position of the object 236 .....	310
• position of the quotation 237 .....	312
• position of the adverbial modifier 238 .....	313
• position of the attribute 239 .....	315
• position of the form of address, exclamatory	

word, parenthesis, conjunctive or appended	
modifier 240 .....	319
• predicate 201 .....	269
• pre-noun 143 .....	200
• pronunciation of vowels 6 .....	13
• pronunciation of consonants 9 .....	16
• quotation 207 .....	283
• relation between respect and courtesy 169 .....	225
• relation in the meaning between the connecting predicate and the final predicate 203 .....	273
• relative tenses 163 .....	218
• respect 167 .....	223
• simple vowels 4 .....	13
• simple part of sentence and expanded part of sentence 198 .....	267
• simple part of sentence 199 .....	267
• simple, compound and complex sentences 247 .....	339
• simple sentence 248 .....	339
• stem and ending 191 .....	251
• subdivision of the final endings of the verb 75 .....	123
• subdivision of the final endings of the adjective 82 .....	130
• subdivision of the final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 89 .....	137
• subject 204 .....	276
• subordinative connecting endings 133 .....	184
• suggestive final endings of the verb 119 .....	170
• suggestive sentence 244 .....	331
• syllables 11 .....	22

- table of the endings of the case of the noun  
32 ..... 92
- table of the endings of the case of the  
personal pronoun 55 ..... 108
- table of the demonstrative pronouns 59 ..... 111
- table of the endings of the case of the demon-  
strative pronoun which indicates place 65 ..... 115
- table of the declarative final endings of the  
verb 91 ..... 140
- table of the declarative final endings of the  
adjective 93 ..... 143
- table of the declarative final endings of the  
verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral  
95 ..... 145
- table of the interrogative pronouns 100 ..... 150
- table of the interrogative final endings of the  
verb 103 ..... 153
- table of the interrogative final endings of the  
adjective 105 ..... 155
- table of the interrogative final endings of the  
verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral  
107 ..... 158
- table of the suggestive final endings of the  
verb 120 ..... 171
- table of the imperative final endings of the  
verb 122 ..... 173
- table of the connecting endings of the verb,  
adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun  
or numeral 140 ..... 192
- table of the attributive endings of the verb  
148 ..... 206
- table of the attributive endings of the



adjective 150 .....	208
● table of the attributive endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 152 .....	210
● table of the endings of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective 154 .....	213
● table of the tense endings 166 .....	222
● table of the ending of respect 171 .....	228
● table of endings of the voice 179 .....	236
● table of the exchanging endings 184 .....	242
● table of auxiliary endings 188 .....	248
● table of the endings which are used as case endings 190 .....	251
● tenses 161 .....	216
● tenses which are expressed by other methods 165 .....	221
● use of the pre-noun 145 .....	201
● use of the exchanging endings 183 .....	240
● using tense endings 164 .....	219
● verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 83 .....	130
● vocal harmony 195 .....	258
● vocative 24 .....	85
● voice 174 .....	230
● vowels 3 .....	13
● words which have the meaning of respect 170 .....	226
● writing of vowels 7 .....	16
● writing of consonants 10 .....	22
● you 당신[tangsin] 38 .....	97

## ABBREVIATIONS :

<i>a</i> adjective	<i>int</i> interjection
<i>ad</i> adverb	<i>loc</i> locative
<i>ad fo</i> adverbial form	<i>n</i> noun
<i>att fo</i> attributive form	<i>num</i> numeral
<i>aux end</i> auxiliary ending	<i>pass</i> passive
<i>causat v</i> causative verb	<i>pl</i> plural
<i>con fo</i> connecting form	<i>pre-n</i> pre-noun
<i>dat</i> dative	<i>pron</i> pronoun
<i>end</i> ending	<i>sg</i> singular
<i>gen</i> genitive	<i>v</i> verb
<i>imp fo</i> imperative form	<i>vi</i> intransitive verb
<i>incomp n</i> incomplete noun	<i>vt</i> transitive verb
<i>inst</i> instrumental	

## KOREAN- ENGLISH VOCABULARY

### ㄱ [k]

가극 [kaguk] <i>n</i> opera	가족 [kajok] <i>n</i> family
가늘다 [kanulda] <i>a</i> thin	가지 [kaji] <i>n</i> branch
가능성 [kanungsong] <i>n</i> possibility	가지다 [kajida] <i>vt</i> have
가다 [kada] <i>vi</i> go	가제 [kaje] <i>n</i> gauze
가두배추 [kadubaechu] <i>n</i> cab-	가치담배 [kachidambae] <i>n</i> ciga-
가득하다 [kadukada] <i>a</i> full	가책 [kachaek] <i>n</i> remorse
가령 [karyong] <i>ad</i> if	가까이 [kaggai] <i>ad</i> near
가르치다 [karuchida] <i>vt</i> teach	가을 [kaul] <i>n</i> autumn
가르침 [karuchim] <i>n</i> teaching	각서 [kakso] <i>n</i> note
가방 [kabang] <i>n</i> bag	각서교환 [kaksogyohwan] <i>n</i> ex-
가볍다 [kabyopda] <i>a</i> light	change of notes
가수 [kasu] <i>n</i> singer	간고하다 [kan·gohada] <i>a</i> arduous
가슴 [kasum] <i>n</i> breast	간장 [kanjang] <i>n</i> soy
가장 [kajang] <i>ad</i> most	간판 [kanpan] <i>n</i> sign
가져다주다 [kajyodajuda] <i>vt</i> bring	간호원 [kanhowon] <i>n</i> nurse
가져오다 [kajyooda] <i>vt</i> bring; fetch	간이식당 [kanisikdang] <i>n</i> snack

bar  
 갈다 [kalda] *vt* till  
 갈라지다 [kallajida] *vi* divide  
 갈림길 [kallimgil] *n* forked road  
 감기 [kamgi] *n* cold  
 감기 들다 [kamgi dulda] *phrase*  
     catch cold  
 감다 [kamda] *vt* wind  
 감사 [kamsa] *n* thank  
 감탄하다 [kamtanhada] *vi* admire  
 값 [kap] *n* price  
 강 [kang] *n* river  
 강냉이 [kangnaeng·i] *n* maize  
 강령 [kangryong] *n* programme  
 강물 [kangmul] *n* water of river  
 강자 [kangjwa] *n* chair  
 강철 [kangchol] *n* steel  
 강토 [kangto] *n* territory  
 강연 [kang·yon] *n* lecture  
 같다 [katda] *a* same  
 같이 [kachi] *ad* as  
 거기 [kogi] *pron* that place  
 거기에 [kogie] *pron* *dat* there  
 거대하다 [kodaehada] *a* great  
 거리 [kori] *n* street  
 거절하다 [kojohlada] *vt* refuse  
 거주지 [kojuji] *n* place of resid-  
 거주하다 [kojuhada] *vt* live [ence  
 거의 [kou] *ad* almost  
 건강 [kon·gang] *n* health  
 건강하다 [kon·ganghada] *a* healthy  
 건너가는곳 [konnoganun·got] *n*  
     crossing  
 건너다 [konnuda] *vi, vt* cross  
 건능길 [konnumgil] *n* crosswalk  
 건설 [konsol] *n* construction  
 건설되다 [konsoldoeda] *vi* be built

건설하다 [konsolhada] *vt* build  
 걷다 [kotda] *vi* walk  
 걸다 [kolda] *vt* hang  
 걸리다 [kollida] *vi* take, need  
 걸상 [kolsang] *n* chair  
 검다 [komda] *a* black  
 것 [kot] *incomp n* thing  
 겨우 [kyou] *ad* barely, hardly  
 겨울 [kyoul] *n* winter  
 견학 [kyonhak] *n* observation-  
     study  
 견해 [kyonhae] *n* view  
 결과 [kyolgwa] *n* result  
 결심하다 [kyolsimhada] *vi, vt*  
     determine  
 결정적 [kyoljongjok] *n* decisive  
 결정하다 [kyoljonghada] *vt* decide  
 결코 [kyolko] *ad* never  
 결합 [kyolhap] *n* combination  
 겸 [kyom] *ad* concurrently  
 겸손하다 [kyomsonhada] *a* modest  
 경공업 [kyong·gong·op] *n* light  
     industry  
 경기장 [kyong·gijang] *n* stadium  
 경제 [kyongje] *n* economy  
 경제적 [kyongjejok] *n* economic  
 경축하다 [kyongchukada] *vt* con-  
     gratulate  
 경치 [kyongchi] *n* scenery  
 경험 [kyonghom] *n* experience  
 경음악 [kyong·umak] *n* light  
     music [respect  
 경애하다 [kyong·aehada] *vi, vt*  
 겪다 [kyokda] *vt* experience  
 고기 [kogi] *n* meat  
 고귀하다 [kogwihada] *a* precious  
 고동치다 [kodongchida] *vi* pulsate

고르다 [koruda] *vt* assort  
 고맙다 [komapda] *a* thankful  
 고상하다 [kosanghada] *a* lofty  
 고전음악 [kojonumak] *n* classical music  
 고치다 [kochida] *vt* repair  
 고향 [kohyang] *n* native place  
 고요하다 [koyohada] *a* still  
 곧 [kot] *ad* immediately; namely  
 곧다 [kotda] *a* straight  
 곧바로 [kotbaro] *ad* straight  
 골 [kol] *n* valley  
 골동품 [koldongpum] *n* curio  
 골짜기 [koljjagi] *n* valley  
 곱다 [kopda] *a* beautiful  
 곳 [kot] *n* place  
 공 [kong] *n* ball  
 공기 [kong.gi] *n* air  
 공개적 [kong.gaejok] *n* open  
 공민 [kongmin] *n* citizen  
 공부 [kongbu] *n* study  
 공부하다 [kongbuhada] *vt* study  
 공산주의 [kongsanjuui] *n* communism [munist  
 공산주의자 [kongsanjuuija] *n* com-  
 공산주의적 [kongsanjuuijok] *n* communist  
 공식적 [kongsikjok] *n* official  
 공장 [kongjang] *n* factory  
 공장대학 [kongjangdaehak] *n* university-level factory college  
 공장대학생 [kongjangdaehaksae  
 ng] *n* student at a university-level factory college  
 공포 [kongpo] *n* fear  
 공화국 [konghwaguk] *n* republic  
 공업 [kong.op] *n* industry

공업국가 [kong.opgukga] *n* industrial state  
 공업화 [kong.opwa] *n* industrialization  
 공연 [kong.yon] *n* performance  
 공연순서 [kong.yonsunso] *n* programme [form  
 공연하다 [kong.yonhada] *vt* perform  
 공원 [kong.won] *n* park  
 교과서 [kyogwaso] *n* textbook  
 교시 [kyosi] *n* instruction, teaching  
 교실 [kyosil] *n* classroom  
 교장 [kyojang] *n* principal  
 교조주의 [kyojojuui] *n* dogmatism  
 교통 [kyotong] *n* communication  
 교훈 [kyohun] *n* lesson  
 교환 [kyohwan] *n* exchange  
 교환수 [kyohwansu] *n* telephone operator [change  
 교환하다 [kyohwanhada] *vt* exchange  
 교양 [kyoyang] *n* education  
 교양자 [kyoyangja] *n* educator  
 교양하다 [kyoyanghada] *vt* educate  
 교육 [kyoyuk] *n* education  
 교육하다 [kyoyukada] *vt* educate  
 교육학 [kyoyukak] *n* pedagogy  
 교예 [kyoye] *n* circus  
 교예극장 [kyoyegukjang] *n* circus  
 교원 [kyowon] *n* teacher  
 구 [ku] *num* nine  
 구강과 의사 [kugang.gwauisa] *n* dentist  
 구경 [kugyong] *n* sightseeing  
 구경하다 [kugyonghada] *vt* see  
 구라파 [kurapa] *n* Europe

구라파음식 [kurapaumsik] *n* European food  
 구락부 [kurakbu] *n* club (house)  
 구름 [kurum] *n* cloud 「guish  
 구별하다 [kubyolhada] *vt* distin-  
 구십 [kusip] *num* ninety  
 구호 [kuho] *n* slogan  
 구월 [kuwol] *n* September  
 국 [kuk] *n* soup  
 국가 [kukga] *n* state, country  
 국기 [kukgi] *n* national flag  
 국방 [kukbang] *n* national de-  
 국수 [kuku] *n* noodle 「fence  
 국적 [kukjok] *n* nationality  
 국제적 [kukjejok] *n* interna-  
 tional 「tionalism  
 국제주의 [kukjejuui] *n* interna-  
 국제주의적 [kukjejuuijok] *n* in-  
 ternational  
 국제친선전람관 [kukje·chinson-  
 jollamgwang] *n* International  
 Friendship Exhibition  
 국제우편국 [kukje·upyon·guk] *n*  
 International Post Office  
 군 [kun] *n* county  
 군국주의 [kun·gukjuui] *n* milit-  
 arism 「litarist  
 군국주의자 [kun·gukjuuija] *n* mi-  
 군관 [kun·gwan] *n* officer  
 군대 [kundae] *n* army  
 군사적 [kunsajok] *n* military  
 군중 [kunjung] *n* masses  
 군중대회 [kunjungdaehoe] *n*  
 mass meeting  
 군빵 [kunbbang] *n* toast  
 군인 [kunin] *n* army man  
 굳게 [kutge] *a* *ad* *fo* firmly  
 굳다 [kutda] *a* hard, firm

굴 [kul] *n* oyster  
 굴다 [kulda] *vi* roll  
 굴복하다 [kulbokada] *vi* submit  
 굴하다 [kulhada] *vi* submit  
 굵다 [kukda] *a* thick  
 궁전 [kungjon] *n* palace  
 규률 [kyuyul] *n* discipline  
 규정 [kyujong] *n* rules  
 귤 [kyul] *n* orange  
 그 [ku] *pron* he; that  
 그것 [kugot] *incomp* *n* with  
*pron* it, that 「she  
 그 여자 [kunyoya] *n* with *pron*  
 그들 [kudul] *pron* they  
 그대 [kudae] *pron* you  
 그러나 [kurona] *ad* but  
 그러니까 [kuronigga] *a* *con* *fo*  
 therefore  
 그런데 [kuronde] *a* *con* *fo* but  
 그렇게 [kuroke] *a* *ad* *fo* so  
 그렇다 [kurota] *a* so 「but  
 그렇지만 [kurochiman] *a* *con* *fo*  
 그리고 [kurigo] *v* *con* *fo* and  
 그림 [kurim] *n* picture 「book  
 그림책 [kurimchaek] *n* picture  
 그림엽서 [kurimyopso] *n* picture  
 postcard  
 그저께 [kujogge] *n* the day be-  
 fore yesterday  
 그뿐아니라 [kubbunanira] *phrase*  
 besides  
 극장 [kukjang] *n* theatre  
 근로자 [kulloja] *n* working people  
 근본 [kunbon] *n* foundation  
 글 [kul] *n* letter; sentence  
 글자 [kulja] *n* letter  
 글씨 [kulssi] *n* handwriting.

클쎄 [kulsse] *int* perhaps  
 금 [kum] *n* gold  
 금강산 [kumgangsān] *n* Mt. Kumgang  
 금요일 [kumyoil] *n* Friday  
 급행열차 [kupaengryolcha] *n* ex-  
 기계 [kigye] *n* machine [*press*]  
 기계화하다 [kigyehwahada] *vt*  
 mechanize  
 기관 [kigwan] *n* organ  
 기념 [kinyom] *n* commemoration  
 기념관 [kinyomgwan] *n* memori-  
 al house  
 기념비 [kinyombi] *n* monument  
 기념품 [kinyompum] *n* souvenir  
 기능 [kinung] *n* function  
 기다 [kida] *vi* crawl  
 기다리다 [kidarida] *vt* wait  
 기다림칸 [kidarimkan] *n* waiting  
 room  
 기록 [kirok] *n* record  
 기름 [kirum] *n* oil  
 기발 [kibbal] *n* flag  
 기본 [kibon] *n* basis  
 기사 [kisa] *n* engineer; article  
 기술 [kisul] *n* technique  
 기술자 [kisulja] *n* technician  
 기술혁명 [kisulhyongmyong] *n*  
 technical revolution  
 기자 [kija] *n* journalist  
 기적 [kijok] *n* wonder  
 기지 [kiji] *n* base  
 기차 [kicha] *n* train  
 기초 [kicho] *n* foundation, basis  
 기치 [kichi] *n* flag  
 기침 [kichim] *n* cough  
 기침하다 [kichimhada] *vi* cough  
 기후 [kihu] *n* climate

기꺼이 [kiggoi] *ad* with pleasure  
 기쁘다 [kibbuda] *a* joyful; glad  
 기쁨 [kibbum] *n* joy  
 기어이 [kioi] *ad* at any cost  
 기업소 [kiopso] *n* enterprise  
 기원 [kiwon] *n* era  
 긴양말 [kinyangmal] *n* stockings  
 길 [kil] *n* road  
 길다 [kilda] *a* long  
 길이 [kiri] *n* length  
 김 [kim] *n* steam  
 김일성경기장 [Kim Il Sung gyong  
 .gijang] *n* Kim Il Sung  
 Stadium  
 깊다 [kipda] *a* deep  
 깊이<sup>1</sup> [kipi] *n* depth  
 깊이<sup>2</sup> [kipi] *ad* deeply  
 개<sup>1</sup> [kae] *incomp* *n* piece  
 개<sup>2</sup> [kae] *n* dog  
 개다 [kaeda] *vi* clear up  
 개선문 [kaesonmun] *n* Arch of  
 Triumph  
 개이다 [kaeida] *vi* clear up  
 개인 [kaein] *n* individual  
 개인용품 [kaeyongpum] *n* per-  
 sonal effects  
 계급 [kyegup] *n* class  
 계단 [kyedan] *n* stairs  
 계단식 승강기 [kyedansik sung-  
 gang-gi] *n* escalator  
 계산대 [kyesandae] *n* counter  
 계산서 [kyesaŋso] *n* account,  
 bill  
 계산하다 [kyesanhada] *vt* count  
 계속 [kyesok] *n* continuation  
 계속하다 [kyesokada] *vt* continue  
 계승자 [kyesungja] *n* successor  
 계시다 [kyesida] *vi* there be,

be (in the meaning of respect)  
계절 [kyejol] *n* season  
계획 [kyehoek] *n* plan  
계약 [kyeyak] *n* contract  
괴뢰 [koeroe] *n* puppet [army  
괴뢰군 [koeroegun] *n* puppet  
괴뢰정권 [koeroejong·gwon] *n*  
puppet regime [gnificent  
광장하다 [koengjanghada] *a* ma-  
귀 [kwi] *n* ear  
귀국 [kwiguk] *n* repatriation  
귀중품 [kwijungpum] *n* jewelry  
귀중하다 [kwijunghada] *a* pre-  
cious  
귀엽다 [kwiypoda] *a* precious  
과수원 [kwasuwon] *n* orchard  
과자 [kwaja] *n* cake  
과학 [kwahak] *n* science  
과학자 [kwahakja] *n* scientist  
과학원 [kwahagwon] *n* academy  
of sciences  
과업 [kwaop] *n* task  
과일 [kwail] *n* fruit  
과일즙 [kwailjup] *n* fruit juice  
과일청량음료 [kwail·chongryang·

umryo] *n* sherbet  
관개 [kwan·gae] *n* irrigation  
관계 [kwan·gye] *n* relation  
관광객 [kwan·gwang·gaek] *n*  
tourist  
관광지 [kwan·gwangji] *n* tourist  
resort  
관광안내소 [kwan·gwang·annaeso]  
*n* tourist information of-  
fice  
관람자 [kwallamja] *n* spectator  
관리위원회 [kwalliwiwonhoe] *n*  
management board  
관세 [kwanse] *n* customs  
관찰하다 [kwanchalhada] *vt*  
observe [about  
관하여 [kwanhayo] *v* *con fo*  
광고 [kwang·go] *n* announcement  
광부 [kwangbu] *n* miner  
광산 [kwangsan] *n* mine  
광장 [kwangjang] *n* square  
권 [kwon] *n* book  
권리 [kwolli] *n* right  
권위 [kwonwi] *n* authority

## L [n]

나 [na] *pron* I  
나가는곳 [naganun·got] *n* exit  
나가다 [nagada] *vi* go out, go  
나누다 [nanuda] *vt* divide  
나라 [nara] *n* country  
나르다 [naruda] *vt* carry  
나무 [namu] *n* tree  
나타나다 [natanada] *vi* appear  
나팔 [napal] *n* trumpet

나쁘다 [nabbuda] *a* bad  
나아가다 [naagada] *vi* advance  
나이 [nai] *n* age  
난곳 [nan·got] *n* birthplace  
난날 [nannal] *n* date of birth  
날 [nal] *n* day  
날다 [nalda] *vi* fly  
날리다<sup>1</sup> [nallida] *causat v* let fly  
날리다<sup>2</sup> [nallida] *pass* be flown

날짜 [nalja] *n* date  
 날씨 [nalssi] *n* weather  
 남 [nam] *n* another person  
 남다 [namda] *vi* remain  
 남새 [namsae] *n* vegetables  
 남자 [namja] *n* man, male  
  
 남편 [nampyon] *n* husband [boy  
 남학생 [namhaksaeng] *n* school  
 남(쪽) [nam(jjok)] *n* south  
 낫다<sup>1</sup> [natda] *vi* recover  
 낫다<sup>2</sup> [natda] *a* better  
 낮 [nat] *n* daytime; midday  
 낮다 [natda] *a* low  
 낮차 [natcha] *n* day train  
 너 [no] *pron* you  
 너희 [nohui] *pron* you  
 널리 [nolli] *ad* widely  
 넓게 [nolge] *a ad* fo widely  
 넓다 [nopda] *a* wide [over  
 넘겨주다 [nomgyojuda] *vt* hand  
 넘쳐수행하다 [nomchyosuhaengha  
 da] *v with con* fo overfulfil  
 넘치다 [nomchida] *vi* overflow  
 넓적다리 [nopjokdari] *n* thigh  
 녀가수 [nyogasu] *n* songstress  
 녀성 [nyosong] *n* woman  
 녀자 [nyoja] *n* woman, female  
 녀자접대원 [nyojajopdaewon] *n*  
 waitress, stewardess  
 녀자음악가 [nyojaumakga] *n* wo-  
 man musician [girl  
 녀학생 [nyohaksaeng] *n* school  
 년 [nyon] *n* year  
 년간 [nyon.gan] *n* year  
 년간계획 [nyon.gan.gyehoek] *n*  
 annual plan

념원하다 [nyomwonhada] *vt* wish  
 노랗다 [norata] *a* yellow  
 노래 [noraе] *n* song  
 녹다 [nokda] *vi* melt  
 논 [non] *n* rice-field  
 놀다 [nolda] *vi* play  
 놀음 [norum] *n* play  
 놀이감 [noriggam] *n* toy  
 놈 [nom] *n* rogue  
 농막 [nongmak] *n* farmer's hut  
 농막집 [nongmakjip] *n* farmer's  
 hut  
 농민 [nongmin] *n* farmer  
 농사 [nongsa] *n* agriculture  
 농장 [nongjang] *n* farm  
 농촌 [nongchon] *n* village  
 농촌경리 [nongchon.gyongri] *n*  
 rural economy  
 높다 [nopda] *a* high  
 높이 [nopi] *ad* high [ten  
 높다 [nopida] *vt* elevate, heigh-  
 놓다 [nota] *vt* put, lay  
 누구 [nugu] *pron* who  
 누나 [nuna] *n* sister  
 누르다 [nuruda] *a* yellow  
 누리다 [nurida] *vt* enjoy  
 누이 [nui] *n* sister  
 눅다 [nukda] *a* cheap  
 눈<sup>1</sup> [nun] *n* eye  
 눈<sup>2</sup> [nun] *n* snow  
 눈물 [nunmul] *n* tear  
 눈보라 [nunbora] *n* snowstorm  
 눈부시다 [nunbusida] *a* dazzling  
 눈썹 [nunsop] *n* eyebrow  
 눕다 [nupda] *vi* lie  
 눕히다 [nupida] *causat v* lay  
 뉴대 [nyudae] *n* bond



느끼다 [nuggida] *vt* feel  
 늘 [nul] *ad* always  
 늙다 [nukda] *vi* grow old  
 늦다 [nutda] *a* late  
 님 [nim] *suffix* Mr.; Mrs.  
 내 [nae] *pron* I; my  
 내과의사 [naeggwauisa] *n* physician

내리다 [naerida] *vi* get down  
 내쫓다 [naejjotda] *vt* drive out  
 네<sup>1</sup> [ne] *pron* you; your  
 네<sup>2</sup> [ne] *num* four  
 네번째 [nebonjjae] *num* fourth  
 넥타이 [nektai] *n* necktie  
 넷 [net] *num* four  
 넷째 [netjjae] *num* fourth

## ㄷ [t]

다 [ta] *ad* all  
 다그치다 [taguchida] *vt* hasten  
 다르다 [taruda] *a* different  
 다리<sup>1</sup> [tari] *n* leg  
 다리<sup>2</sup> [tari] *n* bridge  
 다리다 [tarida] *vt* iron  
 다만 [taman] *ad* only  
 다섯 [tasot] *num* five  
 다섯(번)째 [tasot(bon)jjae] *num*  
 다시 [tasi] *ad* again [fifth  
 다시다 [tajida] *vt* harden; strengthen; confirm  
 다음 [taum] *n* next  
 단 [tan] *pre-n* only  
 단결 [tan.gyol] *n* solidarity  
 단계 [tan.gye] *n* stage  
 단련 [tallyon] *n* training  
 단어 [tano] *n* word  
 닫다 [tatda] *vt* shut  
 달<sup>1</sup> [tal] *n* moon  
 달<sup>2</sup> [tal] *n* month  
 달다 [talda] *a* sweet  
 달력 [tallyok] *n* calendar

달리 [talli] *ad* differently  
 달리기 [talligi] *n* run [ner  
 달리기선수 [talligisonsu] *n* runner  
 달리다 [tallida] *vi* run  
 달성하다 [talsonghada] *vt* achieve, attain  
 닭 [tak] *n* hen  
 닭고기 [takgogi] *n* chicken  
 닭알 [talgal] *n* egg  
 담배 [tambae] *n* cigarette  
 담화 [tamhwa] *n* talk  
 답례 [tamrye] *n* return salute  
 답례방문 [tamryebangmun] *n* return visit  
 답전 [tapjon] *n* reply telegram  
 당 [tang] *n* party [gress  
 당대회 [tangdaehoe] *n* party congress  
 당신 [tangsin] *n* you  
 당적 [tangjok] *n* party  
 당정책 [tangjongchaek] *n* party policy  
 당하다 [tanghada] *vt* suffer  
 당원 [tang.won] *n* party member

닿다 [tata] *vi* reach  
 닦다 [takda] *vt* wipe  
 더 [to] *ad* more  
 더럽다 [toropda] *a* dirty  
 더럽히다 [toropida] *vt* soil  
 더욱 [touk] *ad* more  
 덜 [tol] *ad* less  
 덮다 [topda] *vt* cover  
 도 [to] *n* province  
 도덕 [todok] *n* morals, morality  
 도덕적 [todokjok] *n* moral  
 도대체 [todaeche] *ad* on earth  
 도마도 [tomado] *n* tomato  
 도무지 [tomuji] *ad* quite  
 도서관 [tosogwan] *n* library  
 도시 [tosi] *n* city  
 도착 [tochak] *n* arrival  
 도착하다 [tochakada] *vi* arrive  
 도끼 [toggi] *n* ax  
 독 [tok] *n* earthenware jar  
 독립 [tongrip] *n* independence  
 독재 [tokjae] *n* dictatorship  
 독창 [tokchang] *n* solo  
 돈 [ton] *n* money [exchange  
 돈바꾸기 [tonbaggugi] *n* money  
 돈받는곳 [tonbannun·got] *n* ca-  
 sh-desk  
 돌다 [tolda] *vi* turn [back  
 돌려주다 [tollyojuda] *vt* give  
 돌진하다 [toljinhada] *vi* rush  
 돌아가다 [toragada] *vi, vt* go  
 back [back  
 돌아오다 [toraoda] *vi, vt* come  
 톨 [tol] *n* anniversary  
 돕다 [topda] *vt* help  
 동무 [tongmu] *n* comrade  
 동물 [tongmul] *n* animal

동물원 [tongmurwon] *n* zoo  
 동맹 [tongmaeng] *n* alliance  
 동상 [tongsang] *n* statue  
 동시 [tongsi] *n* same time  
 동지 [tongji] *n* comrade  
 동트다 [tong tuda] *phrase* dawn  
 동(쪽) [tong(jjok)] *n* east  
 동안 [tong·an] *n* time  
 동요 [tongyo] *n* vacillation  
 돛대 [totdae] *n* mast  
 두 [tu] *num* two  
 두려워하다 [turyowohada] *vt* fear  
 두번째 [tubonjjae] *num* second  
 둘 [tul] *num* two  
 둘째 [tuljjae] *num* second  
 둥글다 [tung.gulda] *a* round  
 둥지 [tungji] *n* nest  
 드리다 [turida] *vt* give (in the  
 meaning of respect)  
 드물다 [tumulda] *a* seldom  
 듣다 [tutda] *vt* hear  
 들 [tul] *n* field  
 들다<sup>1</sup> [tulda] *vi* come in  
 들다<sup>2</sup> [tulda] *vt* take  
 들리다 [tullida] *vi* drop in  
 들어가는곳 [turoganun·got] *n*  
 entrance  
 들어서다 [turosoda] *vi* step in  
 들어오다 [turooda] *vi* come in  
 등 [tung] *n* back  
 등기편지 [tung.gipyonji] *n* reg-  
 istered letter  
 등대 [tungdae] *n* lighthouse  
 등록장 [tungrokjang] *n* hotel  
 register  
 대<sup>1</sup> [tae] *n* generation  
 대<sup>2</sup> [tae] *incomp* *n* piece  
 대<sup>3</sup> [tae] *prefix* large, big

대극장 [taegukjang] *n* Grand Theatre  
 대낮 [taenat] *n* broad daylight  
 대다 [taeda] *vt* make an call  
 대단히 [taedani] *ad* very  
 대담하다 [taedamhada] *a* bold  
 대답 [taedap] *n* answer  
 대답하다 [taedapada] *vi* answer  
 대동강 [taedong-gang] *n* Taedong River  
 대문 [taemun] *n* front gate  
 대동문 [taedongmun] *n* Taedong Gate  
 대대적 [taedaejok] *n* large-scale  
 대략 [taeryak] *n* about, approximately  
 대로 [taero] *incomp n* "as"  
 대리인 [taeriin] *n* deputy  
 대문 [taemun] *n* front gate  
 대사 [taesa] *n* ambassador  
 대사관 [taesagwan] *n* embassy  
 대성산혁명렬사릉 [taesongsan hyongmyongryolsanung] *n* Taesongsan Revolutionary Martyrs' Cemetery  
 대자연 [taejayon] *n* great nature  
 대접하다 [taejopada] *vt* entertain, serve  
 대주다 [taejuda] *vt* show  
 대중 [taejung] *n* masses

대통령 [taetongryong] *n* president  
 대포 [taepo] *n* gun  
 대표 [taepyo] *n* delegate  
 대표단 [taepyodan] *n* delegation  
 대표단단장 [taepyodandanjang] *n* head of a delegation  
 대풍 [taepung] *n* rich harvest  
 대하다 [taehada] *vt* confront  
 대하여 [taehayo] *v con fo* for  
 대학 [taehak] *n* university; college  
 대학생 [taehaksaeng] *n* student  
 대외무역 [taeomuyok] *n* foreign trade  
 대외적 [taeoejok] *n* foreign  
 대의원 [taeuiwon] *n* deputy  
 대원 [taewon] *n* member of troops  
 데 [te] *incomp n* place; case  
 되다<sup>1</sup> [toeda] *a* hard  
 되다<sup>2</sup> [toeda] *vi* become  
 뒤 [twi] *n* back  
 뒤떨어지다 [twiddorojida] *vi* drop behind  
 뒤에 [twie] *n dat* behind  
 돼지 [twaeji] *n* pig  
 돼지고기 [twaejigogi] *n* pork

## ㄹ [r]

라디오 [rajio] *n* radio  
 라틴아메리카 [ratinamerika] *n* Latin America  
 낙원 [ragwon] *n* paradise  
 략탈하다 [ryaktalhada] *vt* plunder

량 [ryang] *n* quantity  
 런던 [london] *n* London  
 려객차 [ryogaekcha] *n* passenger train  
 려관 [ryogwan] *n* hotel  
 려권 [ryoggwon] *n* passport

려권검열 [ryoggwon·gomyol] *n*  
 inspection of passports  
 려권번호 [ryoggwonbonho] *n*  
 passport number  
 여행 [ryohaeng] *n* travel  
 여행목적 [ryohaengmokjok] *n*  
 purpose of the journey  
 여행목적지 [ryohaengmokjokji]  
*n* destination of the journey  
 여행사 [ryohaengsa] *n* travel  
 bureau  
 력사 [ryoksa] *n* history  
 연결 [ryon·gyol] *n* connection  
 연대 [ryondae] *n* regiment  
 연대성 [ryondaessong] *n* solida-  
 rity  
 연합 [ryonhap] *n* alliance  
 연이어 [ryonio] *ad* continuously  
 열차 [ryolcha] *n* train  
 열차식당 [ryolchasikdang] *n* din-  
 ing car  
 령도 [ryongdo] *n* leadership  
 령도하다 [ryongdohada] *vt* lead  
 령사 [ryongsa] *n* consul 「late  
 령사관 [ryongsagwan] *n* consu-  
 령수증 [ryongsujjung] *n* receipt  
 령토 [ryongto] *n* territory  
 령역 [ryongyok] *n* sphere  
 노동 [rodong] *n* labour  
 노동계급 [rodong·gyegup] *n*  
 working class  
 노동당 [rodongdang] *n* Workers'  
 Party

노동자 [rodongja] *n* worker  
 노동안전 [rodong·anjon] *n* la-  
 bour safety  
 로력 [roryok] *n* labour  
 로력영웅 [roryok·yongung] *n*  
 labour hero  
 론설 [ronsol] *n* article  
 론쟁 [ronjaeng] *n* debate  
 론쟁하다 [ronjaenghada] *vt* de-  
 bate  
 요리 [ryori] *n* dish, food  
 루블 [rubul] *n* ruble  
 류월 [ryuwol] *n* June  
 륙 [ryuk] *num* six  
 륙십 [ryuksip] *num* sixty  
 룡성 [ryungsong] *n* prosperity  
 리론 [riron] *n* theory  
 리륙 [riryuk] *n* take-off  
 리발사 [ribalsa] *n* barber  
 리발소 [ribalso] *n* barber's shop  
 리발하다 [ribalhada] *vi* have  
 one's hair cut 「rectors  
 리사회 [risahoe] *n* board of di-  
 리해 [rihae] *n* understanding  
 리해하다 [rihaehada] *vt* under-  
 stand  
 리용하다 [riyonghada] *vt* use  
 리익 [riik] *n* interests  
 립장 [ripjang] *n* stand-point  
 래달 [raedal] *n* next month  
 래일 [raeil] *n* tomorrow  
 레몬수 [remonsu] *n* lemonade

□ [m]

- 마당 [madang] *n* yard, garden; place  
 마디 [madi] *n* joint; word  
 마라손 [marason] *n* marathon  
 마라손선수 [marasonsonsu] *n* marathon runner  
 마르다 [maruda] *vi* dry  
 마시다 [masida] *vt* drink  
 마치<sup>1</sup> [machi] *n* hammer  
 마치<sup>2</sup> [machi] *ad* just as  
 마흔 [mahun] *num* forty  
 마을 [maul] *n* village  
 마음 [maum] *n* heart  
 막다 [makda] *vt* stop  
 만 [man] *num* ten thousands  
 만경대 [mangyongdae] *n* Mangyongdae  
 만경봉 [mangyongbong] *n* Mangyong Hill  
 만나다 [mannada] *vt* meet  
 만년필 [mannyonpil] *n* fountain-pen  
 만들다 [mandulda] *vt* make, manufacture  
 만수대예술극장 [mansudae yesul gukjang] *n* Mansudae Art Theatre  
 만수무강 [mansumugang] *n* long life and good health  
 만세 [manse] *int* hurrah  
 만족하다 [manjokada] *a* be satisfied  
 만행 [manhaeng] *n* barbarity  
 만약 [manyak] *n* if  
 만일 [manil] *n* if  
 많다 [manta] *a* many, much  
 많이 [mani] *ad* much  
 말누이 [mannui] *n* eldest sister  
 말<sup>1</sup> [mal] *n* horse  
 말<sup>2</sup> [mal] *n* word, language  
 말다<sup>1</sup> [malda] *vt* roll  
 말다<sup>2</sup> [malda] *verb* which is used as an auxiliary "not"  
 말하다 [malhada] *vi, vt* say, speak, tell  
 말하자면 [malhajamyon] *v* *con* fo so to speak  
 말씀 [malssum] *n* word (in the meaning of respect)  
 말씀하다 [malssumhada] *vt* say (in the meaning of respect)  
 맑다 [makda] *a* clear  
 맑아지다 [malgajida] *v* with *con* fo clear up  
 맛 [mat] *n* taste  
 맛보다 [matboda] *v* with *n* taste  
 맞다<sup>1</sup> [matda] *vi* fit  
 맞다<sup>2</sup> [matda] *vt* be struck, be exposed  
 맞추다 [matchuda] *vt* make fit  
 맞이하다 [majihada] *vt* receive  
 맡겨지다 [matgyojida] *pass* be entrusted  
 맡기다 [matgida] *causat v* entrust  
 머리 [mori] *n* head  
 머리말 [morial] *n* foreword  
 머리수건 [morisugon] *n* kerchief

머리칼 [morikal] *n* hair  
 머리아픔 [moriapum] *n* headache  
 먹다 [mokda] *vt* eat  
 먹이다 [mogida] *causat v* let eat  
 먼저 [monjo] *ad* first  
 멀다 [molda] *a* far  
 멀리 [molli] *ad* far away  
 멎다 [motda] *vi* stop [days  
 며칠 [myochil] *n* how many  
 면도 [myondo] *n* shaving  
 면도칼 [myondokal] *n* razor  
 명 [myong] *incomp n* person  
 명년 [myongnyon] *n* next year  
 명령 [myongryong] *n* order  
 명승지 [myongsungji] *n* famous spots  
 명절 [myongjol] *n* festival day  
 명예칭호 [myongyechingho] *n* honorary title  
 몇 [myot] *pron* how many  
 모두 [modu] *ad* all  
 모든 [modun] *pre-n* all  
 모르다 [moruda] *vt* do not know  
 모래 [morae] *n* sand  
 모레 [more] *n* the day after tomorrow  
 모범 [mobom] *n* model  
 모자 [moja] *n* hat, cap  
 모자라다 [mojarada] *vi* be short  
 모이다 [moida] *pass* come together  
 모임 [moim] *n* meeting  
 목 [mok] *n* neck  
 목란꽃 [mongran-ggot] *n* magnolia  
 목적 [mokjok] *n* purpose, aim  
 목적지 [mokjokjji] *n* destination

목표 [mokpyo] *n* goal, target  
 목요일 [mogyoil] *n* Thursday  
 목욕 *n* [mogyok] *n* bathing  
 목욕실 [mogyoksil] *n* bathroom  
 목욕칸 [mogyokkan] *n* bathroom  
 목욕탕 [mogyoktang] *n* bath  
 목욕하다 [mogyokada] *vi* bathe  
 몰아내다 [moranaeda] *vt* drive out  
 몸 [mom] *n* body  
 몸소 [momso] *ad* personally  
 몹시 [mopsi] *ad* very  
 못 [mot] *ad* not  
 못내 [monnae] *ad* very  
 못하다<sup>1</sup> [motada] *a* not  
 못하다<sup>2</sup> [motada] *vt* cannot  
 무기 [mugi] *n* weapon  
 무겁다 [mugopda] *a* heavy  
 무게 [muge] *n* weight  
 무궤도전차 [mugwedojoncha] *n* trolley bus  
 무덤다 [mudopda] *a* sultry  
 무대 [mudae] *n* stage  
 무릎 [murup] *n* knee  
 무슨 [musun] *pron* what  
 무장 [mujang] *n* armaments  
 무장시키다 [mujangsikida] *causat v* make arm  
 무장하다 [mujanghada] *vi, vt* arm  
 무조건 [mujogon] *n* unconditionally  
 무지개 [mujigae] *n* rainbow  
 무엇 [muot] *pron* what  
 무역 [muyok] *n* trade  
 무역협정 [muyokhyopjong] *n* trade agreement  
 무용가 [muyong-ga] *n* dancer  
 문 [mun] *n* door, gate  
 문법 [munbop] *n* grammar

문제 [munje] *n* question, problem  
 문학 [munhak] *n* literature  
 문화 [munhwa] *n* culture  
 문화궁전 [munhwagung-jon] *n*  
 cultural palace  
 문화혁명 [munhwahyongmyong]  
*n* cultural revolution  
 문화회관 [munhwahoe-gwan] *n*  
 cultural clubhouse  
 묻다 [mutda] *vi, vt* ask  
 물 [mul] *n* water  
 물건 [mulgon] *n* goods  
 물건사기 [mulgonsagi] *n* pur-  
 chases  
 물결 [mulgyol] *n* wave  
 물고기요리 [mulgogiriyori] *n* fish  
 foods  
 물다 [mulda] *vt* pay  
 물론 [mullon] *ad* of course  
 물품 [mulpum] *n* goods  
 물어보기 [murobogi] *n* inquiring  
 물음칸 [murumkan] *n* informa-  
 tion office  
 뭉치다 [mungchida] *vi* unite  
 묶다 [mukda] *vt* bind  
 미리 [miri] *ad* beforehand  
 미래 [mirae] *n* future  
 미술박물관 [misulbangmulgwan]  
*n* picture gallery  
 미제 [mije] *n* US imperialism;

US imperialists  
 미제국주의자 [mijegukjuuija] *n*  
 US imperialist  
 미안하다 [mianhada] *a* sorry  
 민족 [minjok] *n* nation  
 민족무용 [minjongmuyong] *n*  
 folk dance [ity  
 민족별 [minjokbyol] *n* national-  
 민족적 [minjokjok] *n* national  
 민족주의 [minjokjuui] *n* nation-  
 alism [tionalistic  
 민족주의적 [minjokjuuijok] *n* na-  
 민주주의 [minjujuui] *n* democ-  
 racy [mocratic  
 민주주의적 [minjujuuijok] *n* de-  
 민요 [minyo] *n* folk song  
 믿음직하다 [midumjikada] *a* re-  
 liable  
 밀 [mil] *n* wheat  
 밀가루 [milgaru] *n* wheat flour  
 밀영 [miryong] *n* secret camp  
 및 [mit] *ad* and  
 매 [mae] *pre-n* every  
 매국노 [maegungno] *n* traitor  
 (to one's country)  
 매우 [maeu] *ad* very  
 매일 [maeil] *n* every day  
 맥박 [maekbak] *n* pulse  
 맥주 [maekju] *n* beer  
 맺다 [maetda] *vt* conclude

## ㅂ [p]

바나나 [panana] *n* banana  
 바다 [pada] *n* sea  
 바닥 [padak] *n* floor  
 바람 [param] *n* wind

바로 [paro] *ad* straight  
 바라다 [paraeda] *vt* see (a per-  
 son) off  
 바레무용 [paremuyong] *n* ballet

바지 [paji] *n* trousers  
 바치다 [pachida] *vt* devote  
 바퀴 [pakwi] *n* wheel  
 바꾸다 [pagguda] *vt* exchange  
 바쁘게 [pabbuge] *a ad* fo busily  
 바쁘다 [pabbuda] *a* busy  
 바빠 [pabbi] *ad* busily  
 박다 [pakda] *vt* strike in  
 박물관 [pangmulgwan] *n* museum  
 박수 [paksu] *n* hand clapping  
 박히다 [pakida] *pass* be struck  
 in [gladly]  
 반가이 [pan·gai] *ad* joyfully,  
 반갑다 [pan·gapda] *a* joyful,  
 glad  
 반도 [pando] *n* peninsula  
 반드시 [pandusi] *ad* certainly,  
 surely  
 반대하다 [pandaehada] *vt* oppose  
 반면 [panmyon] *n* contrary  
 반미 [panmi] *n* anti-US (impe-  
 rialist)  
 반복하다 [panbokada] *vt* repeat  
 반숙한 달걀 [pansukan dalgall] *n*  
 with att fo soft boiled egg  
 반주하다 [panjuhada] *vt* play a  
 person's accompaniment  
 반제 [panje] *n* anti-imperialism;  
 anti-imperialist  
 반제련대성 [panjeryondaessong]  
*n* anti-imperialist solidarity  
 반제적 [panjejok] *n* anti-imperi-  
 alist [tape  
 반창고 [panchang-go] *n* adhesive  
 받는 사람 [pannun saram] *n* with  
 att fo receiver; addressee  
 받다 [patda] *vt* receive [ept  
 받아들이다 [padadurida] *vt* acc-

발 [pal] *n* foot  
 발가락 [palgarak] *n* toe  
 발랄하다 [pallalhada] *a* lively  
 발바닥 [palbadak] *n* sole  
 발송 [palsong] *n* sending  
 발신인 [palsinin] *n* sender  
 발전 [paljon] *n* development  
 발전되다 [paljondoeda] *vi* be de-  
 veloped  
 발전시키다 [paljonsikida] *causat*  
*v* develop  
 밝다 [pakda] *a* bright; dawn,  
 break  
 밟다 [papda] *vt* step on  
 밤<sup>1</sup> [pam] *n* night  
 밤<sup>2</sup> [pam] *n* chestnut  
 밤차 [pamcha] *n* night train  
 밥 [pap] *n* boiled rice  
 방 [pang] *n* room  
 방문 [panmun] *n* visit  
 방문하다 [pangmunhada] *vt* visit  
 방법 [pangbop] *n* method  
 방송 [pangsong] *n* broadcasting  
 방송하다 [pangsonghada] *vt* bro-  
 방송 [pangjo] *n* help [adcast  
 방침 [pangchim] *n* line  
 방향 [panghyang] *n* direction  
 밭 [pat] *n* field [eld  
 발머리 [panmori] *n* edge of fi-  
 밖으로 [pagguro] *n inst* to out-  
 side  
 번 [pon] *incomp n* time  
 번개 [pon·gae] *n* lightning  
 번호 [ponho] *n* number  
 번쩍거리다 [ponjjokgorida] *vi*,  
*vt* glitter  
 번역 [ponyok] *n* translation  
 번역하다 [ponyokada] *vt* trans



late  
 번역원 [ponyogwon] *n* translator  
 번영 [ponyong] *n* prosperity  
 번영하다 [ponyonghada] *vi* prosper  
 벌<sup>1</sup> [pol] *n* bee [clothes]  
 벌<sup>2</sup> [pol] *incomp n* a suit (of  
 벌써 [polsso] *ad* already  
 범 [pom] *n* tiger  
 법 [pop] *n* law  
 법령 [pomryong] *n* law  
 벗 [pot] *n* friend  
 벗다 [potda] *vt* take off  
 벼 [pyo] *n* rice plant : unhulled  
 벽 [pyok] *n* wall [rice  
 변소 [pyonso] *n* toilet  
 변하다 [pyonhada] *vi, vt* change  
 별 [pyol] *n* star  
 병<sup>1</sup> [pyong] *n* bottle  
 병<sup>2</sup> [pyong] *n* illness  
 병사 [pyongsa] *n* soldier  
 병원 [pyong.won] *n* hospital  
 보고하다 [pogohada] *vt* report  
 보금자리 [pogumjari] *n* nest  
 보내는 사람 [ponaenun saram] *n*  
*with att fo sender*  
 보내다 [ponaeda] *vt* send  
 보다 [poda] *vt* see  
 보증 [pojung] *n* guarantee  
 보통강려관 [potong.gangryeo  
 gwan] *n* Potonggang Hotel  
 보험 [pohom] *n* insurance  
 보여주다 [poyojuda] *v* with con  
*fo show*  
 보이다<sup>1</sup> [poida] *pass* be seen  
 보이다<sup>2</sup> [poida] *causat v* let see  
 복도 [pokdo] *n* corridor  
 복무하다 [pongmuhada] *vi* serve

복숭아 [poksung.a] *n* peach  
 복잡하다 [pokjapada] *a* complic-  
 봄 [pom] *n* spring [ated  
 봄날 [pomnal] *n* spring day  
 봄바람 [pombaram] *n* spring  
 breeze  
 봉투 [pongto] *n* envelope  
 부<sup>1</sup> [pu] *n* department, minis-  
 부<sup>2</sup> [pu] *n* copy [try  
 부닥치다 [pudakchida] *vi* run a-  
 gainst; encounter with  
 부드럽다 [puduropda] *a* soft  
 부디 [pudi] *ad* surely  
 부르다 [puruda] *vt* call; sing  
 부모 [pumo] *n* parents  
 부문 [pumun] *n* branch  
 부부 [pubu] *n* husband and wife  
 부분 [pubun] *n* part  
 부장 [pujang] *n* minister  
 부지런하다 [pujironhada] *a* di-  
 ligent  
 부지런히 [pujironi] *ad* diligent-  
 ly  
 부치다 [puchida] *vt* send  
 부탁하다 [putakada] *vt* request  
 부터 [puto] *aux end* from  
 부엌 [puok] *n* kitchen  
 부엌문 [puongmun] *n* door of  
 kitchen [work  
 부엌일 [puongnil] *n* kitchen  
 북(쪽) [puk(jjok)] *n* north  
 분<sup>1</sup> [pun] *n* minute  
 분<sup>2</sup> [pun] *incomp n* person  
 분계선 [pun.gyeson] *n* demarca-  
 tion line  
 분대 [pundae] *n* squad  
 분수 [punsu] *n* fountain  
 불 [pul] *n* fire

불다 [pulda] *vi* blow  
 불라다 [pultada] *vi* burn  
 불편하다 [pulpyonhada] *a* inconvenient  
 붉다 [pukda] *a* red  
 붉은기 [pulgun·gi] *n* red flag  
 붕대 [pungdae] *n* bandage  
 붕붕 [pungbung] *ad* buzz  
 비 [pi] *n* rain  
 비겁한자 [pigopanja] *n* coward  
 비날론 [pinallon] *n* vinalon  
 비누 [pinu] *n* soap  
 비다 [pida] *a* vacant, empty  
 비단 [pidan] *n* silk  
 비로소 [piroso] *ad* for the first time  
 비록 [pirok] *ad* even if  
 비료 [piryo] *n* fertilizer  
 비서 [piso] *n* secretary  
 비치다 [pichida] *vi* shine  
 비행기 [pihaeng·gi] *n* aeroplane  
 비행기시간표 [pihaeng·gisigan·pyo] *n* time table  
 비행기표 [pihaeng·gipyo] *n* airline ticket  
 비행사 [pihaengsa] *n* airman  
 비행장 [pihaengjang] *n* airport  
 비행장관세 [pihaengjang·gwanse] *n* airport tax

비싸다 [pissada] *a* expensive  
 비어있음 [piyoissum] *n* vacant  
 비옷 [piot] *n* raincoat  
 빗 [pit] *n* comb  
 빗다 [pitda] *vt* comb  
 빙상관 [pingsang·gwan] *n* Ice Rink  
 빚 [pit] *n* debt  
 빛 [pit] *n* light  
 빛나다 [pinnada] *vi* shine  
 배<sup>1</sup> [pae] *n* belly  
 배<sup>2</sup> [pae] *n* ship  
 배<sup>3</sup> [pae] *n* pear  
 배<sup>4</sup> [pae] *n* times  
 배구 [paegu] *n* volleyball  
 배다 [paeda] *a* thick  
 배려 [paeryo] *n* solicitude, care  
 배우 [paeu] *n* actor  
 배우기 [paeugi] *n* learning  
 배우다 [paeuda] *vt* learn  
 백 [paek] *num* hundred [du  
 백두산 [paekdusan] *n* Mt. Paek-  
 백만 [paengman] *num* million  
 백화점 [paekwajom] *n* department store  
 베개 [pegae] *n* pillow  
 베다 [peda] *vt* cut  
 보다 [poeda] *vt* see (in the meaning of respect)

## 人 [s]

사 [sa] *num* four  
 사귀다 [sagwida] *vi, vt* make friends with  
 사과 [sagwa] *n* apple  
 사다 [sada] *vt* buy

사라지다 [sarajida] *vi* disappear  
 사람 [saram] *n* man  
 사랑 [sarang] *n* love  
 사랑하다 [saranghada] *vt* love  
 사명 [samyong] *n* mission

사무원 [samuwon] <i>n</i> office worker	산원 [sanwon] <i>n</i> maternity hospital
사상 [sasang] <i>n</i> idea	살 <sup>1</sup> [sal] <i>n</i> flesh
사상적 [sasangjok] <i>n</i> ideological	살 <sup>2</sup> [sal] <i>n</i> age
사상혁명 [sasanghyongmyong] <i>n</i> ideological revolution	살가죽 [salgajuk] <i>n</i> skin
사실 [sasil] <i>n</i> fact	살다 [salda] <i>vi</i> live
사십 [sasip] <i>num</i> forty	살림집 [sallimjip] <i>n</i> dwelling
사적지 [sajokji] <i>n</i> historical places	삶다 [samda] <i>vt</i> boil
사전 [sajon] <i>n</i> dictionary	삶은 달걀 [salmun dalgal] <i>n</i> with att fo boiled egg
사절 [sajol] <i>n</i> delegate	삼 [sam] <i>num</i> three
사증 [sajjung] <i>n</i> visa	삼가 [samga] <i>ad</i> respectfully
사증번호 [sajjungbonho] <i>n</i> visa number	삼십 [samsip] <i>num</i> thirty
사진 [sajin] <i>n</i> photo	삼월 [samwol] <i>n</i> March
사진기 [sajin·gi] <i>n</i> camera	삽 [sap] <i>n</i> spade, shovel
사진찍기 [sajinjjikgi] <i>n</i> photographing	상 [sang] <i>n</i> prize [ably
사진용품상점 [sajinyongpumsangjom] <i>n</i> camera shop	상당히 [sangdangi] <i>ad</i> considerably
사탕 [satang] <i>n</i> sugar	상봉 [sangbong] <i>n</i> meeting
사탕가루 [satang·garu] <i>n</i> soft sugar	상상 [sangsang] <i>n</i> imagination
사회 [sahoe] <i>n</i> society	상상하다 [sangsanghada] <i>vt</i> imagine
사회적 [sahoejok] <i>n</i> social	상수건 [sangsugon] <i>n</i> napkin
사회주의 [sahoejuui] <i>n</i> socialism	상점 [sangjom] <i>n</i> shop
사회주의적 [sahoejuuijok] <i>n</i> socialist	상업 [sang·op] <i>n</i> commerce
사업 [saop] <i>n</i> work [cialist	상영하다 [sang·yonghada] <i>vt</i> give a performance
사용하다 [sayonghada] <i>vt</i> use	샴파주 [syampangju] <i>n</i> champagne
사이다 [saida] <i>n</i> fizzy drink	서기 [sogi] <i>n</i> secretary
사월 [sawol] <i>n</i> April	서늘하다 [sonulhada] <i>a</i> cool
산 [san] <i>n</i> mountain	서다 [soda] <i>vi</i> stand
산보하다 [sanbohada] <i>vi</i> take a walk	서로 [soro] <i>ad</i> each other
산부인과 의사 [sanbuiin·gwauisa] <i>n</i> gynaecologist	서른 [sorun] <i>num</i> thirty
	서명하다 [somyonghada] <i>vi</i> sign one's name
	서해감문 [sohaegammun] <i>n</i> West Sea Barrage

서(쪽) [so(jjok)] *n* west  
 석탄 [soktan] *n* coal  
 선거 [son·go] *n* election  
 선거권 [son·goggwon] *n* voting rights  
 선거하다 [son·gohada] *vt* elect  
 선물 [sonmul] *n* present  
 선물상점 [sonmulsangjom] *n* souvenir shop  
 선생 [sonsaeng] *n* teacher  
 선장 [sonjang] *n* captain  
 선택 [sontaek] *n* selection  
 설날 [sollal] *n* New Year's Day  
 설사 [solsa] *n* diarrhoea  
 섬유 [somyu] *n* fibre  
 섯 [sot] *imp* stop!  
 성<sup>1</sup> [song] *n* sex  
 성<sup>2</sup> [song] *n* family name  
 성격 [song·gyok] *n* character  
 성공하다 [song·gonghada] *vt* succeed  
 성과 [song·gwa] *n* success  
 성냥 [songnyang] *n* match  
 성명 [songmyong] *n* statement  
 성별 [songbyol] *n* sex distinction  
 성스럽다 [songsuropda] *a* sacred  
 성원 [songwon] *n* member  
 소 [so] *n* cow, bull  
 소고기 [sogogi] *n* beef  
 소금 [sogum] *n* salt  
 소개 [sogae] *n* introduction  
 소개하다 [sogaehada] *vt* introduce  
 소나무 [sonamu] *n* pine  
 소녀 [sonyo] *n* girl  
 소년 [sonyon] *n* boy  
 소년단원 [sonyondanwon] *n* Child

dren's Union member  
 소리 [sori] *n* sound  
 소리치다 [sorichida] *v* with *n* cry  
 소멸하다 [somyolhada] *vt* wipe out  
 소설가 [sosolga] *n* novelist  
 소식 [sosik] *n* news  
 소젖 [sojot] *n* milk  
 소포 [sopo] *n* parcel  
 소환장 [sohwanjang] *n* letter of recall  
 소아과 의사 [soaggwauisa] *n* child specialist, paediatrician  
 속 [sok] *n* inside  
 속내의 [songnaeui] *n* underwear  
 속도 [sokdo] *n* speed  
 손 [son] *n* hand  
 손가락 [son·garak] *n* finger  
 손님 [sonnim] *n* guest  
 손바닥 [sonbadak] *n* palm (of the hand) [ief  
 손수건 [sonsugon] *n* handkerchief  
 손짐 [sonjim] *n* hand baggage  
 손짐맡기는곳 [sonjimmatginungot] *n* cloakroom  
 손톱 [sontop] *n* fingernail  
 수 [su] *n* number  
 수고하다 [sugohada] *vi* take trouble, do a service  
 수단 [sudan] *n* means  
 수도<sup>1</sup> [sudo] *n* water-works  
 수도<sup>2</sup> [sudo] *n* capital  
 수량 [suryang] *n* quantity  
 수령 [suryong] *n* leader  
 수리하다 [surihada] *vt* repair  
 수속하다 [susokada] *vt* go through the formalities

수송 [susong] *n* transport  
 수자 [suja] *n* figure 「ism  
 수정주의 [sujongjuui] *n* revision-  
 수족관 [sujokgwan] *n* aquarium  
 수준 [sujun] *n* level  
 수출 [suchul] *n* export  
 수출품 [suchulpum] *n* export  
 goods  
 수출하다 [suchulhada] *vt* export  
 수표 [supyo] *n* signature  
 수표하다 [supyohada] *vi* sign  
 수행하다 [suhaenghada] *vt* carry  
 out  
 수업 [suop] *n* lessons  
 수요일 [suyoil] *n* Wednesday  
 수입 [suip] *n* import  
 수입하다 [suipada] *vt* import  
 숙영지 [sugyongji] *n* billeting  
 area  
 순간 [sun·gan] *n* moment  
 순대 [sundae] *n* sausage  
 숟가락 [sutgarak] *n* spoon  
 술 [sul] *n* wine  
 스물 [sumul] *num* twenty  
 스스로 [susuro] *ad* for oneself  
 슬기롭다 [sulgiropda] *a* wise  
 슬프다 [sulpuda] *a* sad  
 승강기 [sung·gang·gi] *n* elevator,  
 lift  
 승냥이 [sungnyang·i] *n* wolf  
 승리 [sungri] *n* victory  
 승용차 [sung·yongcha] *n* pas-  
 senger car  
 시 [si] *n* o' clock  
 시간 [sigan] *n* time  
 시간차이 [siganchai] *n* differen-  
 ce in time  
 시간표 [siganpyo] *n* timetable

시계 [sigye] *n* watch  
 시계상점 [sigyesangjom] *n* watch  
 shop  
 시내 [sinae] *n* city centre  
 시내구경 [sinaegugyong] *n* city  
 sightseeing  
 시내관광버스 [sinaegwan·gwang  
 bbosu] *n* city sightseeing bus  
 시내버스 [sinaebbosu] *n* city bus  
 시다 [sida] *a* sour  
 시대 [sidae] *n* era  
 시련 [siryon] *n* trial  
 시작 [sijak] *n* beginning  
 시작하다 [sijakada] *vt* begin  
 시장 [sijang] *n* market  
 시합 [sihap] *n* match  
 시험 [sihom] *n* examination  
 시인 [siin] *n* poet  
 시외버스 [sioebbosu] *n* long-dis-  
 tance bus  
 시월 [siwol] *n* October  
 식당 [sikdang] *n* dining room;  
 restaurant  
 식료품 [singnyopum] *n* foodstuff  
 식료품상점 [singnyopumsangjom]  
*n* grocer's shop, grocery  
 식물 [singmul] *n* plant  
 식물원 [singmulwon] *n* botani-  
 cal garden  
 식사 [siksa] *n* meal  
 식사하다 [siksahada] *vi* have a  
 meal  
 식사안내표 [siksaannaepyo] *n* m-  
 enu  
 식초 [sikcho] *n* vinegar  
 식후다과 [sikudagwa] *n* dessert  
 식욕 [sigyok] *n* appetite  
 신 [sin] *n* shoes

신경과의사 [sin·gyong·gwauisa] *n* neurologist  
 신고하다 [sin·gohada] *vt* declare  
 신다 [sinda] *vt* put on  
 신문 [simnun] *n* newspaper  
 신발 [sinbal] *n* shoes  
 신발상점 [sinbalsangjom] *n* shoe store  
 신청하다 [sinchonghada] *vt* request  
 신임장 [sinimjang] *n* credentials  
 실로 [sillo] *ad* really  
 실제로 [siljejoguro] *n* inst really [ize  
 실현하다 [silhyonhada] *vt* real-  
 심각하다 [simgakada] *a* serious  
 심장 [simjang] *n* heart  
 십 [sip] *num* ten  
 십자로 [sipjaro] *n* crossroad  
 십이 [sibi] *num* twelve  
 십이월 [sibiwol] *n* December  
 십일 [sibil] *num* eleven  
 십일월 [sibirwol] *n* November  
 싶다 [sipda] *verb* which is used  
 as an auxiliary want  
 새<sup>1</sup> [sae] *n* bird  
 새<sup>2</sup> [sae] *pre-n* new  
 새롭다 [saeropda] *a* new  
 새해 [sae-hae] *n* new year  
 색 [saek] *n* colour  
 색깔 [saekgal] *n* colour  
 생각 [saeng·gak] *n* thought  
 생각하다 [saeng·gakada] *vi, vt*  
 think

생과자 [saeng·gwaja] *n* cake  
 생닭알 [saengdalgal] *n* fresh  
 egg  
 생명 [saengmyong] *n* life  
 생산 [saengsan] *n* production  
 생산하다 [saengsanhada] *vi, vt*  
 produce  
 생선국 [saengson·guk] *n* fish  
 soup  
 생채 [saengchae] *n* salad  
 생활 [saenghwal] *n* life  
 생일 [saeng·il] *n* birthday  
 세 [se] *num* three  
 세금 [segum] *n* tax  
 세계 [segye] *n* world  
 세계적 [segyejok] *n* world-wide  
 세관 [segwan] *n* customs  
 세다<sup>1</sup> [seda] *a* strong  
 세다<sup>2</sup> [seda] *vt* count  
 세대 [sedae] *n* generation  
 세번째 [sebonjjae] *num* third  
 세상 [sesang] *n* world  
 세탁소 [setakso] *n* laundry  
 세우다 [seuda] *causat v* make  
 stand, set up  
 셋 [set] *num* three  
 셋째 [setjjae] *num* third  
 쇠 [soe] *n* iron  
 쇠다 [soeda] *vt* celebrate  
 쉬는날 [swinun nal] *n* with  
 att fo holiday, off day  
 쉬다 [swida] *vi, vt* rest from  
 one's work  
 쉰 [swin] *num* fifty  
 쉽다 [swipda] *a* easy

# ㅈ [ch]

자 [cha] *int* well  
 자기 [chagi] *pron* self, oneself  
 자네 [chane] *pron* you  
 자다 [chada] *vi* sleep  
 자동차 [chadongcha] *n* car  
 자동차운전수 [chadongchaunjonsu] *n* driver  
 자동차화 [chadonghwa] *n* automa-  
 자라다 [charada] *vi* grow  
 자랑하다 [charanghada] *vi, vt* be  
 proud of  
 자료 [charyo] *n* materials  
 자르다 [charuda] *vt* cut  
 자리 [chari] *n* place  
 자리번호 [charibonho] *n* seat  
 number  
 자리표 [charipyo] *n* boarding c-  
 자립 [charip] *n* self-sustenance  
 자본가 [chabon-ga] *n* capitalist  
 자본주의 [chabonjuui] *n* capita-  
 lism  
 자본주의적 [chabonjuuijok] *n*  
 capitalist  
 자신 [chasin] *n* self, oneself  
 자전거 [chajon-go] *n* bicycle  
 자주<sup>1</sup> [chaju] *n* independence  
 자주<sup>2</sup> [chaju] *ad* often [ng  
 자주성 [chajussong] *n* Chajuso-  
 자주적 [chajujok] *n* independent  
 자재 [chajae] *n* material  
 자연 [chayon] *n* nature  
 자욱하다 [chaukada] *a* thick  
 자위 [chawi] *n* self-defence  
 작가 [chakga] *n* writer  
 작곡가 [chakgokga] *n* composer

작다 [chakda] *a* small, little  
 작전 [chakjon] *n* (military)  
 operations  
 작업 [chagop] *n* work  
 작업반 [chagopban] *n* work-team  
 잔 [chan] *n* cup, glass  
 잔돈 [chandon] *n* small change  
 잘 [chal] *ad* well; skillfully  
 잠 [cham] *n* sleep  
 잠깐 [chamgan] *n* short time;  
 for a while  
 잠들다 [chamdulda] *vi* fall as-  
 잠시 [chamsi] *n* for a while  
 잠자다 [chamjada] *vi* sleep  
 잡다 [chapda] *vt* catch  
 잡수시다 [chapsusida] *vt* eat  
 (in the meaning of respect)  
 잡지 [chapji] *n* magazine  
 잣나무 [channamu] *n* pine-nut  
 장 [chang] *n* sheet [tree  
 장갑 [chang-gap] *n* gloves  
 장기 [chang-gi] *n* chess  
 장령 [changryong] *n* general  
 장마 [changma] *n* long (spell  
 of) rain [rose  
 장미(꽃) [changmi(ggot)] *n*  
 장비 [changbi] *n* equipment  
 장딴지 [changddanji] *n* calf  
 저<sup>1</sup> [cho] *pron* that  
 저<sup>2</sup> [cho] *pron* I  
 저가락 [choggarak] *n* chopsticks  
 저기 [chogi] *pron* that place  
 저기에 [chogie] *pron* dat there  
 저녁 [chonyok] *n* evening  
 저녁밥 [chonyokbap] *n* supper

저녁식사 [chonyoksiksa] *n* sup-  
 per  
 저녁에 [chonyoge] *n dat* in the  
 evening  
 저절로 [chojollo] *ad* of itself,  
 of oneself  
 저희 [chohui] *pron* we  
 적 [chok] *n* enemy  
 적극적 [chokgukjok] *n* active  
 적극적으로 [chokgukjoguro] *n*  
*inst* actively  
 적다 [chokda] *a* few, little,  
 small  
 적용하다 [chogyonghada] *vt* apply  
 전<sup>1</sup> [chon] *n* before  
 전<sup>2</sup> [chon] *n* jon (unit of  
 Korean coin)  
 전기 [chon·gi] *n* electricity  
 전기차 [chon·gicha] *n* electric  
 train  
 전람관 [chollamgwan] *n* exhibi-  
 tion hall  
 전람회 [chollamhoe] *n* exhibition  
 전보 [chonbo] *n* telegram  
 전보용지 [chonboyongji] *n* tele-  
 gram form  
 전부 [chonbu] *n* all  
 전사 [chonsa] *n* soldier  
 전선 [chonson] *n* (battle) front  
 전진하다 [chonjinhada] *vi* ad-  
 vance  
 전쟁 [chonjaeng] *n* war  
 전차 [choncha] *n* streetcar,  
 tram car  
 전체 [chonche] *n* whole, all  
 전취물 [chonchwimul] *n* gains  
 전통 [chontong] *n* tradition

전투 [chontu] *n* battle  
 전투적 [chontujok] *n* militant  
 전하다 [chonhada] *vt* inform  
 전화 [chonhwa] *n* telephone  
 전우 [chonu] *n* comrade-in-arms  
 전에 [chone] *n dat* before  
 젊다 [chomda] *a* young  
 점 [chom] *n* point  
 점수 [chomsu] *n* mark  
 점심 [chomsim] *n* lunch  
 점심밥 [chomsimbap] *n* lunch  
 점심시간 [chomsimsigan] *n* din-  
 ner hour [ch  
 점심식사 [chomsimsiksa] *n* lun-  
 점견 [chopgyon] *n* interview,  
 reception [waiter  
 접대원 [chopdaewon] *n* steward,  
 접수 [chopsu] *n* front desk  
 접수하다 [chopsuhada] *vt* rece-  
 접시 [chopsi] *n* plate [live  
 정거장 [chong·gojang] *n* (rail-  
 way) station [power  
 정권 [chong·gwon] *n* political  
 정류소 [chongryuso] *n* stop  
 정말 [chongmal] *ad* truly  
 정상적으로 [chongsangjoguro] *n*  
*ad* in a regular way  
 정식 [chongsik] *n* table d'hôte  
 정신 [chongsin] *n* spirit  
 정전 [chongjon] *n* ceasefire  
 정전협정 [chongjonhyopjong] *n*  
 armistice agreement  
 정지 [chongji] *n* stop  
 정치 [chongchi] *n* politics  
 정책 [chongchaek] *n* policy  
 정책적 [chongchaekjok] *n* of  
 policy



젓다 [chotda] *vi* be wet  
 젓먹이 [chonmogi] *n* suckling  
 조 [cho] *n* set l child  
 조건 [choggon] *n* condition  
 조국 [choguk] *n* fatherland  
 조사하다 [chosahada] *vi, vt*  
     investigate  
 조선 [choson] *n* Korea  
 조선로동당 [chosonrodongdang]  
     *n* the Workers' Party of  
     Korea  
 조선로동당원 [chosonrodongdang  
     won] *n* member of the Work-  
     ers' Party of Korea  
 조선말 [chosonmal] *n* Korean,  
     the Korean language  
 조선민주주의인민공화국 [choson  
     minjujuuinmin-gonghwaguk] *n*  
     the Democratic People's Re-  
     public of Korea, the DPRK  
 조선반도 [chosonbando] *n* the  
     Korean Peninsula [ean  
 조선사람 [chosonsaram] *n* Kor-  
 조선혁명 [chosonhyongmyong] *n*  
     the Korean revolution  
 조선혁명박물관 [chosonhyong  
     myongbangmulgwan] *n* Korean  
     Revolution Museum  
 조선어 [chosono] *n* Korean, the  
     Korean language  
 조선음식 [chosonumsik] *n*  
     Korean food  
 조선인민 [chosoninmin] *n* the  
     Korean people  
 조선인민군 [chosoninmin-gun] *n*  
     the Korean People's Army  
 조심하다 [chosimhada] *vi, vt*  
     be careful

조직 [chojik] *n* organization  
 조직생활 [chojiksaenghwal] *n*  
     organizational life  
 조직하다 [chojikada] *vt* organize  
 조영사전 [choyongsajon] *n*  
     Korean-English dictionary  
 조용하다 [choyonghada] *a* quiet,  
     silent, still  
 조용히 [choyong-i] *ad* still  
 존경 [chon-gyong] *n* respect  
 존재 [chonjae] *n* existence  
 졸업하다 [choropada] *vt* gradu-  
     ate  
 좀 [chom] *ad* a little  
 좁다 [chopda] *a* narrow  
 종합대학 [chonghap-daehak] *n*  
     university [yee  
 종업원 [chong-obwon] *n* emplo-  
 종이 [chong-i] *n* paper  
 좋다 [chota] *a* good  
 주 [chu] *n* week  
 주권 [chugwon] *n* sovereignty  
 주년 [chunyon] *n* anniversary  
 주다 [chuda] *vt* give  
 주무시다 [chumusida] *vi* sleep  
     (in the meaning of respect)  
 주문하다 [chumunhada] *vt* order  
 주민 [chumin] *n* inhabitants  
 주사 [chusa] *n* injection  
 주식 [chusok] *n* president  
 주소 [chuso] *n* address  
 주체 [chuche] *n* Juche 「Idea  
 주체사상 [chuchesasang] *n* Juche  
 주체사상탑 [chuchesasangtap] *n*  
     the Tower of Juche Idea  
 주체적 [chuchejok] *n* Juche  
 주택 [chutaek] *n* dwelling  
     (house)

주인 [chuin] <i>n</i> master	지도자 [chidoja] <i>n</i> leader
주인공 [chuin.gong] <i>n</i> hero, heroine	지대 [chidae] <i>n</i> zone
주일 [chuil] <i>n</i> weekday, week	지배하다 [chibaehada] <i>vt</i> govern
주의 [chuui] <i>n</i> attention	지배인 [chibaein] <i>n</i> director, manager
주의하다 [chuuihada] <i>vi</i> pay attention to	지식 [chisik] <i>n</i> knowledge
죽 [chuk] <i>n</i> gruel	지지하다 [chijihada] <i>vt</i> support
죽다 [chukda] <i>vi</i> die	지진 물고기 [chijin mulgogi] <i>n</i> with att fo boiled fish
죽음 [chugum] <i>n</i> death	지키다 [chikida] <i>vt</i> defend
준비 [chunbi] <i>n</i> preparation	지하철도 [chihacholdo] <i>n</i> underground (railway), subway
준비하다 [chunbihada] <i>vi, vt</i> prepare	직장 [chikjang] <i>n</i> work place, workshop
중공업 [chung.gong.op] <i>n</i> heavy industry	직업 [chigop] <i>n</i> occupation
중심 [chungsim] <i>n</i> centre	진달래 [chindallae] <i>n</i> azalea
중지하다 [chungjihada] <i>vt</i> stop	진리 [chilli] <i>n</i> truth
중학교 [chunghakgyo] <i>n</i> middle school	질 [chil] <i>n</i> quality
중앙 [chung.ang] <i>n</i> centre	질서 [chilso] <i>n</i> order
중요하다 [chung.yohada] <i>a</i> important	짐 [chim] <i>n</i> baggage
즐겁다 [chulgopda] <i>a</i> merry	짐나르는 사람 [chimnarunun sam] <i>n</i> with att fo porter
즐기다 [chulgida] <i>vt</i> like	짐차 [chimcha] <i>n</i> truck
증기 [chung.gi] <i>n</i> steam	짐표 [chimpyo] <i>n</i> claim tag
증명서 [chungmyongso] <i>n</i> certificate	집 [chip] <i>n</i> house
증오하다 [chung.ohada] <i>vt</i> hate	집다 [chipda] <i>vt</i> pick (up)
지구 [chigu] <i>n</i> earth	집단 [chipdan] <i>n</i> collective
지금 [chigum] <i>n</i> now	집단체조 [chipdanchejo] <i>n</i> mass gymnastic display
지금전보 [chigupjonbo] <i>n</i> urgent telegram	집짐승 [chipjimsung] <i>n</i> domestic animal
지난날 [chinannal] <i>n</i> past (days)	재다 [chaeda] <i>vt</i> measure
지난해 [chinanhae] <i>n</i> last year	재료 [chaeryo] <i>n</i> material
지내다 [chinaeda] <i>vi</i> live	재미 [chaemi] <i>n</i> interest
지다 [chida] <i>vi</i> lose	재산 [chaesan] <i>n</i> property
지당하다 [chidanghada] <i>a</i> right	재월이 [chaetori] <i>n</i> ashtray
지도 <sup>1</sup> [chido] <i>n</i> map	제 <sup>1</sup> [che] <i>pron</i> I; my
지도 <sup>2</sup> [chido] <i>n</i> leading	제 <sup>2</sup> [che] <i>prefix</i> "order"

제국주의 [chegukjuui] *n* imperialism  
 제국주의자 [chegukjuuija] *n* imperialist  
 제기하다 [chegihada] *vt* propose

제도 [chedo] *n* system  
 제철 [chechol] *n* suitable time  
 제의하다 [cheuihada] *vt* propose  
 쥐 [chwi] *n* rat

## 大 [ch]

차<sup>1</sup> [cha] *n* car  
 차<sup>2</sup> [cha] *n* tea  
 차<sup>3</sup> [cha] *incomp n* order  
 차다 [chada] *a* cold  
 차례 [charye] *n* order  
 차장 [chajang] *n* conductor  
 차표 [chapyo] *n* ticket  
 차이 [chai] *n* difference  
 착륙 [changryuk] *n* landing [ploit]  
 착취하다 [chakchwhihada] *vt* exploit  
 찬성 [chansong] *n* approval [ant]  
 찬연하다 [chanyonhada] *a* brilliant  
 찬음식 [chanumsik] *n* entrée  
 참가하다 [chamgahada] *vi* take part in  
 참관 [chamgwan] *n* visit [isit]  
 참관하다 [chamgwanhada] *vt* v-  
 참으로 [chamuro] *ad* really  
 참외 [chamoe] *n* melon  
 창광산려관 [chang·gwangsansryogwan] *n* Changgwangsansan Ho-  
 창문 [changmun] *n* window [tel]  
 창조하다 [changjohada] *vi, vt*  
 찾다 [chatda] *vt* seek [create]  
 처방 [chobang] *n* prescription  
 처음 [choum] *n* first  
 천<sup>1</sup> [chon] *n* cloth  
 천<sup>2</sup> [chon] *num* thousand  
 천리 [cholli] *n* one thousand [ri]  
 천리마 [chollima] *n* Chollima

천리마동상 [chollimadongsang] *n* Chollima Statue  
 천만에 [chanmane] *num dat* you are welcome  
 천천히 [chonchoni] *ad* slowly  
 철 [chol] *n* iron [way]  
 철길 [cholgil] *n* railroad, rail-  
 철천지원수 [cholchonjiwonssu] *n* sworn enemy  
 철폐 [cholpe] *n* abolish  
 첫(번)째 [chot(bon)jjae] *num* first  
 청년 [chongnyon] *n* youth  
 청산하다 [chongsanhada] *vt* settle an account  
 초 [cho] *n* second [exceed]  
 초과하다 [chogwahada] *vi, vt*  
 초대장 [chodaejjang] *n* invitation card  
 초대하다 [chodaehada] *vt* invite  
 초상화 [chosanghwa] *n* portrait  
 초소 [choso] *n* post  
 총 [chong] *n* gun  
 총리 [chongri] *n* premier  
 총비서 [chongbiso] *n* General Secretary; general secretary  
 총체로 [chongchero] *n inst* totally  
 초콜레트 [chyokolletu] *n* chocolate  
 추다 [chuda] *vt* dance  
 추동하다 [chudonghada] *vt* pro-

mote  
 축구 [chukgu] *n* football  
 축구선수 [chukgusonsu] *n* foot-  
 ball player  
 축구팀 [chukgutim] *n* football  
 team  
 축배 [chukbae] *n* toast  
 축전 [chukjon] *n* festival; con-  
 gratulatory telegram  
 축하 [chuka] *n* congratulation  
 축하하다 [chukahada] *vt* congra-  
 tulate  
 축원하다 [chugwonhada] *vt* wish  
 출구 [chulgu] *n* exit, gateway  
 출국 [chulguk] *n* departure, exit  
 출국수속 [chulguk·susok] *n* dep-  
 arture procedures  
 출발 [chulbal] *n* departure  
 출발하다 [chulbalhada] *vi*, *vt*  
 leave, start  
 출생하다 [chulsaenghada] *vi* be  
 born [house]  
 출판사 [chulpansa] *n* publishing  
 춤 [chum] *n* dance  
 춥다 [chupda] *a* cold [gh]  
 충분하다 [chungbunhada] *a* enou-  
 chong성 [chungsong] *n* loyalty  
 충심으로 [chungsimuro] *n* inst  
 from (the bottom of) one's  
 heart [ful]  
 충직하다 [chungjikada] *a* faith-  
 충 [chung] *n* floor  
 층층대 [chungchungdae] *n* stairs  
 치다 [chida] *vt* beat [ment]  
 치료 [chiryo] *n* medical treat-  
 치료하다 [chiryohada] *vt* treat  
 치르다 [chiruda] *vt* pay  
 치솔 [chisol] *n* toothbrush

치즈 [chiju] *n* cheese  
 치약 [chiyak] *n* toothpaste  
 친구 [chin·gu] *n* friend  
 친선 [chinson] *n* friendship  
 친척 [chinchok] *n* relative  
 친애하다 [chinaehada] *vi* love  
 칠 [chil] *num* seven  
 칠십 [chilsip] *num* seventy  
 칠월 [chirwol] *n* July  
 침대 [chimdae] *n* bed  
 침대차 [chimdaecha] *n* sleeping  
 carriage  
 침대칸 [chimdaekan] *n* compart-  
 ment  
 침략 [chimryak] *n* aggression  
 침략자 [chimryakja] *n* aggressor  
 침실 [chimsil] *n* bedroom  
 채<sup>1</sup> [chae] *incomp* *n* "house"  
 채<sup>2</sup> [chae] *incomp* *n* "just as  
 it is"  
 책 [chaek] *n* book  
 책방 [chaekbang] *n* bookshop  
 책상 [chaeksang] *n* desk  
 책임비행사 [chagimbihaengsa] *n*  
 capitain  
 체결 [chegyol] *n* conclusion  
 체계 [chegye] *n* system  
 체류 [cheryu] *n* stay  
 체류예정기간 [cheryujejong·gigan]  
*n* intended length of stay  
 체조 [chejo] *n* gymnastics  
 체험 [chehom] *n* experience  
 체육 [cheyuk] *n* physical culture,  
 gymnastics [sium]  
 체육관 [cheyukgwan] *n* gymna-  
 최우등생 [choeudungsaeng] *n*  
 top student

취급하다 [chwigupada] *vi, vt* treat  
취사원 [chwisawon] *n* cook  
취소하다 [chwisohada] *vi, vt* cancel

## ㄱ [k]

칼 [kal] *n* knife  
커피 [kopi] *n* coffee  
컬레 [kolle] *n* pair  
코 [ko] *n* nose  
코코아 [kokoa] *n* cocoa  
커뮤니케 [kommyunike] *n* com-  
munique  
콩 [kong] *n* bean  
쿵 [kung] *ad* plump  
크다 [kuda] *a* big, large  
키로미터 [kirometo] *n* kilometre  
광 [kwang] *ad* bang

## ㄷ [t]

타고가다 [tagogada] *v* with con-  
fo go (by vehicles)  
타다 [tada] *vt* get on [row]  
타도하다 [tadohada] *vt* overth-  
타산하다 [tasanhada] *vt* take  
into consideration  
타자기 [tajagi] *n* typewriter  
타오르다 [taoruda] *vi* burn up  
탁구 [takgu] *n* ping-pong; table-  
tennis  
탁아소 [tagaso] *n* nursery  
탄부 [tanbu] *n* coal-miner  
탄산물 [tansanmul] *n* soda wa-  
ter [born  
탄생하다 [tansaenghada] *vi* be  
탈지면 [taljimyon] *n* absorbent  
cotton  
탑 [tap] *n* tower  
터지다 [tojida] *vi* burst  
턱 [tok] *n* jaw, chin  
토론 [toron] *n* debate  
토론자 [toronja] *n* debater  
토론하다 [toronhada] *vi, vt* debate  
토요일 [toyoil] *n* Saturday  
토의하다 [touihada] *vt* discuss  
톱 [top] *n* saw  
통 [tong] *n* barrel  
통과사증 [tong·gwasajjung] *n*  
transit visa  
통출임 [tongjorim] *n* tinned  
goods  
통지하다 [tongjihada] *vt* inform  
통역 [tong·yok] *n* interpreta-  
tion; interpreter  
통역하다 [tong·yokada] *vi, vt*  
interpret  
통역원 [tong·yogwon] *n* interp-  
reter  
통일 [tong·il] *n* unification  
통일전선 [tong·iljonson] *n* unit-  
ed front  
통일하다 [tong·ilhada] *vt* unify  
투사 [tusa] *n* fighter  
투쟁 [tuojaeng] *n* struggle  
트렁크 [turongku] *n* trunk  
특별하다 [tukbyolhada] *a* special

특별히 [tukbyori] *ad* especially  
 특히 [tuki] *ad* especially  
 틀리다 [tullida] *vi* be mistaken  
 태도 [taedo] *n* attitude  
 태양 [taeyang] *n* sun  
 태어나다 [taeyonada] *vi* be born

태우다 [taeuda] *causat v* take in  
 택시 [taeksi] *n* taxi  
 택시정류소 [taeksijongryuso] *n*  
 taxi stand  
 레제 [teje] *n* thesis [sion  
 텔레비죤 [tellebijyon] *n* televi-

## ㄷ [p]

파괴 [pago] *n* destruction  
 파괴하다 [pagoehada] *vt* destroy  
 파도 [pado] *n* wave  
 파마 [pama] *n* permanent wave  
 파시즘 [pasijum] *n* fascism  
 파운드 [paundu] *n* pound  
 판매원 [panmaewon] *n* seller  
 팔<sup>1</sup> [pal] *n* arm  
 팔<sup>2</sup> [pal] *num* eight  
 팔다 [palda] *vt* sell  
 팔다리 [paldari] *n* limb  
 팔십 [palsip] *num* eighty  
 팔꿈치 [palggumchi] *n* elbow  
 팔월 [parwol] *n* August  
 퍼지다 [pojida] *vi* spread [ent  
 편리하다 [pyollihada] *a* conveni-  
 편지 [pyonji] *n* letter  
 평화 [pyonghwa] *n* peace [ful  
 평화롭다 [pyonghwaropda] *a* peace-  
 평화적 [pyonghwajok] *n* peaceful  
 평화시대 [pyonghwajida] *n*  
 peace zone  
 평양 [pyongyang] *n* Pyongyang  
 평양국제문화회관 [pyongyang-guk  
 jemunhwahaegwan] *n* Pyong-  
 yang International House of  
 Culture

평양대극장 [pyongyangdaeguk  
 jang] *n* Pyongyang  
 Grand Theatre  
 평양산원 [pyongyangsanwon] *n*  
 Pyongyang Maternity Hospi-  
 tal  
 평양지하철도 [pyongyangjihachol  
 do] *n* Pyongyang Metro  
 평양체육관 [pyongyangcheyukgw  
 an] *n* Pyongyang Indoor  
 Stadium  
 포도 [podo] *n* grapes  
 포도술 [podosul] *n* grape wine  
 포크 [poku] *n* fork  
 포위 [powi] *n* encirclement  
 폭격 [pokgyok] *n* bombing  
 폭력 [pongryok] *n* violence  
 표 [pyo] *n* ticket  
 표값 [pyogap] *n* fare  
 표파는곳 [pyopanun-got] *n* ticket  
 office [press  
 표현하다 [pyohyonhada] *vt* ex-  
 푸르다 [puruda] *a* blue  
 풀 [pul] *n* grass  
 품 [pum] *n* breast, bosom  
 품성 [pumsong] *n* character  
 풍부하다 [pungbuhada] *a* rich  
 풍습 [pungsup] *n* custom

프로레타리아 [puroretaria] *n*  
 proletarian [form  
 프래트홈 [puraetuhom] *n* plat -  
 피 [pi] *n* blood  
 피곤하다 [pigonhada] *a* get tired  
 피다 [pida] *vi* bloom  
 피부 [pibu] *n* skin  
 피부과 의사 [pibuggwauisa] *n*  
 dermatologist

피아노 [piano] *n* piano  
 피압박민족 [piapbakminjok] *n*  
 oppressed nation  
 필름 [pillim] *n* film [sary  
 필요하다 [piryohada] *a* neces -  
 폐 [pe] *n* lung  
 페이지 [peji] *n* page  
 펜 [pen] *n* pen

## ㅎ [h]

하나 [hana] *num* one  
 하늘 [hanul] *n* sky  
 하다 [hada] *vt* do [ly  
 하마트면 [hamatumyon] *ad* near-  
 학교 [hakgyo] *n* school  
 학습 [haksup] *n* study [house  
 학습당 [haksupdang] *n* study  
 학습장 [haksupjang] *n* notebook  
 학습하다 [haksupada] *vt* study  
 학생 [haksaeng] *n* pupil  
 학생소년궁전 [haksaengsonyon · g  
 ungjon] *n* students and childr-  
 en's palace  
 한 [han] *num* one  
 한결같이 [han · gyolgachi] *adv*  
 unanimously  
 한계 [han · gye] *n* limit  
 한없이 [hanopsi] *ad* limitlessly  
 할머니 [halmoni] *n* grandmother  
 할아버지 [haraboji] *n* grand-  
 father  
 함께 [hamgge] *ad* together  
 합격하다 [hapgyokada] *vi, vt*  
 pass  
 합창 [hapchang] *n* chorus  
 항공 [hang · gong] *n* aviation

항공편 [hang · gongpyon] *n* by air  
 mail  
 항공편지 [hang · gongpyonji] *n*  
 air letter  
 항공우편 [hang · gong · upyon] *n*  
 aerial post, air mail  
 항구 [hang · gu] *n* harbour  
 항로번호 [hangrobonho] *n* flight  
 number  
 항상 [hangsang] *ad* always  
 항일 [hang · il] *n* anti-Japan(ese)  
 항일투사 [hang · iltusa] *n* anti-  
 Japanese fighter  
 향도자 [hyangdoja] *n* leader  
 허리 [hori] *n* waist  
 혀 [hyo] *n* tongue  
 혁명 [hyongmyong] *n* revolution  
 혁명가 [hyongmyong · ga] *n* revolu-  
 tionary  
 혁명렬사릉 [hyongmyongryolsa  
 nung] *n* revolutionary marty-  
 rs' cemetery  
 혁명박물관 [hyongmyongbangmul  
 gwan] *n* revolutionary museum  
 혁명사상 [hyongmyongsasang] *n*  
 revolutionary ideas

혁명적 [hyongmyongjok] *n* revolutionary  
 혁명하다 [hyongmyonghada] *vi* make revolution  
 혁신 [hyoksin] *n* innovation  
 현관 [hyon-gwan] *n* front door, entrance  
 현대적 [hyondaejok] *n* modern  
 현명하다 [hyonmyonghada] *a* wise [velop  
 현상하다 [hyonsanghada] *vt* de-  
 현실적 [hyonsiljok] *n* real  
 현저하다 [hyonjohada] *a* remarkable  
 혈압 [hyorap] *n* blood pressure  
 협동농민 [hyopdongnongmin] *n* co-operative peasant  
 협동화 [hyopdonghwa] *n* co-operativization  
 협정 [hyopjong] *n* agreement  
 형 [hyong] *n* elder brother  
 형제 [hyongje] *n* brother  
 형제국가 [hyongjegukga] *n* fraternal country  
 형제당 [hyongjedang] *n* fraternal party [al  
 형제적 [hyongjejok] *n* fraternal  
 호 [ho] *n* number  
 호수 [hosu] *n* lake  
 호실 [hosil] *n* room  
 호실관리원 [hosilgwalliwon] *n* chambermaid  
 혹은 [hogun] *ad* or  
 혼자 [honja] *n* alone  
 후계자 [hugyeja] *n* successor  
 후대 [hudae] *n* coming generation

후추가루 [huchuggaru] *n* pepper  
 후에 [hue] *n dat* after  
 훌륭하다 [hullyunghada] *a* fine  
 휴게실 [hyugyesil] *n* lounge  
 휴식 [hyusik] *n* rest; interval  
 흐르다 [huruda] *vi* flow  
 흐리다 [hurida] *a* cloudy  
 흥미 [hungmi] *n* interest  
 힘 [him] *n* power, might  
 힘살 [himsal] *n* muscles  
 힘껏 [himggot] *ad* with all one's strength  
 해<sup>1</sup> [hae] *n* sun  
 해<sup>2</sup> [hae] *n* year  
 해돋이 [haedoji] *n* sunrise  
 해방 [haebang] *n* liberation  
 해방되다 [haebangdoeda] *vi* be liberated [rate  
 해방하다 [haebanghada] *vt* liberate  
 햇빛 [haetbbit] *n* sunshine  
 핵무기 [haengmugi] *n* nuclear  
 햄 [haem] *n* ham [weapons  
 행복 [haengbok] *n* happiness  
 행복하다 [haengbokada] *a* happy  
 행성 [haengsong] *n* planet  
 행진하다 [haengjinhada] *vi* march  
 헤어지다 [heyojida] *vi* part from  
 회견 [hoegyon] *n* interview  
 회담 [hoedam] *n* talk  
 회복되다 [hoebokdoeda] *vi* be recovered  
 회복하다 [hoebokada] *vt* recover  
 회화 [hoehwa] *n* conversation  
 회의 [hoeui] *n* meeting  
 희다 [huida] *a* white  
 화장품 [hwajangpum] *n* cosmetic



화학 [hwahak] *a* chemistry  
 화환 [hwahwan] *n* wreath  
 화요일 [hwayoil] *n* Tuesday  
 환호 [hwanho] *n* cheer  
 환호하다 [hwanhohada] *vi* cheer

환영 [hwanyong] *n* welcome  
 환영하다 [hwanyonghada] *vt*  
 welcome  
 활짝 [hwaljjak] *ad* widely

## ㄱ [gg]

깨부시다 [ggabusida] *vt* break  
 깎다 [ggakda] *vt* pare, shear,  
 shave  
 꼬냑 [ggonyaku] *n* cognac  
 꼬끼오 [ggoggio] *ad* cock-a-doo-  
 dle-doo  
 꼭 [ggok] *ad* exactly  
 꽃 [ggot] *n* flower  
 꽃다발 [ggotdabal] *n* bouquet;  
 bunch of flowers [bud  
 꽃망울 [ggonmang.ul] *n* flower  
 꽃방 [ggotbang] *n* florist's shop

꿀 [ggul] *n* honey  
 꿈 [ggum] *n* dream  
 끝 [ggut] *n* end  
 끝나다 [ggunnada] *vi* finish  
 끝내다 [ggunnaeda] *causat v* fi-  
 nish  
 끼다 [ggida] *vt* put on  
 깨다 [ggaeda] *vt* break  
 깨끗하다 [ggaeggutada] *a* clean  
 깨우다 [ggaеuda] *causat v* wake  
 꽤 [ggwae] *ad* pretty

## ㄷ [dd]

따라가다 [ddaragada] *vt* follow  
 따로 [ddaro] *ad* apart  
 따르다 [ddaruda] *vt* follow  
 따사롭다 [ddasaropda] *a* warm  
 따뜻하다 [ddaddutada] *a* warm  
 딸 [ddal] *n* daughter  
 딸기 [ddalgi] *n* strawberry  
 달러 [ddalla] *n* dollar  
 땀 [ddam] *n* sweat  
 땅 [ddang] *n* earth  
 떠나다 [ddonada] *vi, vt* leave

떠난곳 [ddonangot] *n* place of  
 departure  
 떠메다 [ddomeda] *vt* shoulder  
 떡 [ddok] *n* rice-cake  
 떨다 [ddolda] *vi* tremble  
 떨어지다 [ddorojida] *vi* fall  
 또한 [ddohan] *ad* too, also  
 뚜렷하다 [dduryotada] *a* clear  
 뜨겁다 [ddugopda] *a* hot  
 뜨다 [dduda] *vi* float  
 때 [ddae] *n* time  
 때문 [ddaemun] *incomp n* reason

## ㅂㅅ [bb]

배다 [bbada] *n* butter  
 빠르다 [bbaruda] *a* quick, fast  
 빨갈다 [bbalgata] *a* red  
 빨리 [bballi] *ad* quickly, fast  
 빨래집 [bballaejjip] *n* laundry  
 빨찌산 [bbaljjisan] *n* partisan  
 빵 [bbang] *n* bread  
 뺨 [bbyam] *n* cheek

배스 [bbosu] *n* bus  
 배스정류소 [bbosujongryuso] *n*  
 bus stop  
 뼈 [bbyo] *n* bone  
 뱃트 [bbotu] *n* boat  
 뿐만아니라 [bbunmananira]  
*phrase* not only..., but ...

## ㅅㅅ [ss]

싸다<sup>1</sup> [ssada] *a* cheap  
 싸다<sup>2</sup> [ssada] *vt* wrap  
 싸우다 [ssauda] *vi* fight  
 싸움 [ssaum] *n* fight  
 쌀 [ssal] *n* rice  
 쌍 [ssang] *n* pair  
 쌓다 [ssata] *vt* pile up, heap  
 up  
 쌓이다 [ssaida] *pass* be piled  
 써넣다 [ssonota] *v* with *con* fo

register  
 쓰다<sup>1</sup> [ssuda] *a* bitter  
 쓰다<sup>2</sup> [ssuda] *vt* write  
 쓰다<sup>3</sup> [ssuda] *vt* put on  
 쓰다<sup>4</sup> [ssuda] *vt* use  
 쓰이다 [ssuida] *pass* be written  
 쓸다 [ssulda] *vt* sweep [ed  
 씻기다 [ssitgida] *pass* be wash-  
 씻다 [ssitda] *vt* wash

## ㅈㅈ [jj]

짜다 [jjada] *vt* weave  
 짝 [jjak] *n* pair; piece  
 짧다 [jjapda] *a* short

짧은양말 [jjalbunyangmal] *n*  
 찢다 [jjitda] *vt* tear [socks  
 째 [jjae] *suffix* "order"

## ㅇ

아 [a] *int* oh!  
 아니 [ani] *ad* not  
 아니다 [anida] *a* not

아니하다<sup>1</sup> [anihada] *a* not  
 아니하다<sup>2</sup> [anihada] *vt* not  
 아들 [adul] *n* son

아름다움 [arumdaum] *n* beauty  
 아름답게 [arumdapge] *a ad* fo  
 beautifully  
 아름답다 [arumdapda] *a* beauti-  
 ful  
 아래에 [araee] *n dat* below  
 아마 [ama] *ad* perhaps  
 아무 [amu] *pron* anyone  
 아무리 [amuri] *ad* how  
 아메리카 [amerika] *n* America  
 아버지 [abonim] *n* father (in  
 the meaning of respect)  
 아버지 [aboji] *n* father  
 아세아 [asea] *n* Asia  
 아저씨 [ajossi] *n* uncle  
 아주 [aju] *ad* very  
 아직 [ajik] *ad* still  
 아침 [achim] *n* morning  
 아침노을 [achimnoul] *n* morning  
 glow  
 「fast  
 아침식사 [achimsiksa] *n* break-  
 아프다 [apuda] *a* painful  
 아프리카 [apurika] *n* Africa  
 아홉 [ahop] *num* nine  
 아홉번째 [ahopbonjjae] *num*  
 ninth  
 아흔 [ahun] *num* ninety  
 아끼다 [aggida] *vt* spare  
 아이 [ai] *n* child  
 아이고 [aigo] *int* ah!  
 안 [an] *ad* not  
 안경 [an-gyong] *n* glasses  
 안개 [an-gae] *n* fog  
 안과의사 [an-gwauisa] *n* oculist  
 안녕 [annyong] *n* well-being  
 안녕하다 [annyonghada] *a* well  
 안내서 [annaeso] *n* guide-book  
 안내하다 [annaehada] *vt* show

안내원 [annaewon] *n* guide  
 안다 [anda] *vt* embrace  
 안마 [anma] *n* massage  
 안정하다 [anjonghada] *vi, vt*  
 keep quiet  
 안해 [anhae] *n* wife  
 앉다 [anda] *vi* sit  
 앉히다 [anchida] *causat v* set  
 않다<sup>1</sup> [anta] *a* not  
 않다<sup>2</sup> [anta] *vt* not  
 알곡 [algok] *n* grain  
 알게 되다 [alge toeda] *v with*  
*ad fo* get acquainted with,  
 get to know  
 알다 [alda] *vt* know [a mottled  
 알락달락하다 [allakdallakada]  
 알리다 [allida] *causat v* let  
 know, inform  
 앓다 [alta] *vi, vt* be ill  
 압박 [apbak] *n* oppression  
 압박하다 [apbakada] *vt* oppress  
 앞날 [amnal] *n* future  
 앞문 [ammun] *n* front gate  
 앞으로 [apuro] *n inst* forward  
 앞에 [ape] *n dat* before  
 야 [ya] *int* oh!  
 약<sup>1</sup> [yak] *n* medicine  
 약<sup>2</sup> [yak] *pre-n* about  
 약간 [yakgan] *n* few, little  
 약국 [yaguk] *n* pharmacy  
 약속하다 [yaksokada] *vt* promise  
 약수 [yaksu] *n* mineral water  
 약하다 [yakada] *a* weak  
 양고기 [yang-gogi] *n* mutton  
 양복 [yangbok] *n* clothes  
 양복점 [yangbokjom] *n* tailor  
 얕다 [yatda] *a* shallow [shop  
 어느 [onu] *pron* which  
 어둡다 [odupda] *a* dark

어디 [odi] <i>pron</i> what place	없이 [opsi] <i>ad</i> without
어디에 [odie] <i>pron dat</i> where	여기 [yogi] <i>pron</i> this place
어디에서나 [odiesona] <i>pron loc</i> everywhere	여기로 [yogiro] <i>pron inst</i> here, to this place
어렵다 [oryopda] <i>a</i> difficult	여기에 [yogie] <i>pron dat</i> here
어른 [orun] <i>n</i> adult	여덟 [yodol] <i>num</i> eight
어리다 [orida] <i>a</i> young	여덟(번)째 [yodol(bon)jjae] <i>num</i> eighth
어린이 [orini] <i>n</i> child	여든 [yodun] <i>num</i> eighty
어머니 [omoni] <i>n</i> mother	여러 [yoro] <i>pre-n</i> many
어머님 [omonim] <i>n</i> mother (in the meaning of respect)	여름 [yorum] <i>n</i> summer
어부 [obu] <i>n</i> fisherman	여보십시오 [yobosipsio] <i>int</i> hullo
어서 [oso] <i>ad</i> please	여섯 [yosot] <i>num</i> six [sixth
어지럽다 [ojiropda] <i>a</i> giddy; dirty	여섯(번)째 [yosot(bon)jjae] <i>num</i>
어제 [oje] <i>n</i> yesterday	여위다 [yowida] <i>vi</i> become thin
어촌 [ochon] <i>n</i> fishing village	역 [yok] <i>n</i> (railway) station
어깨 [oggae] <i>n</i> shoulder	역할 [yokal] <i>n</i> role
어떻게 [oddoke] <i>a ad fo</i> how	연극 [yon·guk] <i>n</i> performance
어떻다 [oddota] <i>a</i> any	연단 [yondan] <i>n</i> platform
어찌 [ojji] <i>ad</i> how	연설 [yonsol] <i>n</i> speech
억 [ok] <i>num</i> hundred million	연설하다 [yonsolhada] <i>vi</i> make speech
억세게 [oksege] <i>a ad fo</i> firmly	연필 [yonpil] <i>n</i> pencil
억압 [ogap] <i>n</i> oppression	연회 [yonhoe] <i>n</i> banquet [hall
언덕 [ondok] <i>n</i> hill	연회장 [yonhoejang] <i>n</i> banquet
언제 [onje] <i>pron</i> when	열 <sup>1</sup> [yol] <i>n</i> heat
언제나 [onjena] <i>ad</i> always	열 <sup>2</sup> [yol] <i>num</i> ten
언어 [ono] <i>n</i> language	열다 [yolda] <i>vt</i> open
얼굴 [olgul] <i>n</i> face	열두 [yoldu] <i>num</i> twelve
얼다 [olda] <i>vi</i> freeze	열두(번)째 [yoldu(bon)jjae] <i>num</i> twelfth
얼마 [olma] <i>pron</i> how many, how much	열둘 [yoldul] <i>num</i> twelve
얼마나 [olmana] <i>ad</i> how	열리다 [yollida] <i>pass</i> be opened
얼음 [orum] <i>n</i> ice	열심히 [yolsimi] <i>ad</i> diligently
얼음보숭이 [orumbosung·i] <i>n</i> ice-cream	열쇠 [yolsoe] <i>n</i> key
없다 [opda] <i>a</i> there is no ...	열하나 [yolhana] <i>num</i> eleven
	열한 [yolhan] <i>num</i> eleven
	열한(번)째 [yolhan(bon)jjae]

num eleventh	오한 [ohan] <i>n</i> chill
열째 [yoljjae] <i>num</i> tenth	오후 [ohu] <i>n</i> afternoon
얇다 [jopda] <i>a</i> thin	오후에 [ohue] <i>n dat</i> in the af- ternoon
엽서 [jopso] <i>n</i> postcard	오빠 [obba] <i>n</i> elder brother
영국 [yong·guk] <i>n</i> England	오이 [oi] <i>n</i> cucumber
영국사람 [yong·guksaram] <i>n</i> Englishman	오월 [owol] <i>n</i> May
영광 [yong·gwang] <i>n</i> glory	온 [on] <i>pre-n</i> whole
영광스럽다 [yong·gwangsurolda] <i>a</i> glorious	올리다 [ollida] <i>causat v</i> raise
영-조사전 [yongjosajon] <i>n</i> Eng- lish-Korean dictionary	올해 [olhae] <i>n</i> this year
영화 [yonghwa] <i>n</i> film [house	올다 [olta] <i>a</i> right
영화관 [yonghwagwan] <i>n</i> cinema	옷 [ot] <i>n</i> clothes [cloakroom
영어 [yong·o] <i>n</i> English	옷말기논곳 [onmatginungot] <i>n</i>
영어판 [yong·opan] <i>n</i> English edition	옹호하다 [onghohada] <i>vt</i> defend
영웅하다 [yong·yonghada] <i>a</i> heroic	요구하다 [yoguhada] <i>vt</i> demand
영웅 [yong·ung] <i>n</i> hero	요드링크 [yodutingku] <i>n</i> iodine
영웅적 [yong·ungjok] <i>n</i> heroic	요람 [yoram] <i>n</i> cradle [tincture
영예 [yong·ye] <i>n</i> honour	요일 [yoil] <i>n</i> weekday
영예롭다 [yong·yeropda] <i>a</i> hon- ourable [nal	용감하다 [yong·gamhada] <i>a</i> brave
영원하다 [yong·wonhada] <i>a</i> eter-	용감히 [yong·gami] <i>ad</i> bravely
영원히 [yong·woni] <i>ad</i> forever	용기 [yong·gi] <i>n</i> courage
오 <sup>1</sup> [o] <i>num</i> five	용무 [yongmu] <i>n</i> business, affair
오 <sup>2</sup> [o] <i>int</i> oh!, o!	용맹 [yongmaeng] <i>n</i> courage
오늘 [onul] <i>n</i> today	용서하다 [yongsogada] <i>vt</i> forgive
오다 [oda] <i>vi</i> come	우리 [uri] <i>pron</i> we
오르다 [oruda] <i>vi</i> rise; get on	우뢰 [uroe] <i>n</i> thunder
오른쪽 [orunjok] <i>n</i> right side	우산 [usan] <i>n</i> umbrella
오리불고기 [oribulgogi] <i>n</i> roast duck	우편 [upyon] <i>n</i> post
오십 [osip] <i>num</i> fifty	우편국 [upyon·guk] post office
오전 [ojon] <i>n</i> beforenoon	우편료금 [upyonryogum] <i>n</i> posta- ge
오전에 [ojone] <i>n dat</i> in the be- forenoon	우편함 [upyonham] <i>n</i> letter box (우편)엽서 [(upyon)yopso] <i>n</i> postcard
오직 [ojik] <i>ad</i> only	우표 [upyo] <i>n</i> stamp
	우연히 [uyoni] <i>ad</i> by chance
	위에 [ue] <i>n dat</i> above
	운동 [undong] <i>n</i> movement

운명 [unmyong] *n* destiny  
 운전수 [unjonsu] *n* driver  
 운하 [unha] *n* canal  
 울다 [ulda] *vi* weep [weep  
 울리다<sup>1</sup> [ullida] *causat v* make  
 울리다<sup>2</sup> [ullida] *vi* sound  
 움직이다 [umjigida] *vi, vt* move  
 웃기다 [utgida] *causat v* make  
 laugh  
 웃다 [utda] *vi, vt* laugh  
 웃옷 [udot] *n* coat  
 웅대하다 [ungdaehada] *a* grand  
 웅장하다 [ung·janghada] *a* grand,  
 magnificent  
 유감스럽게 [yugamsuropge] *a ad*  
 fo to one's regret  
 유격구 [yugyokgu] *n* guerrilla  
 area, partisan area  
 유격대원 [yugyokdaewon] *n* guer  
 유리 [yuri] *n* glass [rilla  
 유명하다 [yumyonghada] *a* fam-  
 ous [en  
 유치원 [yuchiwon] *n* kindergart-  
 유쾌하다 [yukwaehada] *a* pleas-  
 ant  
 유일적 [yuiljok] *n* undivided  
 으뜸 [uddum] *n* first  
 은 [un] *n* silver  
 은행 [unhaeng] *n* bank  
 읊다 [upda] *vt* recite  
 음식 [umsik] *n* food  
 음악 [umak] *n* music  
 음악가 [umakga] *n* musician  
 음악회 [umakoe] *n* concert  
 응 [ung] *int* yes  
 응당 [ungdang] *ad* naturally  
 응접실 [ungjopsil] *n* drawing  
 room

이<sup>1</sup> [i] *num* two  
 이<sup>2</sup> [i] *pron* this  
 이기다 [igida] *vt* win  
 이렇게 [iroke] *a ad* fo so  
 이렇다 [irota] *a* such  
 이르다 [iruda] *vi* arrive  
 이름 [irum] *n* name  
 이리 [iri] *ad* so  
 이마 [ima] *n* forehead  
 이미 [imi] *ad* already [tribute  
 이바지하다 [ibajihada] *vi* con-  
 이발 [ibbal] *n* tooth  
 이상 [isang] *n* more than  
 이슬 [isul] *n* dew  
 이십 [isip] *num* twenty  
 이제 [ije] *n* now  
 2층 [ichung] *n* first floor  
 이야기 [iyagi] *n* story  
 2인용 방 [iinyong bang] *n* twin-  
 bedded room  
 이월 [iwol] *n* February  
 익다 [ikda] *vi* ripen  
 인도하다 [indohada] *vt* lead  
 인민 [inmin] *n* people  
 인민경제 [inmin·gyongje] *n*  
 national economy [Army  
 인민군 [inmin·gun] *n* People's  
 인민군대 [inmin.gundae] *n* Peo-  
 ple's Army  
 인민대중 [inmindaejung] *n* mas-  
 ses of the people  
 인민대학습당 [inmindae-haksup  
 dang] *n* Grand People's Study  
 House  
 인민문화궁전 [inminmunhwagung  
 jon] *n* People's Palace of  
 Culture

인민정권 [inminjong·gwon] <i>n</i> people's power	잃다 [ilta] <i>vt</i> lose
인민학교 [inminhakgyo] <i>n</i> pri- mary school	임무 [immu] <i>n</i> task
인사 [insa] <i>n</i> greeting	입 [ip] <i>n</i> mouth
인사하다 [insahada] <i>vi</i> greet	입구 [ipgu] <i>n</i> entrance
인삼술 [insamsul] <i>n</i> insam wine, ginseng wine	입국 [ipguk] <i>n</i> entry
인상 [insang] <i>n</i> impression	입국수속 [ipguksusok] <i>n</i> entry procedures
인체 [inche] <i>n</i> human body	입다 [ipda] <i>vt</i> put on
인텔리 [interi] <i>n</i> intellectual	입술 [ipsul] <i>n</i> lip
인형 [inhyong] <i>n</i> doll	입원하다 [ibwonhada] <i>vi</i> go to hospital
일 <sup>1</sup> [il] <i>n</i> work	잉크 [ingku] <i>n</i> ink
일 <sup>2</sup> [il] <i>num</i> one	잊다 [itda] <i>vt</i> forget
일 <sup>3</sup> [il] <i>n</i> day	잎 [ip] <i>n</i> leaf
일곱 [ilgop] <i>num</i> seven	있다 [itda] <i>vi</i> there is, be
일곱(번)째 [ilgop(bon)jjae] <i>num</i> seventh	애 [ae] <i>n</i> child
일다 [ilda] <i>vi</i> rise	애국주의 [aegukjuui] <i>n</i> patriotism
일등 [ildung] <i>n</i> first class	애기 [aegi] <i>n</i> baby
1등급 [ildung·gup] <i>n</i> first class	애쓰다 [aessuda] <i>v with n</i> exert oneself
일방 [ilbang] <i>n</i> one side	애 [yae] <i>int</i> hullo
일시적 [ilsijok] <i>n</i> temporary	예 [ye] <i>int</i> yes
일식 [ilsik] <i>n</i> set	예순 [yesun] <i>num</i> sixty
1층 [ilchung] <i>n</i> ground floor	예술 [yesul] <i>n</i> art
일하다 [ilhada] <i>vi</i> work	예술축전 [yesulchukjon] <i>n</i> art festival
일흔 [ilhun] <i>num</i> seventy	외교 [oegyo] <i>n</i> diplomacy
일찌기 [iljjigi] <i>ad</i> early	외교관 [oegyogwan] <i>n</i> diplomat
일찍 [iljjik] <i>ad</i> early	외국 [oeguk] <i>n</i> foreign country
일어나다 [ironada] <i>vi</i> take place; rise	외국어 [oegugo] <i>n</i> foreign lang- uage
일요일 [iryoil] <i>n</i> Sunday	외국인 [oegugin] <i>n</i> foreigner
일요일에 [iryoire] <i>n dat</i> on Sunday	외과의사 [oeggwauisa] <i>n</i> surgeon
1인용 방 [irinyong bang] <i>n</i> sin- gle room	외출하다 [oechulhada] <i>vi</i> go out
일월 [irwol] <i>n</i> January	외투 [oetu] <i>n</i> overcoat
읽다 [ikda] <i>vt</i> read	왼쪽 [oenjjok] <i>n</i> left side
	위 [wi] <i>n</i> stomach
	위대하다 [widaehada] <i>a</i> great

위신 [wisin] *n* dignity  
 위생실 [wisaengsil] *n* toilet  
 위하다 [wihada] *vt* serve  
 위하여 [wihayo] *v con fo* for  
 위험 [wihom] *n* danger  
 위원장 [wiwonjang] *n* chairman  
 위원회 [wiwonhoe] *n* committee  
 의견 [uigyon] *n* opinion  
 의무 [uimu] *n* duty  
 의무적 [uimujok] *n* obligatory  
 의사 [uisa] *n* doctor  
 의자 [uija] *n* chair  
 의정 [uijong] *n* agenda  
 의하여 [uihayo] *v con fo* by,  
 thanks to.  
 의의 [uiui] *n* significance

완수하다 [wansuhada] *vt* fulfil  
 완전하다 [wanjonhada] *a* perfect  
 왕복차표 [wangbokchapyo] *n*  
 round-trip ticket  
 원 [won] *n* circle; Won (unit  
 of Korean currency)  
 원수 [wonsu] *n* marshal  
 원수 [wonssu] *n* enemy  
 원인 [wonin] *n* cause  
 월 [wol] *n* month  
 월요일 [woryoil] *n* Monday  
 왜 [wae] *ad* why  
 왜냐하면 [waenyahamyon] *phrase*  
 for, because  
 웨치다 [wechida] *vi, vt* cry  
 웬 [wen] *pre-n* what

## ENGLISH-KOREAN VOCABULARY

### A

abolish 철폐하다 [cholpehada] *vt*  
 abolition 철폐 [cholpe] *n*  
 about 관하여 [kwanhayo] *v con*  
*fo*; 대략 [taeryak] *n*; 약 [yak]  
*pre-n*  
 above 위에 [ue] *n dat*  
 absorbent cotton 탈지면 [talji  
 myon] *n*  
 academy of sciences 과학원[kwa  
 hagwon] *n*  
 accept 받아들이다[padadurida] *vt*  
 account 계산서 [kyesanso] *n*  
 achieve 달성하다 [talsonghada] *vt*  
 acrobatics 교예 [kyoye] *n*  
 actively 적극적으로 [ckokgukjogu  
 ro] *n inst*  
 actor 배우 [paeu] *n*  
 address 주소[chuso] *n*

addressee 받는 사람[pannunsaram]  
*n with att fo*  
 adhesive tape 반창고[panchanggo] *n*  
 admire 감탄하다 [kamtanhada] *vi*  
 adult 어른 [orun] *n*  
 advance 나아가다 [naagada] *vi*,  
 전진하다 [chonjinhada] *vi*  
 aeroplane 비행기 [pihaeng.gi] *n*  
 Africa 아프리카 [apurika] *n*  
 after 후에 [hue] *n dat*  
 afternoon 오후 [ohu] *n*  
 again 다시 [tasi] *ad*  
 age 나이 [nai] *n*; 살 [sal] *n*  
 agenda 의정 [uijong] *n*  
 aggression 침략[chimryak] *n*  
 aggressor 침략자 [chimryakja] *n*  
 agreement 협정 [hyopjong] *n*  
 agricultural 농업의 [nongobui] *n*



gen  
 agriculture 농사 [nongsa] *n*  
 ah! 아이고 [aigo] *int*  
 air 공기 [kong-gi] *n* [onji] *n*  
 air letter 항공편지 [hang.gongpy  
 airline ticket 비행기표 [pihaeng.  
 gipyo] *n*  
 airman 비행사 [pihaengsa] *n*  
 airport 비행장 [pihaengjang] *n*  
 airport tax 비행장관세 [pihaeng.  
 jang.gwanse] *n*  
 all 다 [ta] *ad*, 모두 [modu] *ad*;  
 모든 [modun] *pre-n*; 전부 [chon  
 bu] *n*  
 alliance 연합 [ryonhap] *n*; 동맹  
 [tongmaeng] *n*  
 almost 거의 [kou] *ad*  
 alone 혼자 [honja] *n*  
 always 언제나 [onjena] *ad*; 늘  
 [nul] *ad*, 항상 [hangsang] *ad*  
 ambassador 대사 [taesa] *n*  
 America 아메리카 [amerika] *n*  
 and 및 [mit] *ad*, 그리고 [kuri  
 go] *v con fo*  
 animal 동물 [tongmul] *n*  
 anniversary 주년 [chunyon] *n*; 돌  
 [tol] *n*  
 announcement 광고 [kwang.go] *n*  
 annual plan 연간계획 [nyon.gan  
 gyehoek] *n*  
 another person 남 [nam] *n*  
 answer 대답 [taedap] *n*; 대답하  
 다 [taedapada] *vi*  
 anti-imperialism 반제 [panje] *n*  
 anti-imperialist 반제의 [panje  
 ui] *n gen*, 반제적 [panjejok] *n*  
 anti-imperialist solidarity 반  
 제련대성 [panjeryondaessong] *n*

anti-Japan(ese) 항일 [hang.il] *n*  
 anti-Japanese 반일의 [panirui] *n*  
 gen, 항일의 [hang.irui] *n gen*  
 anti-Japanese fighter 항일투  
 사 [hang.iltusa] *n*  
 anti-US(imperialist) 반미 [pan  
 mi] *n*  
 any 어떤 [oddon] *a att fo*  
 anyone 아무 [amu] *pron*  
 apart 따로 [ddaro] *ad*  
 appear 나타나다 [natanada] *vi*  
 appetite 식욕 [sigyok] *n*  
 apple 사과 [sagwa] *n* [vt  
 apply 적용하다 [chogyong.hada]  
 approval 찬성 [chansong] *n*  
 April 사월 [sawol] *n*  
 aquarium 수족관 [sujokgwan] *n*  
 arbitrarily 함부로 [hamburo] *ad*  
 Arch of Triumph 개선문 [kae  
 sonmun] *n*  
 arduous 잔고한 [kan.gohan] *a*  
 att fo  
 arm 팔 [pal] *n*; 무장하다 [mujang.  
 hada] *vi, vt*  
 armaments 무장 [mujang] *n*  
 armistice agreement 정전협정  
 [chong.jonhyopjong] *n*  
 army 군대 [kundae] *n*  
 armyman 군인 [kunin] *n*  
 arrival 도착 [tochak] *n*  
 arrive 이르다 [iruda] *vi*, 도착하다  
 [tochakada] *vi*  
 art 예술 [yesul] *n*  
 art festival 예술축전 [yesulchuk  
 jon] *n*  
 article 론설 [ronsol] *n*  
 as 같이 [kachi] *ad*  
 ashtray 재떨이 [chaetori] *n*

Asia 아세아 [asea] *n*  
ask 묻다 [mutda] *vi, vt*  
assort 코르다 [koruda] *vt*  
at any cost 기어이 [kioi] *ad*  
attention 주의 [chuui] *n*  
attitude 태도 [taedo] *n*  
August 팔월 [parwol] *n*

authority 권위 [kwonwi] *n*  
automation 자동화 [chadonghwa] *n*  
autumn 가을 [kaul] *n*  
aviation 항공 [hang.gong] *n*  
ax 도끼 [toggi] *n*  
azalea 진달래 [chindallae] *n*

## B

baby 애기 [aegi] *n*  
back 뒤 [twi] *n*; 등 [tung] *n*  
bad 나쁜 [nabbun] *a att fo*  
bag 가방 [kabang] *n*  
baggage 짐 [chim] *n*  
ball 공 [kong] *n*  
ballet 바레무용 [paremuyong] *n*  
banana 바나나 [panana] *n*  
bandage 붕대 [pungdae] *n*  
bank 은행 [unhaeng] *n*  
banquet 연회 [yonhoe] *n*  
banquet hall 연회장 [yonhoejang]  
barbarity 만행 [manhaeng] *n*  
barber 리발사 [ribalsa] *n*  
barber's shop 리발소 [ribalso] *n*  
barely 겨우 [kyou] *ad*  
barrel 통 [tong] *n*  
base 기지 [kiji] *n*  
basis 기본 [kibon] *n*  
bath 목욕탕 [mogyoktang] *n*  
bath-room 목욕실 [mogyoksil] *n*  
bathe 목욕하다 [mogyokada] *vi*  
bathing 목욕 [mogyok] *n*  
battle 전투[chontu] *n*  
be 이다[ida]end; 있다[itda] *vi*;  
    계시다 [kyesida] *vi*  
be born 태어나다 [taeyonada] *vi*,  
    출생하다 [chulsaenghada] *vi*,

탄생하다 [tansaenghada] *vi*  
beat 치다 [chida] *vt*  
beautiful 고운 [koun] *a att fo*  
    아름다운 [arumdaun] *a att fo*  
beautifully 아름답게 [arumdapge]  
    *a ad fo*  
beauty 아름다움 [arumdaum] *n*  
because 왜냐하면 [waenyahamyon]  
    *phrase*  
become 되다 [toeda] *vi*  
bed 침대 [chimdae] *n*  
bedroom 침실 [chimsil] *n*  
bee 벌 [pol] *n*  
beef 소고기 [sogogi] *n*  
beer 맥주 [maekju] *n*  
before 앞에 [ape] *n dat* ;  
    [chone] *n dat*  
beforehand 미리 [miri] *ad*  
beforenoon 오전 [ojon] *n*  
begin 시작하다 [sijakada] *vt*  
beginning 시작 [sijak] *n*  
behind 뒤에 [twie] *n dat*  
belly 배 [pae] *n*  
below 아래에 [araee] *n dat*  
besides 그 밖에 [kupagge] *n dat*  
    *with pron, 그뿐아니라 [kubbuna*  
    *nira] phrase*  
best 가장 좋은 [kajangchoun] *a att*

fo with ad  
 better 나은 [naun] a att fo  
 bicycle 자전거 [chajon-go] n  
 bill 계산서 [kyesanso] n  
 billeting area 숙영지 [sugyongji] n  
 bind 묶다 [mukda] vt  
 bird 새 [sae] n  
 birthday 생일 [saeng-il] n  
 birthplace 난곳 [nan-got] n  
 bitter 쓴 [ssun] a att fo  
 black 검은 [komun] a att fo  
 blood 피 [pi] n  
 blood pressure 혈압 [hyorap] n  
 bloom 피다 [pida] vi  
 blue 푸른 [purun] a att fo, 하늘  
 빛의 [hanulbichui] n gen [n  
 board of directors 리사회 [risahoe]  
 boarding card 탑승권 [tapsung-gwon]  
 boat 보트 [bbotu] n [n  
 body 몸 [mom] n  
 boil 삶다 [samda] vt  
 boiled egg 삶은 달걀 [salmun tal  
 gal] n with att fo  
 boiled fish 지진 물고기 [chijin  
 mulgogi] n with att fo  
 boiled rice 밥 [pap] n  
 bold 대담한 [taedamhan] a att fo  
 bombing 폭격 [pokgyok] n  
 bond 뉴대 [nyudae] n  
 bone 뼈 [bbyo] n  
 book 책 [chaek] n; 권 [kwon] n  
 bookshop 책방 [chaekbang] n  
 bosom 품 [pum] n  
 botanical garden 식물원 [singmu  
 rwon] n  
 both 쌍방의 [ssangbang-ui] n gen  
 bottle 병 [pyong] n  
 bouquet 꽃다발 [ggotdabal] n

boy 소년 [sonyon] n [n  
 branch 가지 [kaji] n, 부문 [pumun]  
 brave 용감한 [yong.gamhan] a att  
 fo  
 bravely 용감히 [yong.gami] ad  
 bread 빵 [bbang] n  
 break 깨다 [ggaeda] vt; 까부시다  
 [ggabusida] vt  
 breakfast 아침식사 [achimsiksa]  
 n; 아침식사를 하다 [achimsiksa  
 rul hada] v with n  
 breast 가슴 [kasum] n  
 bridge 다리 [tari] n  
 bright 밝은 [palgun] a att fo  
 brilliant 찬연한 [chanyonhan] a  
 att fo  
 bring 가져오다 [kajyooda] vt; 가  
 져다주다 [kajyodajuda] vt  
 broad daylight 대낮 [taenat] n  
 broadcast 방송하다 [pangsong .ha  
 da] vt  
 broadcasting 방송 [pangsong] n  
 brother 형제 [hyongje] n  
 build 건설하다 [konsolhada] vt  
 burn 불타다 [pultada] vi  
 burn up 타오르다 [taoruda] vi  
 burst 터지다 [tojida] vi  
 bus 버스 [bbosu] n [so] n  
 bus stop 버스정류소 [bbosujongryu  
 busily 바빠 [pabbi] ad; 바쁘게  
 [pabbuge] a ad fo  
 business 용무 [yongmu] n  
 busy 바쁜 [pabbun]; a att fo  
 but 그러나 [kurona] ad; 그렇지만  
 [kurochiman] a con fo; 그런데  
 [kuronde] a con fo  
 butter 버터 [bbada] n  
 buy 사다 [sada] vt

buzz 붕붕 [pungbung] *ad*  
 by 의하여 [uihayo] *v con fo*  
 by air mail 항공편 [hang.gong

pyon] *n*  
 by chance 우연히 [uyoni] *ad*

## C

cabbage 가두배추 [kadubaechu] *n*  
 cake 과자 [kwaja] *n*; 생과자  
 [saeng.gwaja] *n*  
 calendar 달력 [tallyok] *n*  
 calf 장딴지 [changddanji] *n*  
 call 부르다 [puruda] *vt*  
 call (a person) on the tele-  
 phone 전화를 걸다 [chonhwarul  
 kolda] *v with n*  
 camera 사진기 [sajin.gi] *n*  
 camera shop 사진용품상점 [sajin  
 yongpumsangjom] *n*  
 canal 운하 [unha] *n* [*vt*  
 cancel 취소하다 [chwisohada] *vi*,  
 cannot 못하다 [motada] *vt*  
 captain 선장 [sonjang] *n*; 책임  
 비행사 [chaegimbihaengsa] *n*  
 capital 수도 [sudo] *n*  
 capitalism 자본주의 [chabonjuui] *n*  
 capitalist 자본가 [chabon.ga] *n*;  
 자본주의적 [chabonjuuijok] *n*  
 car 차 [cha] *n*, 자동차 [chadong  
 cha] *n*  
 carry 나르다 [naruda] *vt*  
 carry out 해내다 [haenaeda] *v*  
 with con fo; 수행하다 [suhaeng.  
 hada] *vt* [got] *n*  
 cash-desk 돈받는곳 [tonbannun.  
 catch 잡다 [chapda] *vt*  
 catch cold 감기들다 [kamgidulda]  
 phrase  
 ceasefire 정전 [chongjon] *n*

celebrate 쇄다 [soeda] *vt*  
 central 중심의 [chungsimui] *n*  
 gen; 중앙의 [chung.ang.ui] *n*  
 gen  
 centre 중심 [chungsim] *n*; 중앙  
 [chung.ang] *n*  
 certainly 반드시 [pandusi] *ad*  
 certificate 증명서 [chungmyongso] *n*  
 chair 의자 [uija] *n*; 결상 [kol  
 sang] *n*; 강좌 [kangjwa] *n*  
 chairman 위원장 [wiwonjang] *n*  
 Chajusong 차주성 [chajussong] *n*  
 chambermaid 호실관리원 [hosilgwai  
 liwon] *n*  
 champagne 샴팡주 [syampangju] *n*  
 change 변하다 [pyonhada] *vi, vt*  
 Changgwangsan Hotel 창광산려관  
 [chang.gwangsan ryogwan] *n*  
 character 성격 [song.gyok] *n*, 품  
 성 [pumsong] *n*  
 cheap 낮은 [nugun] *a att fo*, 싼  
 [ssan] *a att fo*  
 cheek 뺨 [bbyam] *n*  
 cheer 환호 [hwanho] *n*; 환호하다  
 [hwanhohada] *vi*  
 cheese 치즈 [chiju] *n*  
 chemistry 화학 [hwahak] *n*  
 chess 장기 [chang.gi] *n*  
 chestnut 밤 [pam] *n*  
 chicken 닭고기 [takgogi] *n*  
 child 아이 [ai] *n*, 애 [ae] *n*; 어  
 린이 [orini] *n*

**Children's Union member** 소년단원 [sonyondanwon] *n*  
**chill** 오한 [ohan] *n*  
**chocolate** 초콜레트 [chyokolletu] *n*  
**Chollima** 천리마 [chollima] *n*  
**Chollima Statue** 천리마동상 [chollimadongsang] *n*  
**chopsticks** 저가락 [choggarak] *n*  
**chorus** 합창 [hapchang] *n*  
**cigarette** 담배 [tambae] *n*; 가치담배 [kachidambae] *n* [gwan]  
**cinema house** 영화관 [yonghwa] *n*  
**circus** 교예 [kyoye] *n*; 교예극장 [kyoyegukjang] *n*  
**citizen** 공민 [kongmin] *n*  
**city** 도시 [tosi] *n*  
**city bus** 시내버스 [sinaebbosu] *n*  
**city centre** 시내 [sinae] *n*  
**city sightseeing** 시내구경 [sinaegugyeong] *n*  
**city sightseeing bus** 시내관광버스 [sinaegwan. gwangbbosu] *n*  
**claim tag** 짐표 [chimpyo] *n*  
**class** 계급 [kyegup] *n*; 학급 [hakup] *n*  
**classical music** 고전음악 [kojonumak] *n*  
**classroom** 교실 [kyosil] *n* [fo  
**clean** 깨끗한 [ggaeggutan] *a att fo*  
**clear** 맑은 [malgun] *a att fo*  
**clear up** 개다 [kaeda] *vi*, 개이다 [kaeida] *vi*, 맑아지다 [malgajida] *v with con fo*  
**climate** 기후 [kihu] *n*  
**cloakroom** 옷맡기는곳 [onmatginun. got] *n*, 손집맡기는곳 [sonjim

matginungot] *n*  
**cloth** 천 [chon] *n* [n  
**clothes** 옷 [ot] *n*, 양복 [yangbok]  
**cloud** 구름 [kurum] *n*  
**cloudy** 흐린 [hurin] *a att fo*  
**clubhouse** 구락부 [kurakbu] *n*  
**coal** 석탄 [soktan] *n*  
**coal-miner** 탄부 [tanbu] *n*  
**coat** 옷 [udot] *n* [o] *ad*  
**cock-a-doodle-doo** 꼬끼오 [ggoggi]  
**cocoa** 코코아 [kokoa] *n*  
**coffee** 커피 [kopi] *n*  
**cognac** 꼬냐크 [ggonyaku] *n*  
**cold** 감기 [kamgi] *n*; 추운 [chuun] *a att fo*, 찬 [chan] *a att fo*  
**collective** 집단 [chipdan] *n*  
**college** 대학 [taehak] *n*  
**colour** 색 [saek] *n*; 색깔 [saekgal] *n*  
**comb** 빗 [pit] *n*; 빗다 [pitda] *vt*  
**combination** 결합 [kyolhap] *n*  
**come** 오다 [oda] *vi* [vt  
**come back** 돌아오다 [toraoda] *vi*,  
**come in** 들어오다 [turooda] *vi*  
**come together** 모이다 [moida] *pass*  
**coming generation** 후대 [hudae] *n*  
**commemoration** 기념 [kinyom] *n*  
**commerce** 상업 [sang.op] *n*  
**committee** 위원회 [wiwonhoe] *n*  
**communication** 교통 [kyotong] *n*  
**communiqué** 콤뮈니케 [kommyunike] *n* [ui] *n*  
**communism** 공산주의 [kongsanju] *n*  
**communist** 공산주의자 [kongsanjuuija] *n*; 공산주의적 [kongsanjuuijok] *n* [kan] *n*  
**compartment** 침대칸 [chimdae]

complicated 복잡한 [pokjapan] *a*  
*att fo*  
 composer 작곡가 [chakgokga] *n*  
 comrade 동무 [tongmu] *n*, 동지  
 [tongji] *n*  
 comrade-in-arms 전우 [chonu] *n*  
 concert 음악회 [umakoe] *n*  
 conclude 맺다 [maetda] *vt*  
 conclusion 체결 [chegyol] *n*  
 concurrently 겸 [kyom] *ad*  
 condition 조건 [choggon] *n*  
 conductor 차장 [chajang] *n*  
 confront 대하다 [taehada] *vt*  
 congratulate 축하하다 [chukahada]  
*vt*, 경축하다 [kyongchukada] *vt*  
 congratulation 축하 [chuka] *n*  
 congratulatory telegram 축전 [chuk  
 jon] *n*  
 connection 연결 [ryon.gyol] *n*  
 considerably 상당히 [sangdang.i]  
*ad*  
 construction 건설 [konsol] *n*  
 consul 령사 [ryongsa] *n*  
 consulate 령사관 [ryongsagwan] *n*  
 continue 계속하다 [kyesokada] *vt*  
 continuously 련이어 [ryonio] *ad*;  
 계속 [kyesok] *n*  
 contract 계약 [kyeyak] *n*  
 contribute 이바지하다 [ibajihada]  
*vi* [att fo  
 convenient 편리한 [pyollihan] *a*  
 conversation 회화 [hoehwa] *n*  
 cook 취사원 [chwisawon] *n*  
 cool 서늘한 [sonulhan] *a att fo*  
 co-operative peasant 협동농민  
 [hyopdongnongmin] *n*  
 co-operativization 협동화 [hyop  
 donghwa] *n*

copy 부 [pu] *n*  
 corridor 복도 [pokdo] *n*  
 cosmetic 화장품 [hwajangpum] *n*  
 cost 값이 들다 [kapsi tulda] *phrase*  
 cough 기침 [kichim] *n*; 기침하다  
 [kichimhada] *vi*  
 count 세다 [seda] *vt*, 계산하다  
 [kyesanhada] *vt*  
 counter 계산대 [kyesandae] *n*  
 country 나라 [nara] *n*  
 county 군 [kun] *n*  
 courage 용기 [yong.gi] *n*, 용맹  
 [yongmaeng] *n*  
 cover 덮다 [topda] *vt*  
 cow 소 [so] *n*  
 coward 비겁한자 [pigopanja] *n*  
 cradle 요람 [yoram] *n*  
 crawl 기다 [kida] *vi* [vt  
 create 창조하다 [changjohada] *vi*,  
 credentials 신임장 [sinimjang] *n*  
 cross 건너다 [konnuda] *vi, vt*  
 crossing 건너가는곳 [konnoganun  
 .got] *n*  
 crossroad 십자로 [sipjaro] *n*  
 crosswalk 전능길 [konnumgil] *n*  
 cry 소리치다 [sorichida] *v with n*  
 cucumber 오이 [oi] *n*  
 cultural clubhouse 문화회관 [mun  
 hwahoegwan] *n* [gungjon] *n*  
 cultural palace 문화궁전 [munhwa  
 cultural revolution 문화혁명 [mun  
 hwahyongmyong] *n*  
 culture 문화 [munhwa] *n*  
 cup 잔 [chan] *n*  
 curio 골동품 [koldongpum] *n*  
 curio shop 골동품상점 [koldong  
 pumsangjom] *n*

custom 풍습 [pungsup] *n*  
customs 관세 [kwanse] *n*; 세관

[segwan] *n*  
cut 자르다 [charuda] *vt*

## D

dance 춤 [chum] *n*  
dancer 무용가 [muyong.ga] *n*  
danger 위험 [wihom] *n*  
dark 어두운 [oduun] *a* *att fo*  
date 날짜 [nalja] *n*  
date of birth 난날 [nannal] *n*  
daughter 딸 [ddal] *n*  
dawn 밝다 [pakda] *a*; 동 트다  
[tong tuda] *phrase*  
day 날 [nal] *n*, 일 [il] *n*  
day train 낮차 [natcha] *n*  
daytime 낮 [nat] *n* 「 *fo*  
dazzling 눈부신 [nunbusin] *a att*  
dear 친애하는 [chinaehanun] *v*  
death 죽음 [chugum] *n* 「 *att fo*  
debate 토론하다 [toronhada] *vi*,  
*vt*, 론쟁하다 [ronjaenghada]  
*vt*; 토론 [toron] *n*, 론쟁 [ron  
jaeng] *n*  
debater 토론자 [toronja] *n*  
debt 빚 [pit] *n*  
December 십이월 [sibiwol] *n*  
decide 결정하다 [kyoljonghada]  
*vt*  
decisive 결정적 [kyoljongjok] *n*  
declare 신고하다 [sin.gohada] *vt*  
deep 깊은 [kipun] *a att fo*  
deeply 깊이 [kipi] *ad*  
defend 지키다 [chikida] *vt*, 옹호  
하다 [onghohada] *vt*  
delegate 사절 [sajol] *n*; 대표

[taepyo] *n*  
delegation 대표단 [taepyodan] *n*  
demand 요구하다 [yoguhada] *vt*  
demarcation line 분계선 [pun.gye  
son] *n*  
democracy 민주주의 [minjujuui] *n*  
democratic 민주주의적 [minjujuui  
jok] *n*  
demonstrate 떨치다 [ddolchida] *vt*  
dentist 구강과 의사 [kugang.gwa  
uisa] *n*  
department 부 [pu] *n* 「 *jom* *n*  
department store 백화점 [paekwa  
departure 출발 [chulbal] *n*, 출국  
[chulguk] *n*  
depth 깊이 [kipi] *n*  
deputy 대의원 [taeuiwon] *n*, 대리  
인 [taeriin] *n*  
dermatologist 피부과 의사 [pibugg  
wauisa] *n*  
desk 책상 [chaeksang] *n*  
dessert 식후다과 [sikudagwa] *n*  
destination 목적지 [mokjokji] *n*  
destination of the journey 여행목  
적지 [ryohaengmokjokji] *n*  
destiny 운명 [unmyong] *n*  
destroy 파괴하다 [pagoehada] *vt*  
destruction 파괴 [pago] *n*  
determine 결심하다 [kyolsimhada]  
*vi, vt*  
develop 발전시키다 [paljonsikida]  
*causat v*; 현상하다 [hyonsangha  
da] *vt*

**development** 발전 [paljon] *n*  
**devote** 바치다 [pachida] *vt*  
**dew** 이슬 [isul] *n*  
**diarrhoea** 설사 [solsa] *n*  
**dictatorship** 독재 [tokjae] *n*  
**dictionary** 사전 [sajon] *n*  
**die** 죽다 [chukda] *vi*  
**difference** 차이 [chai] *n*  
**different** 다른 [tarun] *a att fo*  
**differently** 달리 [talli] *ad*  
**difficult** 어려운 [oryoun] *a att fo*  
**dignity** 위신 [wisin] *n*  
**diligent** 부지런한 [pujironhan] *a att fo*  
**diligently** 부지런히 [pujironi] *ad*,  
 열심히 [yolsimi] *ad* 「dang」 *n*  
**dining car** 열차식당 [ryolchasik]  
**dining room** 식당 [sikdang] *n*  
**dinner hour** 점심시간 [chomsimsi  
 gan] *n*  
**diplomacy** 외교 [oegyo] *n*  
**diplomat** 외교관 [oegyogwan] *n*  
**direction** 방향 [panghyang] *n*  
**director** 지배인 [chibaein] *n*  
**dirty** 더러운 [toroun] *a att fo*,  
 어지러운 [ojiroun] *a att fo*;  
 더럽히다 [toropida] *vt*  
**disappear** 사라지다 [sarajida] *vi*  
**discipline** 규율 [kyuyul] *n*  
**discuss** 토의하다 [touihada] *vt*

**dish** 요리 [ryori] *n* 「*vt*」  
**distinguish** 구별하다 [kubyolhada]  
**divide** 나누다 [nanuda] *vt*; 갈라  
 지다 [kallajida] *vi*  
**do** 하다 [hada] *vt*  
**do not know** 모르다 [moruda] *vt*  
**doctor** 의사 [uisa] *n*  
**dog** 개 [kae] *n*  
**dogmatism** 교조주의 [kyojojuui] *n*  
**doll** 인형 [inhyong] *n*  
**dollar** 달러 [ddalla] *n*  
**domestic animal** 집짐승 [chipjim  
 door 문 [mun] *n* 「sung」 *n*  
**door of the kitchen** 부엌문 [pu  
 ongmun] *n* 「*n*」  
**drawing room** 응접실 [ungjopsil]  
**dream** 꿈 [ggum] *n*  
**drink** 마시다 [masida] *vt*  
**drive out** 몰아내다 [moranaeda]  
*vt*, 내쫓다 [naejjotda] *vt*  
**driver** 자동차운전수 [chadongchaun  
 jonsu] *n*, 운전수 [unjonsu] *n*  
**drop behind** 뒤떨어지다 [twiddor  
 ojida] *vi*  
**drop in** 들리다 [tullida] *vi*  
**dry** 마른 [marun] *v att of*  
**duty** 의무 [uimu] *n*  
**dwelling** 살림집 [sallimjip] *n*, 주  
 택 [chutaek] *n*

## E

**each other** 서로 [soro] *ad*  
**ear** 귀 [kwi] *n* 「jjigi」 *ad*  
**early** 일찍 [iljjik] *ad*, 일찌기 [il  
**earth** 땅 [ddang] *n*, 지구 [chigu] *n*

**earthenware jar** 독 [tok] *n*  
**east** 동(쪽) [tong(jjok)] *n*; 동쪽  
 의 [tongjjogui] *n gen*  
**easy** 쉬운 [swiun] *a att fo*



eat 먹다 [mokda] vt, 잡수시다  
[chapsusida] vt  
economic 경제의 [kyongjeui] n  
gen; 경제적 [kyongjejok] n  
economy 경제 [kyongje] n  
educate 교육하다 [kyoyukada] vt,  
교양하다 [kyoyanghada] vt  
education 교육 [kyoyuk] n, 교양  
[kyoyang] n  
educator 교양자 [kyoyangja] n  
egg 닭알 [talgal] n [num  
eight 여덟 [yodol] num, 팔 [pal]  
eighth 여덟(번)째 [yodol(bon)jjae]  
num [[palsip] num  
eighty 여든 [yodun] num, 팔십  
elbow 팔꿈치 [palggumchi] n  
elder brother 형 [hyong] n, 오빠  
[obba] n  
eldest sister 맏누이 [mannui] n  
elect 선거하다 [son.gohada] vt  
election 선거 [son.go] n  
electric 전기의 [chon.giui] n gen  
electric train 전기차 [chon.gich  
a] n  
electricity 전기 [chon.gi] n  
elevate 높다 [nopida] vt  
elevator 승강기 [sung.gang.gi] n  
eleven 열하나 [yolhana] num, 열  
한 [yolhan] num, 십일 [sib  
il] num  
eleventh 열한(번)째 [yolhan(bon)  
jjae] num  
embassy 대사관 [taesagwan] n  
embrace 안다 [anda] vt  
employee 종업원 [chong.obwon] n  
encirclement 포위 [powi] n  
end 끝 [ggut] n  
enemy 적 [chok] n

engineer 기사 [kisa] n  
England 영국 [yong.guk] n  
English 영어 [yong.o] n; 영어의  
[yong.oui] n gen [n  
English edition 영어판 [yong.opan]  
English-Korean dictionary 영조사  
전 [yong.josajon] n  
Englishman 영국사람 [yong-guk  
saram] n  
enjoy 누리다 [nurida] vt [att fo  
enough 충분한 [chungbunhan] a  
enterprise 기업소 [kiopso] n  
entertain 대접하다 [taejopada] vt  
entrance 들어가는곳 [turoganun.  
got] n, 입구 [ipgu] n  
entrée 찬음식 [chanumsik] n  
entrust 맡기다 [matgida] causat v  
entry 입국 [ipguk] n  
envelope 봉투 [pongto] n  
equipment 장비 [changbi] n  
era 기원 [kiwon] n; 시대 [sidae] n  
escalator 계단식 승강기 [kyedansik  
sung.gang.gi] n  
especially 특히 [tuki] ad, 특별히  
[tukbyori] ad [att fo  
eternal 영원한 [yong.wonhan] a  
Europe 구라파 [kurapa] n [gen  
European 구라파의 [kurapau] n  
European food 구라파음식 [kura  
paumsik] n  
even if 비록 [pirok] ad  
evening 저녁 [chonyok] n  
every 매 [mae] pre-n  
every day 매일 [maeil] n  
everywhere 어디에서나 [odiesona]  
pron loc  
exactly 꼭 [ggok] ad  
examination 시험 [sihom] n

**exceed** 초과하다 [chogwahada] *vi, vt*  
**exchange** 교환 [kyohwan] *n*; 바  
 꾸다 [pagguda] *vt*, 교환하다 [kyo  
 hwanhada] *vt*  
**exchange of notes** 각서교환 [kak  
 sogyohwan] *n* [with *n*  
**exert oneself** 애쓰다 [aessuda] *v*  
**exhibition** 전람회 [chollamhoe] *n*;  
 전람관 [chollamgwang] *n*  
**existence** 존재 [chonjae] *n*  
**exit** 나가는곳 [naganun · got] *n*;  
 출국 [chulguk] *n*

**expensive** 비싼 [pissan] *a att fo*  
**experience** 경험 [kyong.hom] *n*,  
 체험 [chehom] *n* [ *vt*  
**exploit** 착취하다 [chakchwihada]  
**export** 수출 [suchul] *n*; 수출하다  
 [suchulhada] *vt* [ *n*  
**export goods** 수출품 [suchulpum]  
**express** 표현하다 [pyohyonhada]  
*vt*; 급행열차 [kupaengryolcha] *n*  
**exterior** 밖의 [paggui] *n gen*  
**eye** 눈 [nun] *n*  
**eyebrow** 눈썹 [nunsop] *n*

## F

**face** 얼굴 [olgul] *n*  
**fact** 사실 [sasil] *n*  
**factory** 공장 [kongjang] *n*  
**faithful** 충직한 [chungjikan] *a*  
*att fo*  
**fall** 떨어지다 [ddorojida] *vi*  
**fall asleep** 잠들다 [chamdulda] *vi*  
**family** 가족 [kajok] *n*  
**family name** 성 [song] *n*  
**famous** 유명한 [yumyong.han] *a*  
*att fo*  
**famous spots** 명승지 [myongsung  
 ji] *n*  
**far** 먼 [mon] *a att fo*  
**far away** 멀리 [molli] *ad*  
**fare** 표값 [pyoggap] *n*  
**farm** 농장 [nongjang] *n*  
**farmer** 농민 [nongmin] *n*  
**farmer's hut** 농막집 [nongmakjip]  
*n*, 농막 [nongmak] *n*

**fascism** 파시즘 [pasijum] *n*  
**father** 아버지 [aboji] *n*  
**fatherland** 조국 [choguk] *n*  
**favour** 더 좋아하다 [to choahada]  
*v with con fo and ad*  
**fear** 공포 [kongpo] *n*; 두려워하  
 다 [turyowohada] *vt*  
**February** 이월 [iwol] *n*  
**feel** 느끼다 [nuggida] *vt*  
**female** 여자 [nyoja] *n*  
**fertilizer** 비료 [piryo] *n*  
**festival** 축전 [chukjon] *n*  
**festival day** 명절 [myongjol] *n*  
**few** 적은 [chogun] *a att fo*; 약간  
 [yakgan] *ad*  
**fibre** 섬유 [somyu] *n*  
**field** 들 [tul] *n*, 밭 [pat] *n*  
**fifth** 다섯(번)째 [tasot(bon)] [jja  
 e] *num* [ *num*  
**fifty** 쉰 [swin] *num*, 오십 [osip]

**fight** 싸움 [ssaum] *n*; 싸우다 [ssa  
 udal] *vi*  
**fighter** 투사 [tusa] *n*  
**figure** 수자 [sujja] *n* [lim] *n*  
**film** 영화 [yong.hwa] *n*, 필름 [pil  
**fine** 훌륭한 [hullyung.han] *a att*  
*fo*  
**finger** 손가락 [son.garak] *n*  
**finger nail** 손톱 [sontop] *n*  
**finish** 끝내다 [ggunnaeda] *causat*  
*v*; 끝나다 [ggunnada] *vi*  
**fire** 불 [pul] *n*  
**firmly** 굳게 [kutge] *a ad fo*, 억  
 세게 [oksege] *a ad fo*  
**first** 먼저 [monjo] *ad*, 처음 [cho  
 um] *n*; 첫(번)째 [chot(bon)  
 jjae] *num* [ri] *n*  
**fish foods** 물고기요리 [mulgogiryo]  
**fish soup** 생선국 [saengson.guk] *n*  
**fisherman** 어부 [obu] *n*  
**fishing village** 어촌 [ochon] *n*  
**fit** 맞다 [matda] *vi*  
**five** 다섯 [tasot] *num*, 오 [o] *num*  
**fizzy drink** 사이다 [saida] *n*  
**flag** 기발 [kitbal] *n*, 기치 [ki  
 chi] *n*  
**flesh** 살 [sal] *n*  
**flight number** 항로번호 [hangro  
 bonho] *n*  
**float** 뜨다 [dduda] *vi* [n  
**floor** 바닥 [padak] *n*, 층 [chung]  
**florist's shop** 꽃방 [ggotbang] *n*  
**flow** 흐르다 [huruda] *vi*  
**flower** 꽃 [ggot] *n*  
**flower bud** 꽃망울 [ggonmang.ul] *n*  
**fly** 날다 [nalda] *vi*  
**fog** 안개 [an.gae] *n* [yong] *n*  
**folk dance** 민족무용 [minjongmu]

**folk song** 민요 [minyo] *n*  
**follow** 따르다 [ddaruda] *vt*, 따라  
 가다 [ddaragada] *vt*  
**food** 음식 [umsik] *n*  
**foodstuff** 식료품 [singryopum] *n*  
**foot** 발 [pal] *n*  
**football** 축구 [chukgu] *n*  
**football player** 축구선수 [chukgu  
 sonsu] *n* [n  
**football team** 축구팀 [chukgutim]  
**for** 위하여 [wihayo] *v con fo*, 대  
 하여 [taehayo] *v con fo*  
**for a while** 잠시 [chamsi] *ad*  
**for ever** 영원히 [yong.woni] *ad*  
**for oneself** 스스로 [susuro] *ad*  
**for the first time** 비로소 [piro  
 so] *ad*  
**fore** 앞 [ap] *n*  
**forehead** 이마 [ima] *n*  
**foreign** 외국의 [oegugui] *n gen*,  
 대외적 [taeoejok] *n*, 띤 곳의  
 [ddan kosui] *n gen with pre-n*  
**foreign country** 외국 [oeguk] *n*  
**foreign language** 외국어 [oegugo] *n*  
**foreign trade** 대외무역 [taeoemu  
 yok] *n*  
**foreigner** 외국인 [oegugin] *n*  
**foreword** 머리말 [morimal] *n*  
**forget** 잊다 [itda] *vt*  
**forgive** 용서하다 [yongsohada] *vt*  
**fork** 포크 [poku] *n*  
**forked road** 갈림길 [kallimgil] *n*  
**forty** 마흔 [mahun] *num*; 사십  
 [sasip] *num*  
**forward** 앞으로 [apuro] *n inst*  
**foundation** 기초 [kicho] *n*, 근본  
 [kunbon] *n*  
**fountain** 분수 [punsu] *n*

**fountain-pen** 만년필 [mannyonpil] *n*  
**four** 넷 [net] *num*, 네 [ne] *num*,  
 사 [sa] *num*  
**fourth** 네번째 [nebonjjae] *num*, 넷  
 째 [netjjae] *num*  
**fraternal** 형제적 [hyongjejok] *n*  
**fraternal country** 형제국가 [hyong  
 jegukga] *n* 「dang」 *n*  
**fraternal party** 형제당 [hyongje  
 freeze] 얼다 [olda] *vi* 「*n*  
**fresh egg** 생닭알 [saengdalgal]  
**Friday** 금요일 [kumyoil] *n* 「*n*  
**friend** 벗 [pot] *n*, 친구 [chin.gu]  
**friendship** 친선 [chinson] *n*

**from** 부터 [puto] *aux end*  
**from (the bottom of) one's heart**  
 충심으로 [chungsimuro] *n inst*  
**front** 전선 [chonson] *n*  
**front desk** 접수 [chopsu] *n*  
**front door** 현관 [hyon.gwan] *n*  
**front gate** 대문 [taemun] *n*;  
 앞문 [ammun] *n*  
**fruit** 과일 [kwail] *n*, 과실 [kwa  
 sil] *n*  
**fruit juice** 과일즙 [kwailjup] *n*  
**full** 가득한 [kadukan] *a att fo*  
**function** 기능 [kinung] *n* 「*n*  
**future** 앞날 [amnal] *n*, 미래 [mirae]

## G

**gains** 전취물 [chonchwimul] *n*  
**garden** 마당 [madang] *n*  
**gate** 문 [mun] *n*  
**gauze** 가제 [kaje] *n*  
**general** 장군 [chang.gun] *n*  
**general secretary** 총비서 [chong  
 biso] *n* 「*n*  
**generation** 세대 [sedae] *n*, 대 [tae]  
**get acquainted with** 알게 되다 [al  
 ge toeda] *v with ad fo*  
**get down** 내리다 [naerida] *vi*  
**get on** 타다 [tada] *vt*  
**get tired** 피곤하다 [pigonhada] *a*  
**giddy** 어지러운 [ojiroun] *a att fo*  
**ginseng wine** 인삼술 [insamsul] *n*  
**girl** 소녀 [sonyo] *n*  
**give** 주다 [juda] *vt*, 드리다 [tu  
 rida] *vt* 「*yonhada*」 *vt*  
**give a performance** 상연하다 [sang.  
 give back] 돌려주다 [tollyojuda] *vt*

**glad** 기쁜 [kibbun] *a att fo*; 반가  
 운 [pan.gaun] *a att fo*  
**gladly** 반가이 [pan.gai] *ad*  
**glass** 유리 [yuri] *n*  
**glasses** 안경 [an.gyong] *n*  
**glitter** 번쩍거리다 [ponjjokgorida]  
*vi, vt*  
**glorious** 영광스러운 [yong.gwang  
 suroun] *a att fo*  
**glory** 영광 [yong.gwang] *n*  
**gloves** 장갑 [chang.gap] *n*  
**go** 가다 [kada] *vi*  
**go (by vehicles)** 타고 가다 [tagoka  
 da] *v with con fo*  
**go back** 돌아가다 [toragada] *vi*,  
*vt*  
**go out** 나가다 [nagada] *vi*, 외출  
 하다 [oechulhada] *vi*  
**go through the formalities** 수속  
 하다 [susokada] *vt*

go up 솟다 [sotda] *vi*  
 goal 목표 [mokpyo] *n*  
 gold 금 [kum] *n*  
 good 좋은 [choun] *a att fo*  
 goods 물건 [mulgon] *n*, 물품 [mul  
 pum] *n*  
 govern 지배하다 [chibaehada] *vt*  
 graduate 졸업하다 [choropada] *vt*  
 grain 알곡 [algok] *n*  
 grammar 문법 [munbop] *n*  
 grand 웅대한 [ungdaehan] *a att*  
 fo, 웅장한 [ungjanghan] *a att fo*  
 Grand People's Study House 인  
 민대 학습당 [inmindae haksup  
 dang] *n* [jang] *n*  
 Grand Theatre 대극장 [taeguk  
 grandfather 할아버지 [haraboji] *n*  
 grandmother 할머니 [halmoni] *n*  
 grape wine 포도술 [podosul] *n*  
 grapes 포도 [podo] *n*  
 grass 풀 [pul] *n*  
 gratis 무상의 [musang. ui] *a gen*

gray 회색의 [hosaegui] *n gen*  
 great 위대한 [widaehan] *a att*  
 fo, 거대한 [kodaehan] *a att fo*  
 great nature 대자연 [taejayon] *n*  
 greet 인사하다 [insahada] *vi*  
 greeting 인사 [insa] *n*  
 grocer's shop 식료품상점 [singnyo  
 pumsangjom] *n*  
 grow 자라다 [charada] *vi*  
 grow old 늙다 [nukda] *vi*  
 gruel 죽 [chuk] *n*  
 guarantee 보증 [pojung] *n* [n  
 guerrilla 유격대원 [yugyokdaewon]  
 guerrilla area 유격구 [yugyokgu] *n*  
 guest 손님 [sonnim] *n*  
 guide 안내원 [annaewon] *n*  
 guide-book 안내서 [annaeso] *n*  
 gun 총 [chong] *n*; 대포 [taepo] *n*  
 gymnasium 체육관 [cheyukgwang] *n*  
 gymnastics 체조 [chejo] *n*, 체육  
 [cheyuk] *n* [in. gwauisa] *n*  
 gynaecologist 산부인과의사 [sanbu

## H

hair 머리칼 [morikal] *n*  
 ham 햄 [haem] *n*  
 hammer 마치 [machi] *n*  
 hand 손 [son] *n*  
 hand baggage 손짐 [sonjim] *n*  
 hand clapping 박수 [paksu] *n*  
 hand over 넘겨주다 [nomgyojuda] *vt*  
 handkerchief 손수건 [sonsugon] *n*  
 handwriting 글씨 [kulssi] *n*  
 hang 걸다 [kolda] *vt*  
 happiness 행복 [haengbok] *n*  
 happy 행복한 [haengbokan] *a att*  
 harbour 항구 [hang. gu] *n* [fo

hard 된 [toen] *a att fo*, 굳은  
 [kudun] *a att fo*  
 harden 다지다 [tajida] *vt*  
 hasten 다그치다 [taguchida] *vt*  
 hat 모자 [moja] *n*  
 hate 증오하다 [chung. ohada] *vt*  
 have 가지다 [kajida] *vt* [vi  
 have a meal 식사하다 [siksahada]  
 have one's hair cut 리발하다  
 [ribalhada] *vi* [v  
 have sit 앉히다 [anchida] *causat*  
 he 그 [ku] *pron*  
 head of a delegation 대표단 단장

[taepyodandanjang] *n*  
**headache** 머리아픔 [moriapum] *n*  
**health** 건강 [kon·gang] *n*  
**healthy** 건강한 [kon.ganghan] *a*  
*att fo*  
**hear** 듣다 [tutda] *vt* [um] *n*  
**heart** 심장 [simjang] *n*; 마음 [ma  
**heat** 열 [yol] *n*  
**heavy** 무거운 [mugoun] *a att fo*  
**heavy industry** 중공업 [chung.  
gong·op] *n* [da] *vt*  
**help** 방조 [pangjo] *n*; 돕다 [top  
**hen** 닭 [tak] *n*  
**here** 여기에 [yogie] *pron dat*; 여  
기로 [yogiro] *pron inst*  
**hero** 영웅 [yong.ung] *n*; 주인공  
[chuin.gong] *n*  
**heroic** 영웅한 [yong.yong.han] *a*  
*att fo*, 영웅적 [yong.ung.jok] *n*  
**high** 높은 [nopun] *a att fo*; 높이

[nopi] *ad*  
**hill** 언덕 [ondok] *n* [n  
**historical places** 사적지 [sajokji]  
**history** 역사 [ryoksa] *n*  
**holiday** 쉬는날 [swinunnal] *n*  
**honey** 꿀 [ggul] *n*  
**honorary title** 명예칭호 [myong.ye  
chingho] *n*  
**honour** 영예 [yongye] *n*  
**honourable** 영예로운 [yongyeroun]  
*a att fo*  
**hope** 바라다 [parada] *vt*  
**horse** 말 [mal] *n*  
**hospital** 병원 [pyong.won] *n*  
**hotel** 려관 [ryogwan] *n*, 호텔 [ho  
tel] *n*  
**house** 집 [chip] *n*  
**how** 어떻게 [oddoke] *a ad fo*, 어  
찌 [ojji] *ad*, 얼마나 [olmana] *ad*  
**hullo** 애 [yae] *int*  
**husband and wife** 부부 [pubu] *n*

# I

**I** 나 [na] *pron*, 내 [nae] *pron*,  
저 [cho] *pron*, 제 [che] *pron*  
**ice** 얼음 [orum] *n* [i] *n*  
**ice cream** 얼음보숭이 [orumbosung.  
**Ice Rink** 빙상관 [pingsang.gwan] *n*  
**idea** 사상 [asang] *n*  
**ideological** 사상적 [asangjok] *n*  
**ideological revolution** 사상혁명 [sa  
sanghyongmyong] *n*  
**if** 만약 [manyak] *n*, 만일 [manil]  
*n*, 가령 [karyong] *ad*  
**illness** 병 [pyong] *n*  
**imagination** 상상 [sangsang] *n*

**imagine** 상상하다 [sangsanghada]  
**immediately** 곧 [kot] *ad* [vt  
**imperialism** 제국주의 [chegukjuui] *n*  
**imperialist** 제국주의자 [chegukju  
uija] *n*  
**import** 수입 [suip] *n*; 수입하다  
[suipada] *vt* [att fo  
**important** 중요한 [chung.yohan] *a*  
**impression** 인상 [insang] *n*  
**in the afternoon** 오후에 [ohue] *n*  
*dat* [ojone] *n dat*  
**in the beforenoon** 오전에  
**in the evening** 저녁에 [chonyoge]

*n dat*  
**inconvenient** 불편한 [pulpyonhan]  
*a att fo*  
**independence** 독립 [tongrip] *n*;  
 자주 [chaju] *n*  
**independent** 자주적 [chajujok] *n*  
**individual** 개인 [kaein] *n*  
**industrial state** 공업국가 [kong.opgukga] *n*  
**industrialization** 공업화 [kong.opindustry] 공업 [kong.op] *n* [wa] *n*  
**inform** 전하다 [chonhada] *vt*, 통지하다 [tongjihada] *vt* [kan] *n*  
**information office** 물음칸 [murum] inhabitants 주민 [chumin] *n*  
**injection** 주사 [chusa] *n*  
**ink** 잉크 [ingku] *n*  
**innovation** 혁신 [hyoksin] *n*  
**inquiring** 물어보기 [murobogi] *n*  
**insam wine** 인삼술 [insamsul] *n*  
**inside** 속 [sok] *n*  
**inspection of passports** 려권검열 [ryoggongomyol] *n*  
**insurance** 보험 [pohom] *n*  
**intellectual** 인테리 [interi] *n*  
**interest** 흥미 [hungmi] *n*, 재미 [chaemi] *n*; 리익 [riik] *n*  
**international** 국제적 [kukjejok] *n*

**January** 일월 [irwol] *n*  
**jaw** 턱 [tok] *n*  
**joint** 공동의 [kongdong.ui] *n gen*; 마디 [madi] *n*  
**jon** 전 [chon] *n* (unit of Korean coin)  
**journalist** 기자 [kija] *n*  
**joy** 기쁨 [kibbum] *n*

국제주의적 [kukjejuuijok] *n*  
**International Friendship Exhibition** 국제친선전람관 [kukjechoinsonjollamgwan] *n*  
**International Post Office** 국제우편국 [kukjeupyon.guk] *n*  
**internationalism** 국제주의 [kukjejuui] *n* [vi, vt]  
**interpret** 통역하다 [tong.yokada]  
**interpretation** 통역 [tong.yok] *n*  
**interpreter** 통역원 [tong.yogwon] *n*  
**interval** 휴식 [hyusik] *n*  
**interview** 회견 [hoegyong] *n*, 접견 [chopgyon] *n*  
**introduce** 소개하다 [sogaehada] *vt*  
**introduction** 소개 [sogae] *n*  
**investigate** 조사하다 [chosahada] *vi, vt*  
**invitation card** 초대장 [chodaejjang] *n*  
**invite** 초대하다 [chodaehada] *vt*  
**iodine tincture** 요드링크 [yodutingku] *n*  
**iron** 쇠 [soe] *n*, 철 [chol] *n*; 다리다 [tarida] *vt*  
**irrigation** 관개 [kwan.gae] *n*  
**it** 그것 [kugot] *n with pron*

## J

**joyful** 기쁜 [kibbum] *a att fo*, 반가운 [pan.gaun] *a att fo*  
**joyfully** 반가이 [pan.gai] *ad*  
**Juche Idea** 주체사상 [chuchesa]  
**July** 칠월 [chirwol] *n* [sang] *n*  
**June** 류월 [ryuwol] *n*  
**just as** 마치 [machi] *ad*

## K

**keep** 간직하다 [kanjikada] *vi*  
**kerchief** 머리수건 [morisugon] *n*  
**key** 열쇠 [yolsoe] *n*  
**Kim Il Sung Stadium** 김일성경  
 기장 [Kim Il Sung gyong.gi  
 jang] *n*  
**kindergarten** 유치원 [yuchiwon] *n*  
**kitchen** 부엌 [puok] *n*  
**kitchen work** 부엌일 [puong.nil] *n*  
**knee** 무릎 [murup] *n*  
**knife** 칼 [kal] *n*  
**know** 알다 [alda] *vt*  
**knowledge** 지식 [chisik] *n*  
**Korea** 조선 [choson] *n*  
**Korean** 조선사람 [chosonsaram] *n*;  
 조선말 [chosonmal] *n*, 조선어  
 [chosono] *n*; 조선의 [chosonui]

*n gen*  
**Korean-English dictionary** 조-영  
 사전 [choyongsajon] *n*  
**Korean food** 조선음식 [chosonum  
 sik] *n*  
**Korean language** 조선말 [choson  
 mal] *n*, 조선어 [chosono] *n*  
**Korean Peninsula** 조선반도 [cho  
 sonbando] *n* [inmin] *n*  
**Korean people** 조선인민 [choson  
 [chosoninmin.gun] *n*  
**Korean People's Army** 조선인민군  
 [chosoninmin.gun] *n*  
**Korean revolution** 조선혁명 [cho  
 sonhyongmyong] *n*  
**Korean Revolution Museum** 조선  
 혁명박물관 [chosonhyongmyong  
 bangmulgwan] *n*

## L

**labour** 로동 [rodong] *n*, 로력 [ro  
 ryok] *n* [ung] *n*  
**labour hero** 로력영웅 [roryog.yong.  
 labour safety 로동안전 [rodong.  
 anjon] *n*  
**lake** 호수 [hosu] *n*  
**landing** 착륙 [changryuk] *n*  
**language** 말 [mal] *n*, 언어 [ono] *n*  
 [prefix  
**large** 큰 [kun] *a att fo*, 대 [tae]  
**large-scale** 대대적 [taedaejok] *n*  
**last year** 지난해 [chinanhae] *n*  
**late** 늦은 [nujun] *a att fo*  
**Latin America** 라틴아메리카 [ra

tinamerika] *n*  
**laugh** 웃다 [utda] *vi, vt*  
**laundry** 빨래집 [bballaejip] *n*, 세  
 락소 [setakso] *n* [n  
**law** 법 [pop] *n*, 법령 [pomryong]  
**lay** 눕히다 [nupida] *causat v*  
**lead** 인도하다 [indohada] *vt*, 령도  
 하다 [ryongdohada] *vt*  
**leader** 지도자 [chidoja] *n*, 향도자  
 [hyangdoja] *n*, 수령 [suryong] *n*  
**leadership** 령도 [ryongdo] *n*  
**leading** 지도 [chido] *n*  
**leaf** 잎 [ip] *n*  
**learn** 배우다 [paeuda] *vt*



**learning** 배우기 [paeugi] *n*  
**leave** 떠나다 [ddonada] *vi, vt*, 출  
 발하다 [chulbalhada] *vi, vt*  
**lecture** 강연 [kang.yon] *n*  
**left** 왼쪽의 [oenjjogui] *n gen*  
**leg** 다리 [tari] *n*  
**lemonade** 레몬수 [remonsu] *n*  
**length** 길이 [kiri] *n*  
**less** 덜 [tol] *ad* [*n*  
**lesson** 과 [kwa] *n*; 교훈[kyohun]  
**lessons** 수업 [suop] *n*  
**let eat** 먹이다 [mogida] *causat v*  
**let fly** 날리다 [nallida] *causat v*  
**let know** 알리다 [allida] *causat v*  
**let see** 보이다 [poida] *causat v*  
**letter** 글자 [kulja] *n*, 글 [kul]  
*n*; 편지 [pyonji] *n*  
**letter box** 우편함 [upyonham] *n*  
**letter of recall** 소환장 [sohwan  
 jang] *n*  
**level** 수준 [sujun] *n*  
**library** 도서관 [tosogwan] *n*  
**liberate** 해방하다 [haebanghada] *vt*  
**liberation** 해방 [haebang] *n*  
**lie** 눕다 [nupda] *vi*  
**life** 생활 [saenghwal] *n*; 생명  
 [saengmyong] *n*  
**lift** 승강기 [sung.gang.gi] *n*  
**light** 빛 [pit] *n*; 가벼운 [kaby  
 oun] *a att fo* [gong.op] *n*  
**light industry** 경공업 [kyong.  
**light music** 경음악 [kyong.umak] *n*  
**lighthouse** 등대 [tungdae] *n*

**lighting** 번개 [pon.gae] *n*  
**like** 좋아하다 [choahada] *v with*  
*con fo*, 즐기다 [chulgida] *vt*  
**limb** 팔다리 [paldari] *n*  
**limit** 한계 [han.gye] *n*  
**limitlessly** 한없이 [hanopsi] *ad*  
**line** 방침 [pangchim] *n*  
**lip** 입술 [ipsul] *n*  
**literature** 문학 [munhak] *n*  
**little** 작은 [chagun] *a att fo*  
**live** 살다 [salda] *vi*, 거주하다  
 [kojuhada] *vt*, 지내다 [chinaeda] *vi*  
**lively** 발랄한 [pallalhan] *a att fo*  
**load** 짐을 싣다 [chimul sitda] *v*  
*with n*  
**lofty** 고상한 [kosang.han] *a att fo*  
**London** 런던 [london] *n*  
**long** 긴 [kin] *a att fo*  
**long-distance bus** 시외버스 [sioe  
 bbosu] *n*  
**long life and good health** 만수무  
 강 [mansumugang] *n* [ma] *n*  
**long (spell of) rain** 장마 [chang  
**lose** 지다 [chida] *vi*, 잃다 [ilt  
 a] *vt*  
**lounge** 휴게실 [hyugyesil] *n*  
**love** 사랑 [sarang] *n*; 사랑하다  
 [saranghada] *vt*  
**low** 낮은 [najun] *a att fo*  
**loyalty** 충성 [chungsong] *n*  
**lunch** 점심밥 [chomsimbap] *n*, 점  
 심식사 [chomsimsiksa] *n*, 점심  
 [chomsim] *n*  
**lung** 폐 [pe] *n*

# M

- machine** 기계 [kigye] *n*  
**magazine** 잡지 [chapji] *n*  
**magnificent** 굉장한 [koengjanghan]  
*a att fo*, 웅장한 [ungjang han] *a att fo*  
**maize** 강냉이 [kangnaeng.i] *n*  
**make** 만들다 [mandulda] *vt*  
**make a revolution** 혁명하다 [hyong myonghada] *vi*  
**make clean** 깨끗이 하다 [ggaeggu si hada] *v with ad* [vi, vt]  
**make friends with** 사귀다 [sagwida]  
**male** 남자 [namja] *n* [n]  
**man** 사람 [saram] *n*; 남자 [namja]  
**management board** 관리위원회 [kwalliwiwonhoe] *n*  
**manager** 지배인 [chibaein] *n*  
**mangnolia blossom** 목란꽃 [mong ran.ggot] *n*  
**Mangyong Hill** 만경봉 [man.gy ong bong] *n* [dae] *n*  
**Mangyongdae** 만경대 [mangyong]  
**Mansudae Art Theatre** 만수대예술극장 [mansudaeyesulgukjang] *n*  
**many** 많은 [manun] *a att fo* 여러 [yoro] *pre-n*  
**map** 지도 [chido] *n*  
**marathon** 마라손 [marason] *n*  
**marathon runner** 마라손선수 [marasonsonsu] *n*  
**March** 삼월 [samwol] *n*  
**march** 행진하다 [haengjinhada] *vi*  
**mark** 점수 [chomsu] *n*  
**market** 시장 [sijang] *n*  
**mass gymnastic display** 집단체조 [chipdanchejo] *n* [daehoe] *n*  
**mass meeting** 군중대회 [kunjung  
**massage** 안마 [anma] *n*  
**masses** 군중 [kunjung] *n*, 대중 [taejung] *n*  
**masses of the people** 인민대중 [inmindaejung] *n*  
**mast** 돛대 [totdae] *n*  
**master** 주인 [chuin] *n*  
**match** 시합 [sihap] *n*; 성냥 [songnyang] *n*  
**material** 자재 [chajae] *n*, 재료 [chaeryo] *n*  
**materials** 자료 [charyo] *n*  
**maternity hospital** 산원 [sanwon] *n*  
**May** 오월 [owol] *n*  
**meal** 식사 [siksa] *n*  
**means** 수단 [sudan] *n*  
**measure** 재다 [chaeda] *vt*  
**meat** 고기 [kogi] *n* [hada] *vt*  
**mechanize** 기계화하다 [kigyehwa]  
**medical treatment** 치료 [chiryo] *n*  
**medicine** 약 [yak] *n*  
**meet** 만나다 [mannada] *vt*  
**meeting** 모임 [moim] *n*, 회의 [hoeui] *n*, 상봉 [sangbong] *n*  
**melon** 참외 [chamoe] *n*  
**melt** 녹다 [nokda] *vi*  
**member** 성원 [song.won] *n*  
**member of the Workers' Party of Korea** 조선로동당원 [choson rodongdangwon] *n*  
**member of troops** 대원 [taewon] *n*  
**memorial house** 기념관 [kinyom gwan] *n* [pyo] *n*  
**menu** 식사안내표 [siksa.annae]  
**merry** 즐거운 [chulgoun] *a att fo*  
**method** 방법 [pangbop] *n*  
**middle school** 중학교 [chunghak]

gyo] *n*  
**militant** 전투적 [chontujok] *n*  
**militarism** 군국주의[kun.gukjuui] *n*  
**militarist** 군국주의자 [kun.gukju  
 uija] *n*  
**military** 군사적 [kunsajok] *n*  
**(military) operations** 작전 [chak  
 jon] *n*  
**milk** 소젖 [sojot] *n*  
**million** 백만 [paengman] *num*  
**mine** 광산 [kwangsan] *n*  
**miner** 광부 [kwangbu] *n*  
**mineral water** 약수 [yaksu] *n*  
**minister** 부장 [pujang] *n*  
**ministry** 부 [pu] *n*  
**minute** 분 [pun] *n*  
**mission** 사명 [samyong] *n*  
**model** 모범 [mobom] *n*  
**modern** 현대적 [hyondaejok] *n*  
**modest** 겸손한 [kyomsonhan] *a*  
*att fo*  
**moment** 순간 [sun.gan] *n*  
**Monday** 월요일 [woryoil] *n*  
**money** 돈 [ton] *n*  
**money exchange** 돈바꾸기 [tonba

month 달 [tal] *n* [ggugi] *n*  
**monument** 기념비 [kinyombi] *n*  
**moral** 도덕적 [dodokjok] *n*  
**morals** 도덕 [todok] *n*  
**more** 더 [to] *ad*, 더욱 [touk] *ad*  
**morning** 아침 [achim] *n*  
**morning glow** 아침노을 [achimno  
 most 가장 [kajang] *ad* [ul] *n*  
**mother** 어머니 [omoni] *n*  
**mottled** 알락달락한 [allakdalla  
 kan] *a* *att fo*  
**mountain** 산 [san] *n*  
**mouth** 입 [ip] *n*  
**move** 움직이다 [umjigida] *vi, vt*  
**movement** 운동 [undong] *n* [n  
**Mt. Kumgang** 금강산 [kumgangsan]  
**Mt. Paekdu** 백두산 [paekdusan] *n*  
**much** 많이 [mani] *ad*  
**muscles** 힘살 [himsal] *n*  
**museum** 박물관 [pangmulgwan] *n*  
**musician** 음악가 [umakga] *n*  
**music** 음악 [umak] *n*  
**mutton** 양고기 [yang.gogi] *n*  
**my** 내 [nae] *pron*

## N

**name** 이름 [irum] *n*  
**napkin** 상수건 [sangsugon] *n*  
**narrow** 좁은 [chobun] *a* *att fo*  
**nation** 민족 [minjok] *n*  
**national** 민족적 [minjokjok] *n*  
**national defence** 국방 [kukbang] *n*  
**national economy** 인민경제 [inmin-  
 gyongje] *n*  
**national flag** 국기 [kukgi] *n*  
**nationality** 민족별 [minjokbyol] *n*  
**native place** 고향 [kohyang] *n*

**naturally** 자연히 [chayoni] *ad*;  
 응당 [ungdang] *ad*  
**nature** 자연 [chayon] *n*  
**near** 가까이 [kaggai] *ad*  
**necessary** 필요한 [piryohan] *a*  
*att fo*  
**neck** 목 [mok] *n*  
**necktie** 넥타이 [nektai] *n*  
**nest** 둥지 [tungji] *n*; 보금자리  
 [pogumjari] *n*  
**neurologist** 신경과 의사 [sin.gyong  
 .gwauisa] *n*

**never** 결코 [kyolko] *ad*  
**new** 새로운 [saeroun] *a att fo*, 새  
     [sae] *pre-n*  
**new year** 새해 [saehae] *n*  
**New Year's Day** 설날 [sollal] *n*  
**news** 소식 [sosik] *n*  
**newspaper** 신문 [sinmun] *n*  
**next** 다음의 [taumui] *n gen*  
**next month** 래달 [raedal] *n*  
**next year**明年 [myongnyon] *n*  
**night** 밤 [pam] *n*  
**night train** 밤차 [pamcha] *n*  
**nine** 아홉 [ahop] *num*, 구 [ku] *num*  
**ninety** 아흔 [ahun] *num*, 구십 [ku  
     sip] *num*                      [ *num*  
**ninth** 아홉(번)째 [ahop(bon)jjae]  
**noodle** 국수 [kuksu] *n*

**north** 북(쪽) [puk(jjok)] *n*  
**north(ern)** 북쪽의 [pukjjogui] *n gen*  
**nose** 코 [ko] *n*  
**not** 아니 [ani] *ad*, 안 [an] *ad*  
**note** 각서 [kakso] *n*  
**notebook** 학습장 [haksupjang] *n*  
**novelist** 소설가 [sosolga] *n*  
**November** 십일월 [sibirwol] *n*  
**now** 이제 [ije] *n*, 지금 [chigum] *n*  
**nuclear weapons** 핵무기 [haeng  
     mugi] *n*  
**nucleus free** 비핵 [pihaek] *n*  
**number** 수 [su] *n*, 번호 [ponho] *n*,  
     호 [ho] *n*  
**nurse** 간호원 [kanhowon] *n*  
**nursery** 탁아소 [tagaso] *n*

## O

**obligatory** 의무적 [uimujok] *n*  
**observation study** 견학 [kyonhak]  
     *n*                                      [ *vt*  
**observe** 관찰하다 [kwanchalhada]  
**occupation** 직업 [chigop] *n*  
**o'clock** 시 [si] *n*  
**October** 시월 [siwol] *n*  
**oculist** 안과 의사 [an.gwauisa] *n*  
**of course** 물론 [mullon] *ad*  
**off day** 쉬는날 [swinunnal] *n*  
**office worker** 사무원 [samuwon]  
**officer** 군관 [kun.gwan] *n*    [ *n*  
**official** 공식적 [kongsikjok] *n*  
**often** 자주 [chaju] *ad*  
**oh!** 오 [o] *int*, 아 [a] *int*  
**oil** 기름 [kirum] *n*  
**one** 하나 [hana] *num*, 한 [han]  
     *num*, 일 [il] *num*                      [ *ad*  
**only** 다만 [taman] *ad*, 오직 [ojik]

**open** 열다 [yolda] *vt*; 공개적 [kong.  
     gaejok] *n*  
**opera** 가극 [kaguk] *n*  
**opinion** 의견 [uigyon] *n*  
**oppose** 반대하다 [pandaehada] *vt*  
**oppress** 압박하다 [apbakada] *vt*  
**oppressed nation** 피압박민족 [piep  
     bakminjok] *n*                      [ [ogap] *n*  
**oppression** 압박 [apbak] *n*, 억압  
**or** 혹은 [hogun] *ad*  
**orange** 귤 [kyul] *n*  
**orchard** 과수원 [kwasuwon] *n*  
**order** 차례 [charye] *n*, 명령 [myong  
     ryong] *n*, 질서 [chilso] *n*;  
     주문하다 [chumunhada] *vt*  
**ordinary** 보통의 [potong-ui] *n gen*  
**organ** 기관 [kigwan] *n*  
**organization** 조직 [chojik] *n*  
**organize** 조직하다 [chojikada] *vt*

overcoat 외투 [oetu] *n*  
 overflow 넘치다 [nomchida] *vi*  
 overfulfil 넘쳐수행하다 [nomchyo

suhaenghada] *v with con fo*  
 overthrow 타도하다 [tadohada] *vt*  
 oyster 굴 [kul] *n*

## P

paediatrician 소아과의사 [soaggwa  
 uisa] *n*  
 page 페이지 [peji] *n*  
 painful 아픈 [apun] *a att fo*  
 pair 쌍 [ssang] *n*, 짝 [jjak] *n*,  
 컬레 [kolle] *n*  
 palace 궁전 [kungjon] *n* [dak] *n*  
 palm (of the hand) 손바닥 [sonba  
 paper 종이 [chong.i] *n*  
 paradise 낙원 [ragwon] *n*  
 parcel 소포 [sopo] *n*  
 pare 깎다 [ggakda] *vt*  
 parents 부모 [pumo] *n*  
 park 공원 [kongwon] *n*  
 part 부분 [pubun] *n*  
 part from 헤어지다 [heyojida] *vi*  
 partisan 빨찌산 [bbaljjisan] *n*  
 partisan area 유격구 [yugyokgu] *n*  
 party 당 [tang] *n* [hoe] *n*  
 party congress 당대회 [tangdae  
 party member 당원 [tang.won] *n*  
 party policy 당정책 [tangjong  
 chaek] *n*  
 pass 합격하다 [hapgyokada] *vi, vt*  
 passport 려권 [ryoggwon] *n*  
 passport number 려권번호 [ryo  
 ggwonbonho] *n*  
 patriotism 애국주의 [aegukjuui] *n*  
 pay 물다 [mulda] *vt*, 치르다  
 [chiruda] *vt* [ada] *vi*  
 pay attention to 주의하다 [chuih  
 peace 평화 [pyonghwa] *n*

peace zone 평화지대 [pyonghwaji  
 dae] *n*  
 peaceful 평화로운 [pyonghwaro  
 un] *a att fo*, 평화적 [pyonghwajok]  
 peach 복숭아 [poksung.a] *n* [n  
 pear 배 [pae] *n*  
 pedagogy 교육학 [kyoyukak] *n*  
 pen 펜 [pen] *n*  
 pencil 연필 [yonpil] *n*  
 peninsula 반도 [pando] *n*  
 people 인민 [inmin] *n*  
 People's Army 인민군 [inmin.gun]  
*n*, 인민군대 [inmin.gundae] *n*  
 People's Palace of Culture 인민  
 문화궁전 [inminmunhwagung.jo  
 on] *n* [jong.gwon] *n*  
 people's power 인민정권 [inmin  
 pepper 후추가루 [huchuggaru] *n*  
 perform 공연하다 [kong.yonhada] *vt*  
 performance 공연 [kong.yon] *n*,  
 연극 [yon.guk] *n* [sse] *ad*  
 perhaps 아마 [ama] *ad*, 글썽 [kul  
 permanent wave 파마 [pama] *n*  
 person 사람 [saram] *n*; 명 [myong]  
 incomp *n*  
 personal effects 개인용품 [kaein  
 yongpum] *n*  
 personally 몸소 [momso] *ad*  
 pharmacy 약국 [yakguk] *n*  
 photo 사진 [sajin] *n*  
 photographing 사진찍기 [sajinjjik  
 gi] *n*

**physical culture** 체육 [cheyuk] *n*  
**physician** 내과 의사 [naeggwauisa] *n*  
**piano** 피아노 [piano] *n*  
**pick (up)** 집다 [chipda] *vt*  
**picture** 그림 [kurim] *n*  
**picture book** 그림책 [kurimchaek] *n*  
**picture postcard** 그림엽서 [kurim yopso] *n*  
**piece** 개 [kae] *incomp n*, 대 [tae] *incomp n*  
**pig** 돼지 [twaeji] *n*  
**pile up** 쌓다 [ssata] *vt*  
**pillow** 베개 [pegae] *n*  
**pine** 소나무 [sonamu] *n*  
**pine-nut tree** 잣나무 [channamu] *n*  
**ping-pong** 탁구 [takgu] *n*  
**place** 자리 [chari] *n*, 곳 [kot] *n*  
**place of departure** 떠난 곳 [ddo nan.got] *n*  
**plan** 계획 [kyehoek] *n*  
**planet** 행성 [haengsong] *n*  
**plant** 식물 [singmul] *n*  
**plate** 접시 [chopsi] *n*  
**platform** 연단 [yondan] *n*, 플랫폼 [pullaetuhom] *n*  
**play** 놀음 [norum] *n*; 놀다 [nol da] *vi*  
**play a person's accompaniment** 반주하다 [panjuhada] *vi*  
**pleasant** 유쾌한 [yukwaehan] *a*  
**please** 어서 [oso] *ad att fo*  
**plunder** 약탈하다 [ryaktalhada] *vt*  
**poet** 시인 [siin] *n*  
**point** 점 [chom] *n*  
**policy** 정책 [chongchaek] *n* 「*n*」  
**political power** 정권 [chong.gwon]  
**politics** 정치 [chongchi] *n*  
**pork** 돼지고기 [twaejigogi] *n*

**porter** 짐나르는 사람 [chimnarunun saram] *n with att fo*  
**portrait** 초상화 [chosang.hwa] *n*  
**possibility** 가능성 [kanungsong] *n*  
**post** 초소 [choso] *n*; 우편 [upyon] *n*  
**post office** 우편국 [upyon.guk] *n*  
**postage** 우편요금 [upyonryogum] *n*  
**postcard** (우편)엽서 [(upyon)yop so] *n*  
**Potonggang Hotel** 보통강려관 [po tong.gang ryogwan] *n*  
**pound** 파운드 [paundu] *n*  
**power** 힘 [him] *n*  
**precious** 귀중한 [kwijunghan] *a att fo*, 고귀한 [kogwihan] *a att fo*, 귀여운 [kwiyoun] *a att fo*  
**premier** 총리 [chongri] *n*  
**preparation** 준비 [chunbi] *n*  
**prepare** 준비하다 [chunbihada] *vi, vt*  
**prescription** 처방 [chobang] *n*  
**present** 선물 [sonmul] *n*  
**president** 주석 [chusok] *n*, 대통령 [taetongryong] *n*  
**pretty** 꽤 [ggae] *ad*  
**price** 값 [kap] *n*  
**primary school** 인민학교 [inmin hakgyo] *n*  
**principal** 교장 [kyojang] *n*  
**prize** 상 [sang] *n*  
**problem** 문제 [munje] *n*  
**produce** 생산하다 [saengsanhada] *vi, vt*  
**production** 생산 [saengsan] *n*  
**programme** 강령 [kangryong] *n*; 공연순서 [kongyonsunso] *n*  
**proletarian** 프롤레타리아 [puroretaria] *n*

**promise** 약속하다 [yaksokada] *vt*  
**promote** 추동하다 [chudonghada] *vt*  
**property** 재산 [chaesan] *n*  
**propose** 제의하다 [cheuihada] *vt*,  
제기하다 [chegihada] *vt*  
**prosper** 번영하다 [ponyonghada] *vi*  
**prosperity** 번영 [ponyong] *n*, 룡  
성 [ryungsong] *n*  
**province** 도 [to] *n* [sa] *n*  
**publishing house** 출판사 [chulpan  
pulsate] *고동치다* [kodongchida] *vi*  
**pulse** 맥박 [maekbak] *n*  
**pupil** 학생 [haksaeng] *n*  
**puppet** 괴뢰 [koeroe] *n*  
**puppet regime** 괴뢰정권 [koeroe  
jong.gwon] *n*  
**purchases** 물건 사기 [mulgonsagi] *n*

**purpose** 목적 [mogjok] *n*  
**put** 놓다 [nota] *vt*  
**put on** 입다 [ipda] *vt*, 신다 [sin  
da] *vt*, 쓰다 [ssuda] *vt*, 끼  
다 [ggida] *vt*  
**Pyongyang** 평양 [pyongyang] *n*  
**Pyongyang Grand Theatre** 평양대  
극장 [pyongyangdaegukjang] *n*  
**Pyongyang Indoor Stadium** 평양  
체육관 [pyongyangcheyukgwang] *n*  
**Pyongyang International House  
of Culture** 평양국제문화회관 [pyong  
yang.gukjemunhwahoe gwang] *n*  
**Pyongyang Maternity Hospital** 평  
양산원 [pyongyangsanwon] *n*  
**Pyongyang Metro** 평양지하철도  
[pyongyangjihacholdo] *n*

## Q

**quality** 질 [chil] *n*  
**quantity** 량 [ryang] *n*, 수량 [su  
ryang] *n*  
**question** 문제 [munje] *n*

**quick** 빠른 [bbarun] *a att fo*  
**quickly** 빨리 [bballi] *ad*  
**quiet** 조용한 [choyonghan] *a att*  
**quite** 아주 [aju] *ad* [fo

## R

**radio** 라디오 [rajio] *n*  
**railroad** 철길 [cholgil] *n*  
**(rail way) station** 정거장 [chong  
gojang] *n*, 역 [yok] *n*  
**rain** 비 [pi] *n*  
**rainbow** 무지개 [mujigae] *n*  
**raincoat** 비옷 [piot] *n*  
**raise** 올리다 [ollida] *causat v*  
**rat** 쥐 [chwi] *n*

**razor** 면도칼 [myondokal] *n*  
**reach** 닿다 [tata] *vi*  
**read** 읽다 [ikda] *vt*  
**real** 실제적 [siljejok] *n*, 현실적  
[hyonsiljok] *n*  
**realize** 실현하다 [silhyonhada] *vt*  
**really** 실로 [sillo] *ad*, 참으로  
hamuro] *ad*, 실제로 [silche

joguro] *n inst*  
**receipt** 령수증 [ryongsujjung] *n*  
**receive** 받다 [patda] *vt*, 접수하다 [chopsuhada] *vt*, 맞이하다 [majihada] *vt*  
**receiver** 받는 사람 [pannun saram] *n with att fo*  
**recite** 읊다 [upda] *vt*  
**record** 기록 [kirok] *n*  
**recover** 낫다 [natda] *vi*, 회복하다 [hoebokada] *vt*  
**red** 붉은 [pulgun] *a att fo*, 빨간 [bbalgan] *a att fo*  
**red flag** 붉은기 [pulgun-gi] *n*  
**refuse** 거절하다 [kojolphada] *vt*  
**regiment** 련대 [ryondae] *n*  
**register** 써넣다 [ssonota] *v with con fo*  
**registered letter** 등기편지 [tung. gipyonji] *n*  
**relation** 관계 [kwan.gye] *n*  
**relative** 친척 [chinchok] *n*  
**reliable** 믿음직한 [midumjikan] *a att fo*  
**remain** 남다 [namda] *vi*  
**remarkable** 현저한 [hyonjohan] *a att fo*  
**remorse** 가책 [kachaek] *n*  
**repair** 고치다 [kochida] *vt*, 수리하다 [surihada] *vt*  
**repatriation** 귀국 [kwiguk] *n*  
**repeat** 반복하다 [panbokada] *vt*  
**reply telegram** 답전 [tapjon] *n*  
**report** 보고하다 [pogohada] *vt*  
**republic** 공화국 [konghwaguk] *n*  
**request** 부탁하다 [putakada] *vt*, 신청하다 [sinchonghada] *vt*  
**respect** 존경 [chon.gyong] *n; 존*

경하다 [chon.gyonghada] *vt*,  
 경애하다 [kyong.aehada] *vi, vt*  
**rest from one's work** 쉬다 [swida] *vi, vt*  
**restaurant** 식당 [sikdang] *n*  
**result** 결과 [kyolgwa] *n*  
**return salute** 답례 [tamrye] *n*  
**return visit** 답례방문 [tamryebangmun] *n*  
**revisionism** 수정주의 [sujongjuui] *n*  
**revolution** 혁명 [hyongmyong] *n*  
**revolutionary** 혁명가 [hyongmyong.ga] *n; 혁명적* [hyongmyongjok] *n*  
**revolutionary ideas** 혁명사상 [hyongmyongsasang] *n*  
**revolutionary museum** 혁명박물관 [hyongmyongbangmulgwan] *n*  
**revolutionization** 혁명화 [hyongmyonghwa] *n*  
**rice** 쌀 [ssal] *n*  
**rice-cake** 떡 [ddok] *n*  
**rice-field** 논 [non] *n*  
**rice plant** 벼 [pyo] *n*  
**rich** 풍부한 [pungbuhan] *a att fo*  
**rich harvest** 대풍 [taepung] *n*  
**right** 권리 [kwolli] *n; 옳은* [orun] *a att fo*, 지당한 [chidanghan] *a att fo*  
**right side** 오른쪽 [orunjok] *n*  
**ripen** 익다 [ikda] *vi*, [da] *vi*  
**rise** 오르다 [oruda] *vi*, 일다 [il] *vi*  
**river** 강 [kang] *n*  
**road** 길 [kil] *n*, [gi] *n*  
**roast duck** 오리불고기 [oribulgoc] *n*  
**rogue** 놈 [nom] *n*  
**role** 역할 [yokal] *n*, [da] *vt*  
**roll** 굴다 [kulda] *vi*, 말다 [mal] *vi*  
**room** 방 [pang] *n*, 호실 [hosil] *n*  
**rose** 장미꽃 [changmiggot] *n*



round 등근 [tung.gun] *a att fo*  
 round-trip ticket 왕복차표 [wang  
 bokchapyo] *n*  
 ruble 루블 [rubul] *n* [llida] *vi*  
 run 달리기 [talligi] *n*; 달리다 [ta  
 run against 부닥치다 [pudakchi

da] *vi*  
 runner 달리기선수 [talligisonsu] *n*  
 rules 규정 [kyujong] *n*  
 rural economy 농촌경제 [nongchon.  
 gyongri] *n*  
 rush 돌진하다 [toljinhada] *vi*

## S

sacred 성스러운 [songsuroun] *a*  
*att fo*  
 sad 슬픈 [sulpun] *a att fo*  
 salad 생채 [saengchae] *n*  
 salt 소금 [sogum] *n*  
 same 같은 [katun] *a att fo*  
 same time 동시 [tongsil] *n*  
 sand 모래 [mora] *n*  
 Saturday 토요일 [toyoil] *n*  
 sausage 순대 [sundae] *n*  
 saw 톱 [top] *n*  
 say 말하다 [malhada] *vi, vt*, 말씀  
 하다 [malssumhada] *vt*  
 scenery 경치 [kyongchi] *n*  
 school 학교 [hakgyo] *n*  
 school boy 남학생 [namhaksae] *n*  
 school girl 여학생 [nyohaksae] *n*  
 scientist 과학자 [kwahakja] *n*  
 sea 바다 [pada] *n*  
 season 계절 [kyejol] *n*  
 seat 자리 [chari] *n* [ho] *n*  
 seat number 자리번호 [charibon  
 second 두번째 [tubonjjae] *num*,  
 둘째 [tuljjae] *num*; 초 [cho] *n*  
 secret camp 밀영 [miryong] *n*  
 secretary 서기 [sogi] *n*, 비서 [pi  
 so] *n*  
 see 보다 [poda] *vt*, 구경하다 [ku  
 gyonghada] *vt*

see (a person) off 보내다 [parae  
 da] *vt*  
 seek 찾다 [chatda] *vt* [fo  
 seldom 드물게 [tumulge] *a ad*  
 selection 선택 [sontaek] *n*  
 self 자신 [chasin] *n*, 자기 [chagi]  
*pron*  
 self-defence 자위 [chawi] *n*  
 self-sustenance 자립 [charip] *n*  
 sell 팔다 [palda] *vt*  
 seller 판매원 [panmaewon] *n*  
 send 보내다 [ponaeda] *vt*, 부치  
 다 [puchida] *vt*  
 send a telegram 전보를 치다 [chon  
 borul chida] *v with n*  
 sender 보내는 사람 [ponaenun sa  
 ram] *n with att fo*, 발신인  
 [palsinin] *n*  
 sending 발송 [palsong] *n*  
 September 구월 [kuwol] *n* [fo  
 serious 심각한 [simgakan] *a att*  
 serve 복무하다 [pongmuhada] *vi*  
 set 얹히다 [anchida] *causat v*;  
 조 [cho] *n*, 일식 [ilsik] *n*  
 seven 일곱 [ilgop] *num*, 칠 [ch  
 il] *num* [jjae] *num*  
 seventh 일곱(번)째 [ilgop(bon)]  
 seventy 일흔 [ilhun] *num*, 칠십  
 sex 성 [song] *n* [[chilsip] *num*

sex distinction 성별 [songbyol] *n*  
 shallow 얕은 [yatun] *a att fo*  
 shave 깎다 [ggakda] *vt*  
 shaving 면도 [myondo] *n* [pron  
 she 그 녀자 [ku nyoja] *n with*  
 shear 깎다 [ggakda] *vt*  
 sheet 장 [chang] *n*  
 sherbet 과일청량음료 [kwailchong  
 ryang.umryo] *n*  
 shine 비치다 [pichida] *vi*, 빛나다  
 [pinnada] *vi*  
 ship 배 [pae] *n* [jom] *n*  
 shoe store 신발상점 [sinbalsang  
 shoes 신 [sin] *n*, 신발 [sinbal] *n*  
 shop 상점 [sangjom] *n*  
 short 짧은 [jjalbun] *a att fo*  
 short time 잠깐 [chamgan] *n*  
 shoulder 어깨 [oggae] *n*; 떠메다  
 [ddomeda] *vt*  
 shovel 삽 [sap] *n*  
 show 보여주다 [poyojudā] *v with*  
*con fo*, 안내하다 [annaehada]  
*vt*, 대주다 [taejuda] *vt*  
 shut 닫다 [tatda] *vt*  
 sign 간판 [kanpan] *n*; 수표하다  
 [supyohada] *vi*  
 sign one's name 서명하다 [so  
 myonghada] *vi*  
 signature 수표 [supyo] *n*  
 significance 의의 [uiui] *n*  
 silk 비단 [pidan] *n*  
 silver 은 [un] *n*  
 singer 가수 [kasu] *n* [bang] *n*  
 single room 1인용 방 [irinyong  
 sister 누이 [nui] *n*  
 sit 앉다 [anda] *vi*  
 six 여섯 [yosot] *num*, 률 [ryuk] *num*  
 sixth 여섯(번)째 [yosot(bon)jjae]  
*num*

sixty 예순 [yēsun] *num*, 률십  
 [ryuksip] *num*  
 skin 살가죽 [salgajuk] *n*, 피부  
 [pibu] *n*  
 sky 하늘 [hanul] *n*  
 sleep 잠 [cham] *n*; 자다 [chada]  
*vi*, 잠자다 [chamjada] *vi*,  
 주무시다 [chumusida] *vi*  
 sleeping carriage 침대차 [chimdae  
 cha] *n*  
 slogan 구호 [kuho] *n*  
 slowly 천천히 [chonchoni] *ad*  
 small 작은 [chagun] *a att fo*  
 small change 잔돈 [chandon] *n*  
 smoke 담배를 피우다 [tambaerul  
 piuda] *v with n*  
 snack bar 간이식당 [kanisikdang] *n*  
 snow 눈 [nun] *n*; 눈이 오다 [nuni  
 oda] *phrase*  
 snowstorm 눈보라 [nunbora] *n*  
 so 그러한 [kurohan] *a con fo*; 그  
 령제 [kuroke] *a ad fo*, 이렇게  
 [iroke] *a ad fo*, 이리 [iri] *ad*  
 so to speak 말하자면 [malhaja  
 myon] *v con fo*  
 soap 비누 [pinu] *n*  
 social 사회의 [sahoeui] *n gen*,  
 사회적 [sahoejok] *n*  
 socialism 사회주의 [sahoejuui] *n*  
 socialist 사회주의적 [sahoejuui  
 society 사회 [sahoe] *n* [jok] *n*  
 socks 짧은 양말 [jjalbun yangmal]  
*n with att fo*  
 soda water 탄산물 [tansanmul] *n*  
 soft 부드러운 [puduroun] *a att fo*  
 soft boiled egg 반숙한 달걀 [pan  
 sukan talgal] *n with att fo*  
 soft sugar 사탕가루 [satang.garu] *n*  
 soil 더럽히다 [toropida] *vt*

**soldier** 병사 [pyongsa] *n*, 전사  
 [chonsa] *n*  
**sole** 발바닥 [palbadak] *n*  
**solicitude** 배려 [paeryo] *n*  
**solidarity** 단결 [tan·gyol] *n*, 연대  
 성 [ryondaessong] *n*  
**solo** 독창 [tokchang] *n*  
**son** 아들 [adul] *n*  
**song** 노래 [nora] *n*  
**sorry** 미안한 [mianhan] *a att fo*  
**sound** 소리 [sori] *n*; 울리다 [ul  
 lida] *vi*  
**soup** 국 [kuk] *n*  
**sour** 신 [sin] *a att fo*  
**south** 남(쪽) [nam(jjok)] *n*  
  
**southern** 남쪽의 [namjjogui] *n gen*  
**souvenir** 기념품 [kinyompum] *n*  
**souvenir shop** 선물상점 [sonmul  
 sangjom] *n*  
**sovereignty** 주권 [chuggwon] *n*  
**soy** 간장 [kanjang] *n*  
**spade** 삽 [sap] *n*  
**spare** 아끼다 [aggida] *vt*  
**speak** 말하다 [malhada] *vi, vt*  
**special** 특별한 [tukbyolhan] *a  
 att fo*  
**spectator** 관람자 [kwallamja] *n*  
**speech** 연설 [yonsol] *n*  
**speed** 속도 [sokdo] *n*  
**sphere** 영역 [ryong.yok] *n*  
**spirit** 정신 [chongsin] *n*  
**spoon** 숟가락 [sutgarak] *n*  
**spread** 퍼지다 [pojida] *vi*  
**spring** 봄 [pom] *n*  
**spring breeze** 봄바람 [pombaram] *n*  
**spring day** 봄날 [pomnal] *n*  
**squad** 분대 [pundae] *n*  
**stadium** 경기장 [kyong.gijang] *n*

**stage** 단계 [tan.gye] *n*; 무대 [mu  
 dae] *n*  
**stairs** 계단 [kyedan] *n*, 층대 [chung  
 dae] *n*  
**stamp** 우표 [upyo] *n*  
**stand** 서다 [soda] *vi*  
**stand-point** 립장 [ripjang] *n*  
**star** 별 [pyol] *n*  
**start** 출발하다 [chulbalhada] *vi, vt*  
**state** 국가 [kukga] *n*  
**statement** 성명 [songmyong] *n*  
**statue** 동상 [tongsang] *n*  
**stay** 체류 [cheryu] *n*  
**steam** 김 [kim] *n*, 증기 [chung.  
 gi] *n*  
**steel** 강철 [kangchol] *n*  
**step in** 들어서다 [turosoda] *vi*  
**step on** 밟다 [papda] *vt*  
**steward** 접대원 [chopdaewon] *n*  
**stewardess** 여자접대원 [nyojajop  
 daewon] *n*  
**still** 고요한 [koyohan] *a att fo* ;  
 조용히 [choyong.i] *ad*, 아직 [a  
 jik] *ad*  
**stockings** 긴양말 [kinyangmal] *n*  
**stomach** 위 [wi] *n*  
**stop** 정지 [chongji] *n*, 정류소  
 [chongryuso] *n*; 중지하다 [chung  
 jihada] *vt*, 멎다 [motda] *vi*  
**stop** 섯! [sot] *imp fo*  
**story** 이야기 [iyagi] *n*  
**straight** 곧은 [kodun] *a att fo*;  
 곧바로 [kotbaro] *ad*, 바로 [pa  
 ro] *ad*  
**strawberry** 딸기 [ddalgi] *n*  
**street** 거리 [kori] *n*  
**streetcar** 전차 [choncha] *n*  
**strike in** 박다 [pakda] *vt*  
**strong** 센 [sen] *a att fo*

**struggle** 투쟁 [tujaeng] *n*  
**student** 대학생 [taehaksaeng] *n*  
**student at a university-level**  
**factory college** 공장대학생 [kong  
 jangdaehaksaeng] *n*  
**students and children's palace**  
 학생소년궁전 [haksxaengsonyon-  
 gung.jon] *n*  
**study** 공부 [kongbu] *n*, 학습 [hak  
 sup] *n*; 공부하다 [kongbuhada]  
*vt*, 학습하다 [haksupada] *vt*  
**Study House** 학습당 [haksupdang] *n*  
**submit** 굴하다 [kulhada] *vi*, 굴복  
 하다 [kulbokada] *vi*  
**subway** 지하철도 [chihacholdo] *n*  
**succeed** 성공하다 [song.gonghada]  
**success** 성과 [song.gwa] *n* [*vt*  
**successor** 계승자 [kyesung.ja] *n*,  
 후계자 [hugyeja] *n*  
**such** 이러한 [irohan] *a* *att fo*

**suckling child** 젖먹이 [chonmogi]  
**suffer** 당하다 [tanghada] *vt* [*n*  
**sugar** 사탕 [satang] *n*  
**suit (of clothes)** 벌 [pol] *incomp n*  
**sultry** 무더운 [mudoun] *a att fo*  
**summer** 여름 [yorum] *n*  
**sun** 해 [hae] *n*, 태양 [taeyang] *n*  
**Sunday** 일요일 [iryoil] *n*  
**sunrise** 해돋이 [haedoji] *n*  
**sunshine** 햇빛 [haetbit] *n*  
**supper** 저녁밥 [chonyokbap] *n*,  
 저녁식사 [chonyoksiksa] *n*  
**support** 지지하다 [chijihada] *vt*  
**surgeon** 외과의사 [oeggwauisa] *n*  
**sweat** 땀 [ddam] *n*  
**sweep** 쓸다 [ssulda] *vt*  
**sweet** 단 [tan] *a att fo*  
**sworn enemy** 철천지원수 [cholchon  
 jiwonssu] *n* [[chedo] *n*  
**system** 체계 [chegye] *n*, 제도

## T

**table d'hôte** 정식 [chongsik] *n*  
**Taedong Gate** 대동문 [taedong  
 mun] *n*  
**Taesongsan Revolutionary Mart-  
 yrs' Cemetery** 대성산혁명렬사  
 릉 [taesongsanhyongmyongryol  
 sanung] *n*  
**tailor shop** 양복점 [yangbokjom] *n*  
**take** 들다 [tulda] *vt*; 걸리다 [kol  
 lida] *vi*  
**take a photograph** 사진을 찍다 [sa  
 jinul jjikda] *v with n* [*vi*  
**take a walk** 산보하다 [sanbohada]  
**take in** 태우다 [taeuda] *causat v*  
**take into consideration** 타산하다

[tasanhada] *vt*  
**take off** 벗다 [potda] *vt*  
**take-off** 리륙 [riryuk] *n*  
**take part in** 참가하다 [chamga  
 hada] *vi*  
**take place** 일어나다 [ironada] *vi*  
**take trouble** 수고하다 [sugohada] *vi*  
**talk** 담화 [tamhwa] *n*, 회담 [hoe  
 dam] *n*  
**target** 목표 [mokpyo] *n*  
**task** 과업 [kwaop] *n*, 임무 [immu] *n*  
**taste** 맛 [mat] *n*; 맛보다 [matbo  
 da] *v with n*  
**tax** 세금 [segum] *n*  
**taxi** 택시 [taeksi] *n*

taxi stand 택시정류소 [taeksijong  
ryuso] *n*  
 tea 차 [cha] *n*  
 teach 가르치다 [karuchida] *vt*  
 teacher 선생 [sonsaeng] *n*, 교원  
[kyowon] *n* [교사[kyosi] *n*  
 teaching 가르침 [karuchim] *n*,  
 tear<sup>1</sup> 눈물 [nunmul] *n*  
 tear<sup>2</sup> 찢다 [jjitda] *vt*  
 technical 기술의 [kisurui] *n gen*  
 technical revolution 기술혁명 [ki  
sulhyongmyong] *n*  
 technician 기술자 [kisulja] *n*  
 technique 기술 [kisul] *n*  
 telegram 전보 [chonbo] *n*  
 telegram form 전보용지 [chonbo  
yongji] *n*  
 telephone 전화 [chonhwa] *n*  
 telephone operator 교환수 [kyohwan  
su] *n*  
 television 텔레비존 [telebijyon] *n*  
 tell 말하다 [malhada] *vi, vt*  
 temporary 일시적 [ilsijok] *n*  
 ten 열 [yol] *num*, 십 [sip] *num*  
 ten thousands 만 [man] *num*  
 tenth 열(번)째 [yol(bon)jjae] *num*  
 territory 령토 [ryongto] *n*, 강토  
[kangto] *n*  
 textbook 교과서 [kyogwaso] *n*  
 thank 감사를 드리다 [kamsarul  
durida] *v with n* [fo  
 thankful 고마운 [komaun] *a att*  
 that 그 [ku] *pron*, 저 [cho] *pron*  
 that place 거기 [kogi] *pron*, 저  
기 [chogi] *pron* [re] *n*  
 the day after tomorrow 모레 [mo  
 the day before yesterday 그저께  
[kujogge] *n*  
 the Democratic People's Repub-

lic of Korea, the DPRK 조선  
민주주의인민공화국 [chosonmin  
jujuuinmin-gonghwaguk] *n*  
 the highest 최고의 [choegoui] *n gen*  
 the Worker's Party of Korea 조  
선로동당 [chosonrodongdang] *n*  
 theatre 극장 [kukjang] *n*  
 theory 이론 [riron] *n*  
 there 거기에 [kogie] *pron dat*,  
저기에 [chogie] *pron dat*  
 there be 있다 [itda] *vi*, 제시다  
[kyesida] *vi*  
 there is no ... 없다 [opda] *a*  
 therefore 그러니까 [kuronigga] *a*  
 thesis 레제 [teje] *n* [con fo  
 they 그들 [kudul] *pron*  
 thick 굵은 [kulgun] *a att fo*, 뻐  
[paen] *a att fo*, 자욱한 [chau  
kan] *a att fo*  
 thigh 넓적다리 [nopjokdari] *n*  
 thin 옅은 [yolbun] *a att fo*, 가는  
[kanun] *a att fo* [vt  
 think 생각하다 [saeng.gakada] *vi*,  
 third 세번째 [sebonjjae] *num*, 셋  
째 [setjjae] *num*  
 thirty 서른 [sorun] *num*, 삼십 [sam  
 this 이 [i] *pron* [sip] *num*  
 this place 여기 [yogi] *pron*  
 this year 올해 [olhae] *n*  
 thought 생각 [saeng.gak] *n*  
 thousand 천 [chon] *num*  
 three 셋 [set] *num*, 세 [se] *num*,  
삼 [sam] *num*  
 thunder 우뢰 [uroe] *n*  
 Thursday 목요일 [mogyoil] *n*  
 ticket 표 [pyo] *n*, 차표 [chapyo] *n*  
 ticket office 표파는곳 [pyopanun.  
got] *n*

tiger 범 [pom] *n*  
 till<sup>1</sup> 까지 [ggaji] *aux end*  
 till<sup>2</sup> 갈다 [kalda] *vt*  
 time 시간 [sigan] *n*, 때 [ddae] *n*  
 times 배 [pae] *n*  
 timetable 시간표 [siganpyo] *n*  
 tinned goods 통조림 [tongjorim] *n*  
 to one's regret 유감스럽게 [yugam  
 suropge] *a ad fo*  
 toast 군빵 [kunbbang] *n*; 죽배  
 [chukbae] *n*  
 today 오늘 [onul] *n*  
 toe 발가락 [palgarak] *n*  
 together 함께 [hamgge] *ad*  
 toilet 위생실 [wisaengsil] *n*, 변  
 소 [pyonso] *n*  
 tomato 토마토 [tomado] *n*  
 tomorrow 래일 [raeil] *n*  
 tongue 혀 [hyo] *n*  
 too 또한 [ddohan] *ad*  
 tooth 이빨 [ibbal] *n*  
 toothbrush 치솔 [chisol] *n*  
 toothpaste 치약 [chiyak] *n*  
 totally 총체로 [chongchero] *n inst*  
 tourist 관광객 [kwan·gwang·gaek] *n*  
 tourist information office 관광  
 안내소 [kwan·gwang·annaeso] *n*  
 tourist resort 관광지 [kwan·gwangji]  
 tower 탑 [tap] *n* [ *n*  
 Tower of Juche Idea 주체사상탑  
 [chuchesasangtap] *n*  
 toy 놀이감 [noriggam] *n*  
 trade 무역 [muyok] *n*  
 trade agreement 무역협정 [muyok  
 ·hyopjong] *n*  
 tradition 전통 [chontong] *n*  
 train 기차 [kicha] *n*, 열차 [ryol

cha] *n*  
 traitor (to one's country) 매국노  
 maegungno] *n*  
 tram car 전차 [chencha] *n*  
 transit visa 통과사증 [tong.gwa  
 sajjung] *n*  
 translate 번역하다 [ponyokada] *vt*  
 translation 번역 [ponyok] *n*  
 translator 번역원 [ponyogwon] *n*  
 transport 수송 [susong] *n*  
 travel 여행 [ryohaeng] *n*  
 travel bureau 여행사 [ryohaengsa]  
*n*  
 treat 취급하다 [chwigupada] *vi*,  
*vt*; 치료하다 [chiryohada] *vt*  
 tree 나무 [namu] *n*  
 tremble 떨다 [ddolda] *vi*  
 trial 시련 [siryon] *n* [cha] *n*  
 trolley 무궤도전차 [mugwedojon]  
 trousers 바지 [paji] *n*  
 truck 짐차 [chimcha] *n*  
 truly 정말 [chongmal] *ad*  
 trumpet 나팔 [napal] *n*  
 trunk 트렁크 [turongku] *n*  
 truth 진리 [chilli] *n*  
 Tuesday 화요일 [hwayoil] *n*  
 turn 돌다 [tolda] *vi*  
 twelfth 열두(번)째 [yoldu(bon)  
 jjae] *num*  
 twelve 열둘 [yoldul] *num*, 열두  
 [yoldu] *num*, 십이 [sibi] *num*  
 twenty 스물 [sumul] *num*, 이십 [i  
 sip] *num*  
 twin-bedded room 2인용 방 [iin  
 yong bang] *n*  
 two 둘 [tul] *num*, 두 [tu] *num*,  
 이 [i] *num*  
 typewriter 타자기 [tajagi] *n*

## U

**umbrella** 우산 [usan] *n*  
**unanimously** 한결같이 [hangyolga chi] *ad*  
**uncle** 아저씨 [ajossi] *n* [n]  
**unconditionally** 무조건 [mujoggon]  
**underground (railway)** 지하철도 [chihacholdo] *n* [vt]  
**understand** 이해하다 [rihaehada]  
**understanding** 이해 [rihae] *n*  
**underwear** 속내의 [songnaeui] *n*  
**undivided** 유일적 [yuiljok] *n*  
**unification** 통일 [tong.il] *n*  
**unify** 통일하다 [tong.ilhada] *vt*  
**unite** 뭉치다 [mungchida] *vi*

**united front** 통일전선 [tong.iljon son] *n* [hak] *n*  
**university** 종합대학 [chonghapdae]  
**university-level factory college** 공장대학 [kon gjangdaehak] *n*  
**urgent telegram** 지급전보 [chigup jonbo] *n*  
**US imperialism** 미제국주의 [mije gukjuui] *n*  
**US imperialist** 미제국주의자 [mi jegukjuuija] *n*  
**use** 쓰다 [ssuda] *vt*, 사용하다 [sayonghada] *vt*, 리용하다 [ri yonghada] *vt*

## V

**vacant** 빈 [pin] *a att fo*  
**vacillation** 동요 [tong.yo] *n*  
**valley** 골짜기 [koljjagi] *n*, 골 [kol] *n*  
**vegetables** 남새 [namsae] *n*  
**very** 대단히 [taedani] *ad*, 매우 [maeu] *ad*, 몹시 [mopsi] *ad*, 아주 [aju] *ad*  
**victory** 승리 [sungri] *n*  
**view** 견해 [kyonhae] *n*  
**village** 마을 [maul] *n*, 농촌 [nong chon] *n*

**vinalon** 비날론 [pinallon] *n*  
**vinegar** 식초 [sikcho] *n*  
**violence** 폭력 [pongryok] *n*  
**visa** 사증 [sajjung] *n*  
**visa number** 사증번호 [sajjung bonho] *n*  
**visit** 방문 [pangmun] *n*, 참관 [cham gwan] *n*; 방문하다 [pangmun hada] *vt*, 참관하다 [cham gwanhada] *vt*  
**volleyball** 배구 [paegu] *n* [n]  
**voting rights** 선거권 [songoggwon]

## W

**waist** 허리 [hori] *n*  
**wait** 기다리다 [kidarida] *vt*

**waiter** 접대원 [chopdaewon] *n*  
**waiting room** 기다림칸 [kidarim]

kan] *n*  
 waitress 여자집대원 [nyojajopdae won] *n*  
 wake 깨우다 [ggaenda] *causat v*  
 walk 걸다 [kotda] *vi*  
 wall 벽 [pyok] *n*  
 war 전쟁 [chonjaeng] *n*  
 warm 따뜻한 [ddaddutan] *a att fo*, 따사로운 [ddasaroun] *a att fo*  
 wash 씻다 [ssitda] *vt*  
 watch 시계 [sigye] *n*  
 watch shop 시계상점 [sigyesangjom] *n*  
 water 물 [mul] *n*  
 water of river 강물 [kangmul] *n*  
 water-works 수도 [sudo] *n*  
 wave 물결 [mulgyol] *n*, 파도 [pado] *n*  
 we 우리 [uri] *pron*, 저희 [chohui] *pron*  
 weak 약한 [yakan] *a att fo*  
 weapon 무기 [mugi] *n*  
 weather 날씨 [nalssi] *n*  
 weave 짜다 [jjada] *vt*  
 Wednesday 수요일 [suyoil] *n*  
 week 주 [chu] *n*  
 weekday 주일 [chuil] *n*, 요일 [yoil] *n*  
 weep 울다 [ulda] *vi*  
 weight 무게 [muge] *n*  
 welcome 환영 [hwanyong] *n*; 환영하다 [hwanyonghada] *vt*  
 well<sup>1</sup> 잘 [chal] *ad*; 안녕한 [annyonghan] *a att fo*  
 well<sup>2</sup> 자 [cha] *int*  
 well-being 안녕 [annyong] *n*  
 west 서(쪽) [so(jjok)] *n*

West Sea Barrage 서해갑문 [sohaegamun] *n*  
 west(ern) 서쪽의 [so(jjogui)] *n gen*  
 what 무엇 [muot] *pron*, 무슨 [musun] *pron*  
 what place 어디 [odi] *pron*  
 wheat 밀 [mil] *n*  
 wheat flour 밀가루 [milgaru] *n*  
 wheel 바퀴 [pakwi] *n*  
 when 언제 [onje] *pron*  
 where 어디에 [odie] *pron dat*  
 which 어느 [onu] *pron*  
 white 흰 [huin] *a att fo*  
 who 누구 [nugu] *pron*  
 whole 전체 [chonche] *n*, 온 [on] *pre-n*  
 wide 넓은 [nolbun] *a att fo*  
 widely 넓게 [nolge] *a ad fo*, 널리 [nolli] *ad*, 활짝 [hwaljjak] *ad*  
 wife 아내 [anhae] *n*  
 win 이기다 [igida] *vt*  
 wind<sup>1</sup> 바람 [param] *n*  
 wind<sup>2</sup> 감다 [kamda] *vt*  
 window 창문 [changmun] *n*  
 wine 술 [sul] *n*  
 winter 겨울 [kyoul] *n*  
 wipe 닦다 [takda] *vt* [vt]  
 wipe out 소멸하다 [somyolhada]  
 wise 현명한 [hyonmyonghan] *a att fo*, 슬기로운 [sulgiroun] *a att fo*  
 wish 바라다 [parada] *vt*, 축원하다 [chugwonhada] *vt*, 념원하다 [nyomwonhada] *vt*  
 with all one's strength 힘껏 [himggot] *ad*  
 with pleasure 기꺼이 [kiggoi] *ad*  
 without 없이 [opsi] *ad*



wolf 승냥이 [sungnyang.i] *n*  
 woman 여자 [nyoja] *n*, 여성 [nyo-  
 song] *n*  
 woman musician 여자음악가 [nyoja  
 umakga] *n*  
 won 원 [won] *n* (*unit of Ko-  
 rean currency*)  
 wonder 기적 [kijok] *n*  
 word 말 [mal] *n*, 단어 [tano] *n*  
 work 일 [il] *n*, 작업 [chagop] *n*,  
 사업 [saop] *n*; 일하다 [ilhada] *vi*  
 work-team 작업반 [chagopban] *n*  
 worker 노동자 [rodongja] *n*

Workers' Party 노동당 [rodong  
 dang] *n* [gyegup] *n*  
 working class 노동계급 [rodong-  
 working people 근로자 [kulloja] *n*  
 workshop 직장 [chikjang] *n*  
 world 세계 [segye] *n*, 세상 [se  
 sang] *n*  
 world-wide 세계적 [segyejok] *n*  
 wrap 싸다 [ssada] *vt*  
 wreath 화환 [hwahwan] *n*  
 write 쓰다 [ssuda] *vt*  
 writer 작가 [chakga] *n*

## X

X-ray x선 [eksuson] *n*, 렌트겐선 [rentugenson] *n*

## Y

yard 마당 [madang] *n*  
 year 해 [hae] *n*, 년 [nyon] *n*  
 yellow 노란 [noran] *a att fo*, 누  
 른 [nurin] *a att fo*  
 yes 예 [ye] *int*, 응 [ung] *int*  
 yesterday 어제 [oje] *n*  
 you 너 [no] *pron*, 네 [ne] *pron*,

자네 [chane] *pron*, 당신  
 [tangsin] *n*, 그대 [kudae] *pro-  
 n*; 너희 [nohui] *pron*  
 young 젊은 [cholmun] *a att fo*, 어  
 린 [orin] *a att fo*  
 your 너의 [nou] *pron*  
 youth 청년 [chongnyon] *n*

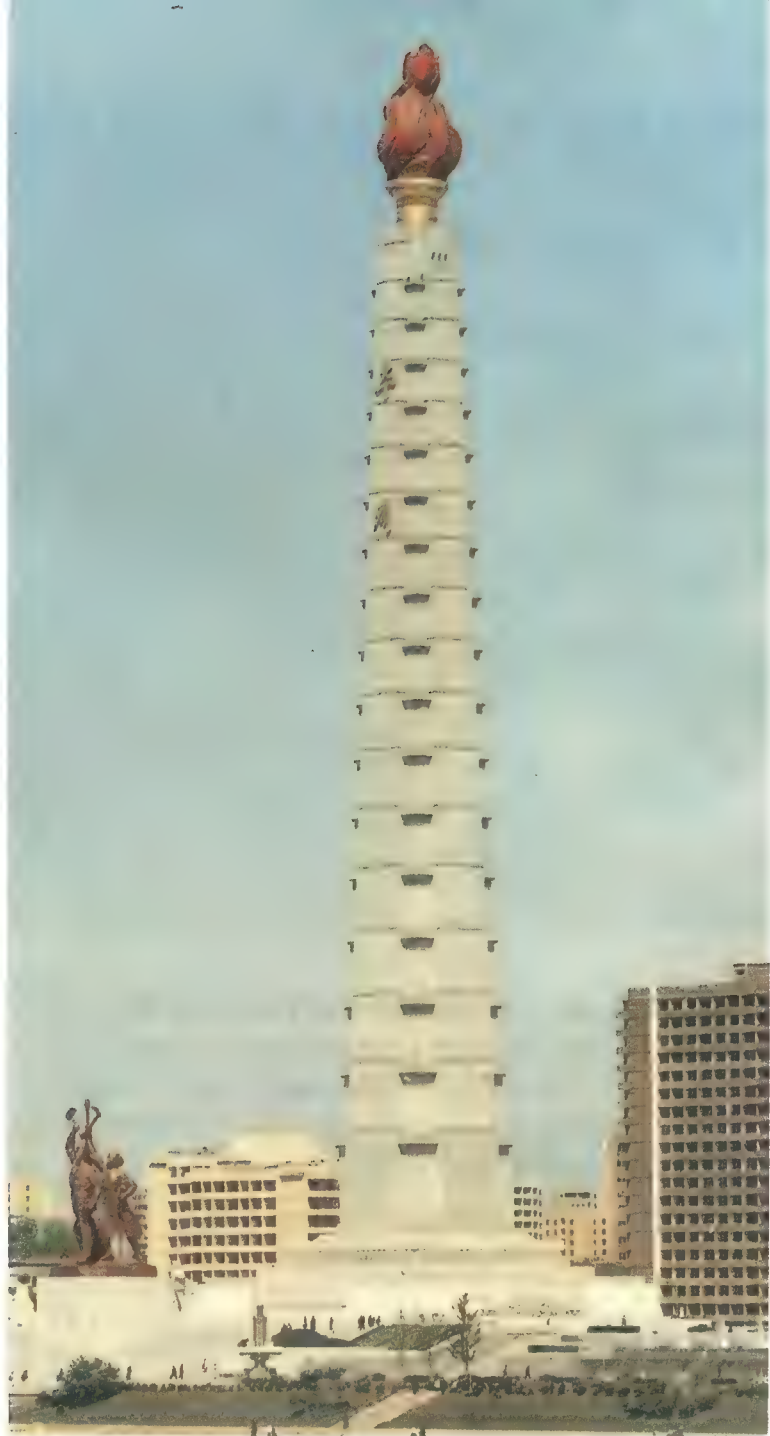
## Z

zone 지대 [chidae] *n*

zoo 동물원 [tongmurwon] *n*



위대한 수령 김일성동지께서 탄생하시어 어린시절을  
 보내시고 혁명의 큰뜻을 품으신 만경대고향집  
 The old home at Mangyongdae where the great  
 leader Comrade Kim Il Sung was born and  
 spent his childhood, nursing his lofty  
 revolutionary aims



주체 사상탑 Tower of Juche Idea



개선문 Arch of Triumph



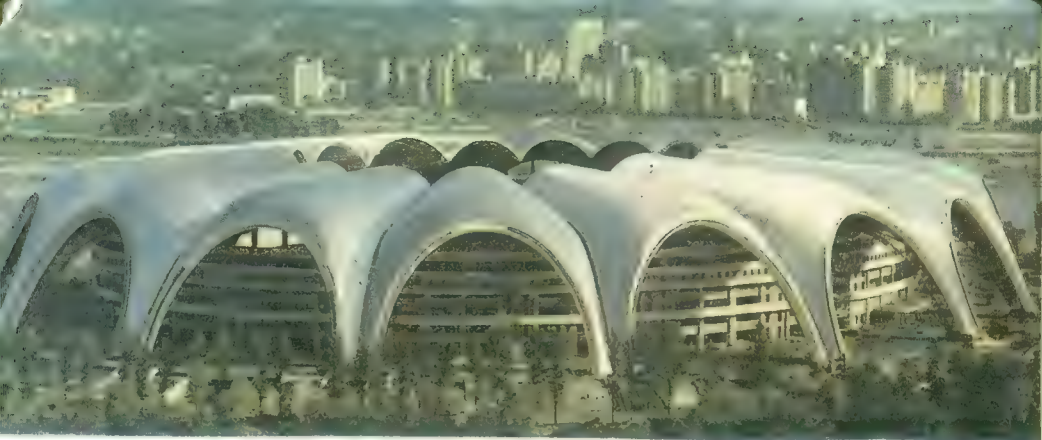


국제친선전람관    International Friendship Exhibition

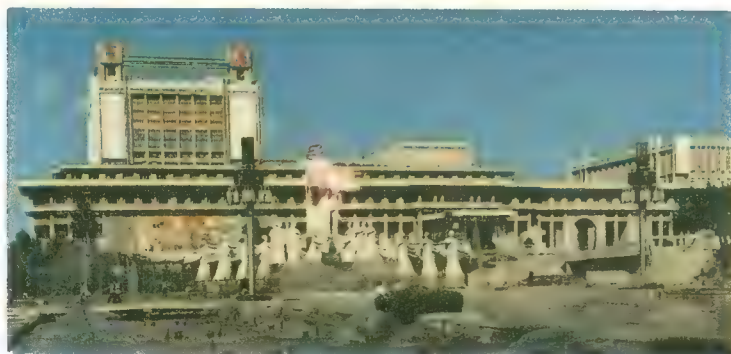


평양시의 일부 A Part of Pyongyang





5월1일경기장(15만석)  
May Day Stadium  
with 150,000 seats



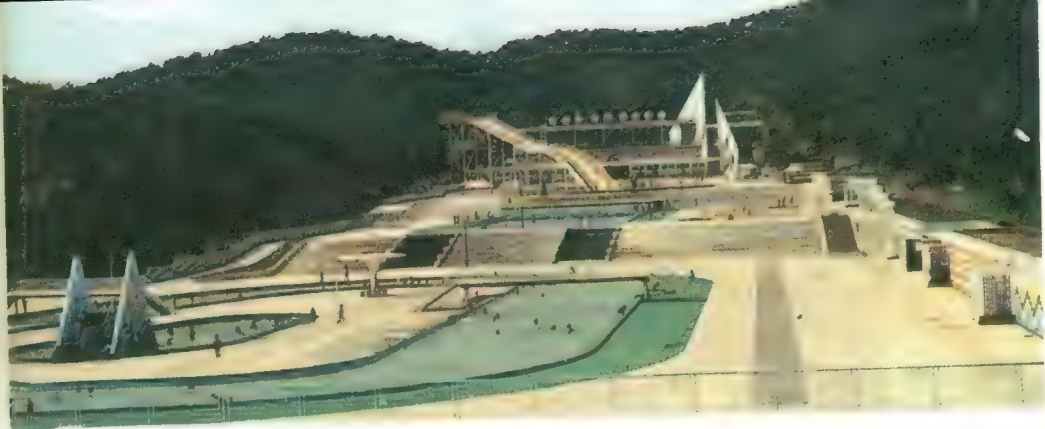
만수대 예술극장  
Mansudae  
Art Theatre

청춘거리 종합경기관  
The Combative Sports  
Gymnasium  
in Chongchun Street



청류관  
Chongryu Restaurant





만경대물놀이장 The Mangyongdae Pool



청춘거리 송구관 The Handball Gymnasium in Chongchun Street

평양체육관

Pyongyang

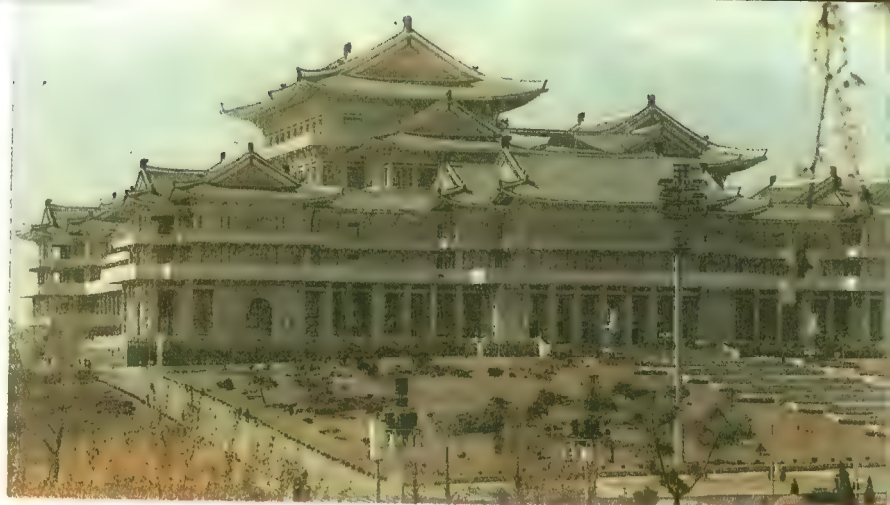
빙상관

Indoor Stadium

Ice Rink







인민대학습당 Grand People's Study House

인민문화궁전 People's Palace of Culture





백두산천지 Lake Chon on Mt. Paekdu



대성산혁명렬사릉 Taesongsan Revolutionary Martyrs' Cemetery



평양산원 Pyongyang Maternity Hospital

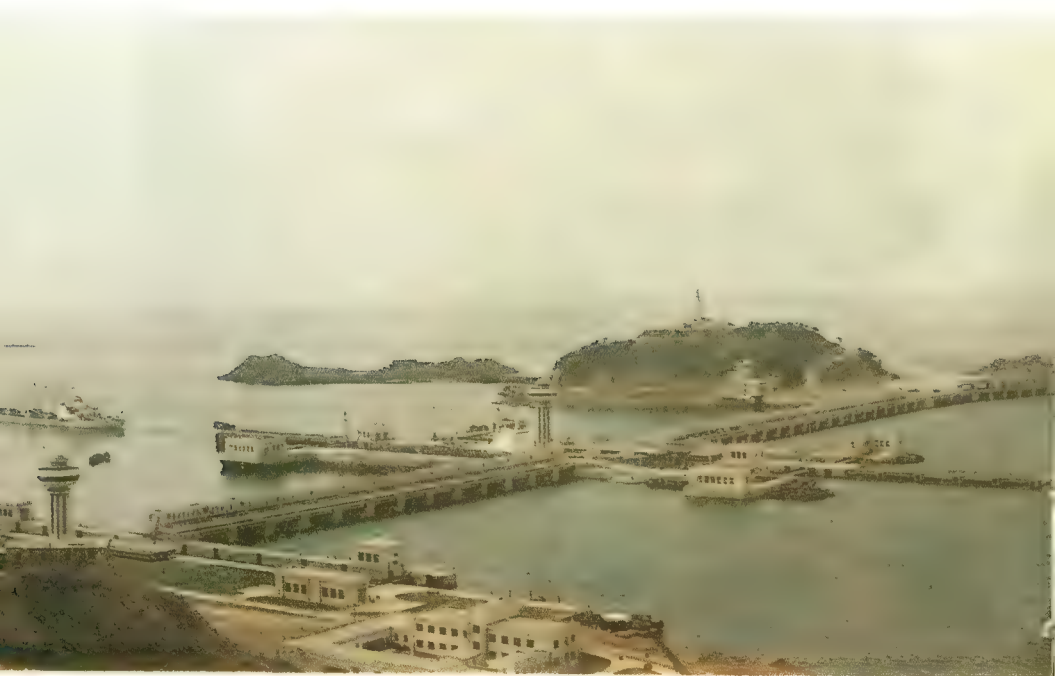


천리마동상 Chollima Statue





평양지하철도 황금벌역  
Hwanggumbol Station, Pyongyang Metro



서해감문 West Sea Barrage



공장의 조종실 Control Room of a Factory

만경대유원장 Mangyongdae Fun Fair





민속놀이 Folk Stunt





농장의 가을걷이 Harvesting on a Farm

문화유적 Historical Remains







금강산의 일부  
A View of  
Mt. Kungang

묘향산의 일부 A View of Mt. Myohyang



조선말 배우는 책  
(영 어)

---

집필	공 익 현	심사	부교수 준박사 박종문 준박사 안송호 외 4명
편집	정 경 선	사진	조동소, 정승영
장정	조 동 소	교정	박수련, 김지순
넵곳	외국문도서출판사	인쇄소	평양종합인쇄공장
인쇄	1989년 5월 18일	발행	1989년 5월 29일

---

7-90813

1,500 부

값 3원 50전